NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

Goldwin Smith Professor of Latin in Cornell University

Quicquid praecipies, esto brevis, ut cito dicta
Percipiant animi dociles teneantque fideles:
Omne supervacuum pleno de pectore manat.
—HORACE, Ars Poetica.

COPYRIGHT, 1895; 1908; 1918 BY CHARLES E. BENNETT

PREFACE.

The present work is a revision of that published in 1908. No radical alterations have been introduced, although a number of minor changes will be noted. I have added an Introduction on the origin and development of the Latin language, which it is hoped will prove interesting and instructive to the more ambitious pupil. At the end of the book will be found an Index to the Sources of the Illustrative
Examples cited in the Syntax.  
C.E.B.  

ITHACA, NEW YORK,  
May 4, 1918  


---

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The present book is a revision of my Latin Grammar originally published in 1895. Wherever greater accuracy or precision of statement seemed possible, I have endeavored to secure this. The rules for syllable division have been changed and made to conform to the prevailing practice of the Romans themselves. In the Perfect Subjunctive Active, the endings -īs, -imus, -ītis are now marked long. The theory of vowel length before the suffixes -gnus, -gna, -gnum, and also before ḫ, has been discarded. In the Syntax I have recognized a special category of Ablative of Association, and have abandoned the original doctrine as to the force of tenses in the Prohibitive.

Apart from the foregoing, only minor and unessential modifications have been introduced. In its main lines the work remains unchanged.

ITHACA, NEW YORK,  
October 16, 1907.

---

FROM THE PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The object of this book is to present the essential facts of Latin grammar in a direct and simple manner, and within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. While intended primarily for the secondary school, it has not neglected the needs of the college student, and aims to furnish such grammatical information as is ordinarily required in undergraduate courses.

The experience of foreign educators in recent years has tended to restrict the size of school-grammars of Latin, and has demanded an incorporation of the main principles of the language in compact manuals of 250 pages. Within the past decade, several grammars of this scope have appeared abroad which have amply met the most exacting demands.

The publication in this country of a grammar of similar plan and scope seems fully justified at the present time, as all recent editions of classic texts summarize in introductions the special idioms of grammar and style peculiar to individual authors. This makes it feasible to dispense with the enumeration of many minutaie of usage which would otherwise demand consideration in a student's grammar.

In the chapter on Prosody, I have designedly omitted all special treatment of the lyric metres of Horace and Catullus, as well as of the measures of the comic poets. Our standard editions of these authors all give such thorough consideration to versification that repetition in a separate place seems superfluous.

ITHACA, NEW YORK,  
December 15, 1894.

---

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Introduction—The Latin language

PART I.

SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY, ETC.

The Alphabet  
Classification of Sounds
Sounds of the Letters
Syllables
Quantity
Accent
Vowel Changes
Consonant Changes
Peculiarities of Orthography

PART II.

INFECTIONS.

CHAPTER I.—Declension.

A. NOUNS.

Gender of Nouns
Number
Cases
The Five Declensions
First Declension
Second Declension
Third Declension
Fourth Declension
Fifth Declension
Defective Nouns

B. ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions
Adjectives of the Third Declension
Comparison of Adjectives
Formation and Comparison of Adverbs
Numerals

C. PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns
Reflexive Pronouns
Possessive Pronouns
Demonstrative Pronouns
The Intensive Pronoun
The Relative Pronoun
Interrogative Pronouns
Indefinite Pronouns
Pronominal Adjectives

CHAPTER II.—Conjugation.

Verb Stems
The Four Conjugations
Conjugation of Sum
First Conjugation
Second Conjugation
Third Conjugation
Fourth Conjugation
Verbs in -īō of the Third Conjugation
Deponent Verbs
Semi-Deponents
Periphrastic Conjugation
Peculiarities of Conjugation
Formation of the Verb Stems
List of the Most Important Verbs with Principal Parts
Irregular Verbs
Defective Verbs
Impersonal Verbs

PART III.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs
Prepositions
Interjections

PART IV.

WORD FORMATION.

I. DERIVATIVES.

Nouns
Adjectives
Verbs
Adverbs

II. COMPOUNDS.

Examples of Compounds

PART V.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.—Sentences.

Classification of Sentences
Form of Interrogative Sentences
Subject and Predicate
Simple and Compound Sentences

CHAPTER II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Subject
Predicate Nouns
Appositive
The Nominative
The Accusative
The Dative
The Genitive
The Ablative
The Locative

CHAPTER III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Agreement of Adjectives
Adjectives used Substantively
Adjectives with the Force of Adverbs
Comparatives and Superlatives
Other Peculiarities
CHAPTER IV.—Syntax of Pronouns.

Personal Pronouns
Possessive Pronouns
Reflexive Pronouns
Reciprocal Pronouns
Demonstrative Pronouns
Relative Pronouns
Indefinite Pronouns
Pronominal Adjectives

CHAPTER V.—Syntax of Verbs.

Agreement of Verbs
Voices
Tenses
— Of the Indicative
— Of the Subjunctive
— Of the Infinitive
Moods
— In Independent Sentences
— Volitive Subjunctive
— Optative Subjunctive
— Potential Subjunctive
— Imperative
— In Dependent Clauses
— Clauses of Purpose
— Clauses of Characteristic
— Clauses of Result
— Causal Clauses
— Temporal Clauses
— Introduced by Postquam, Ut, Ubi, etc.
— Cum-Clauses
— Introduced by Antequam and Priusquam
— Introduced by Dum, Döne, Quoad
— Substantive Clauses
— Developed from the Volitive
— Developed from the Optative
— Of Result
— After nón dubito, etc.
— Introduced by Quod
— Indirect Questions
— Conditional Sentences
— Use of Si, Nisi, Sin
— Conditional Clauses of Comparison
— Concessive Clauses
— Adversative Clauses with Quamvís, Quamquam, etc.
— Clauses of Wish and Proviso
— Relative Clauses
— Indirect Discourse
— Moods in Indirect Discourse
— Tenses in Indirect Discourse
— Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse
— Implic Indirect Discourse
— Subjunctive by Attraction
Noun and Adjective Forms of the Verb
— Infinitive
— Participles
— Gerund
— Supine
INTRODUCTION.

THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. The Indo-European Family of Languages.—Latin belongs to one group of a large family of languages, known as Indo-European.[1] This Indo-European family of languages embraces the following groups:

ASIATIC MEMBERS OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY.

a. The Sanskrit, spoken in ancient India. Of this there were several stages, the oldest of which is the Vedic, or language of the Vedic Hymns. These Hymns are the oldest literary productions known to us among all the branches of the Indo-European family. A conservative estimate places them as far back as 1500 B.C. Some scholars have even set them more than a thousand years earlier than this, i.e. anterior to 2500 B.C.
The Sanskrit, in modified form, has always continued to be spoken in India, and is represented to-day by a large number of dialects descended from the ancient Sanskrit, and spoken by millions of people.

b. The Iranian, spoken in ancient Persia, and closely related to the Sanskrit. There were two main branches of the Iranian group, viz. the Old Persian and the Avestan. The Old Persian was the official language of the court, and appears in a number of so-called cuneiform[2] inscriptions, the earliest of which date from the time of Darius I (sixth century B.C.). The other branch of the Iranian, the Avestan, [3] is the language of the Avesta or sacred books of the Parsees, the followers of Zoroaster, founder of the religion of the fire-worshippers. Portions of these sacred books may have been composed as early as 1000 B.C.

Modern Persian is a living representative of the old Iranian speech. It has naturally been much modified by time, particularly through the introduction of many words from the Arabic.

c. The Armenian, spoken in Armenia, the district near the Black Sea and Caucasus Mountains. This is closely related to the Iranian, and was formerly classified under that group. It is now recognized as entitled to independent rank. The earliest literary productions of the Armenian language date from the fourth and fifth centuries of the Christian era. To this period belong the translation of the Scriptures and the old Armenian Chronicle. The Armenian is still a living language, though spoken in widely separated districts, owing to the scattered locations in which the Armenians are found to-day.

d. The Tokharian. This language, only recently discovered and identified as Indo-European, was spoken in the districts east of the Caspian Sea (modern Turkestan). While in some respects closely related to the three Asiatic branches of the Indo-European family already considered, in others it shows close relationship to the European members of the family. The literature of the Tokharian, so far as it has been brought to light, consists mainly of translations from the Sanskrit sacred writings, and dates from the seventh century of our era.

EUROPEAN MEMBERS OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY.

e. The Greek. The Greeks had apparently long been settled in Greece and Asia Minor as far back as 1500 B.C. Probably they arrived in these districts much earlier. The earliest literary productions are the Iliad and the Odyssey of Homer, which very likely go back to the ninth century B.C. From the sixth century B.C. on, Greek literature is continuous. Modern Greek, when we consider its distance in time from antiquity, is remarkably similar to the classical Greek of the fourth and fifth centuries B.C.

f. The Italic Group. The Italic Group embraces the Umbrian, spoken in the northern part of the Italian peninsula (in ancient Umbria); the Latin, spoken in the central part (in Latium); the Osca, spoken in the southern part (in Samnium, Campania, Lucania, etc.). Besides these, there were a number of minor dialects, such as the Marsian, Volscan, etc. Of all these (barring the Latin), there are no remains except a few scanty inscriptions. Latin literature begins shortly after 250 B.C. in the works of Livius Andronicus, Naevius, and Plautus, although a few brief inscriptions are found belonging to a much earlier period.

g. The Celtic. In the earliest historical times of which we have any record, the Celts occupied extensive portions of northern Italy, as well as certain areas in central Europe; but after the second century B.C., they are found only in Gaul and the British Isles. Among the chief languages belonging to the Celtic group are the Gallic, spoken in ancient Gaul; the Breton, still spoken in the modern French province of Brittany; the Irish, which is still extensively spoken in Ireland among the common people, the Welsh; and the Gaelic of the Scotch Highlanders.

h. The Teuton. The Teutonic group is very extensive. Its earliest representative is the Gothic, preserved for us in the translation of the scriptures by the Gothic Bishop Ulfila (about 375 A.D.). Other languages belonging to this group are the Old Norse, once spoken in Scandinavia, and from which are descended the modern Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish, Danish; German; Dutch; Anglo-Saxon, from which is descended the modern English.

i. The Balto-Slavic. The languages of this group belong to eastern Europe. The Baltic division of the group embraces the Lithuanian and Lettish, spoken to-day by the people living on the eastern shores of the Baltic Sea. The earliest literary productions of these languages date from the sixteenth century. The Slavic division comprises a large number of languages, the most important of which are the Russian, the Bulgarian, the Serbian, the Bohemian, the Polish. All of these were late in developing a literature, the earliest to do so being the Old Bulgarian, in which we find a translation of the Bible dating from the
ninth century.

j. The Albanian, spoken in Albania and parts of Greece, Italy, and Sicily. This is most nearly related to the Balto-Slavic group, and is characterized by the very large proportion of words borrowed from Latin, Turkish, Greek, and Slavic. Its literature does not begin till the seventeenth century.

2. Home of the Indo-European Family.—Despite the many outward differences of the various languages of the foregoing groups, a careful examination of their structure and vocabulary demonstrates their intimate relationship and proves overwhelmingly their descent from a common parent. We must believe, therefore, that at one time there existed a homogeneous clan or tribe of people speaking a language from which all the above enumerated languages are descended. The precise location of the home of this ancient tribe cannot be determined. For a long time it was assumed that it was in central Asia north of the Himalaya Mountains, but this view has long been rejected as untenable. It arose from the exaggerated importance attached for a long while to Sanskrit. The great antiquity of the earliest literary remains of the Sanskrit (the Vedic Hymns) suggested that the inhabitants of India were geographically close to the original seat of the Indo-European Family. Hence the home was sought in the elevated plateau to the north. To-day it is thought that central or southeastern Europe is much more likely to have been the cradle of the Indo-European parent-speech, though anything like a logical demonstration of so difficult a problem can hardly be expected.

As to the size and extent of the original tribe whence the Indo-European languages have sprung, we can only speculate. It probably was not large, and very likely formed a compact racial and linguistic unit for centuries, possibly for thousands of years.

The time at which Indo-European unity ceased and the various individual languages began their separate existence, is likewise shrouded in obscurity. When we consider that the separate existence of the Sanskrit may antedate 2500 B.C., it may well be believed that people speaking the Indo-European parent-speech belonged to a period as far back as 5000 B.C., or possibly earlier.

3. Stages in the Development of the Latin Language.—The earliest remains of the Latin language are found in certain very archaic inscriptions. The oldest of these belong to the sixth and seventh centuries B.C. Roman literature does not begin till several centuries later, viz. shortly after the middle of the third century B.C. We may recognize the following clearly marked periods of the language and literature:

a. The Preliterary Period, from the earliest times down to 240 B.C., when Livius Andronicus brought out his first play. For this period our knowledge of Latin depends almost exclusively upon the scanty inscriptions that have survived from this remote time. Few of these are of any length.

b. The Archaic Period, from Livius Andronicus (240 B.C.) to Cicero (81 B.C.). Even in this age the language had already become highly developed as a medium of expression. In the hands of certain gifted writers it had even become a vehicle of power and beauty. In its simplicity, however, it naturally marks a contrast with the more finished diction of later days. To this period belong:

   Livius Andronicus, about 275-204 B.C. (Translation of Homer's Odyssey; Tragedies).
   Plautus, about 250-184 B.C. (Comedies).
   Naevius, about 270-199 B.C. ("Punic War"; Comedies).
   Ennius, 239-169 B.C. ("Annals"; Tragedies).
   Terence, about 190-159 B.C. (Comedies).
   Lucilius, 180-103 B.C. (Satires).
   Pacuvius, 220-about 130 B.C. (Tragedies).
   Accius, 170-about 85 B.C. (Tragedies).

c. The Golden Age, from Cicero (81 B.C.) to the death of Augustus (14 A.D.). In this period the language, especially in the hands of Cicero, reaches a high degree of stylistic perfection. Its vocabulary, however, has not yet attained its greatest fullness and range. Traces of the diction of the Archaic Period are often noticed, especially in the poets, who naturally sought their effects by reverting to the speech of olden times. Literature reached its culmination in this epoch, especially in the great poets of the Augustan Age. The following writers belong here:

   Lucretius, about 95-55 B.C. (Poem on Epicurean Philosophy).
   Catullus, 87-about 54 B.C. (Poet).
   Cicero, 106-43 B.C. (Orations; Rhetorical Works; Philosophical Works; Letters).
   Caesar, 102-44 B.C. (Commentaries on Gallic and Civil Wars).
Sallust, 86-36 B.C. (Historian).
Nepos, about 100-about 30 B.C. (Historian).
Virgil, 70-19 B.C. ("Aeneid"; "Georgics"; "Bucolics").
Horace, 65-8 B.C. (Odes; Satires, Epistles).
Tibullus, about 54-19 B.C. (Poet).
Propertius, about 50-about 15 B.C. (Poet).
Ovid, 43 B.C.-17 A.D. ("Metamorphoses" and other poems).
Livy, 59 B.C.-17 A.D. (Historian).

d. The Silver Latinity, from the death of Augustus (14 A.D.) to the death of Marcus Aurelius (180 A.D.). This period is marked by a certain reaction against the excessive precision of the previous age. It had become the practice to pay too much attention to standardized forms of expression, and to leave too little play to the individual writer. In the healthy reaction against this formalism, greater freedom of expression now manifests itself. We note also the introduction of idioms from the colloquial language, along with many poetical words and usages. The following authors deserve mention:

Phaedrus, flourished about 40 A.D. (Fables in Verse).
Velleius Paterculus, flourished about 30 A.D. (Historian).
Lucan, 39-65 A.D. (Poem on the Civil War).
Seneca, about 1-65 A.D. (Tragedies; Philosophical Works).
Pliny the Elder, 23-79 A.D. ("Natural History").
Pliny the Younger, 62-about 115 A.D. ("Letters").
Martial, about 45-about 104 A.D. (Epigrams).
Quintilian, about 35-about 100 A.D. (Treatise on Oratory and Education).
Tacitus, about 55-about 118 A.D. (Historian).
Juvenal, about 55-about 135 A.D. (Satirist).
Suetonius, about 73-about 118 A.D. ("Lives of the Twelve Caesars").
Minucius Felix, flourished about 160 A.D. (First Christian Apologist).
Apuleius, 125-about 200 A.D. ("Metamorphoses," or "Golden Ass").

e. The Archaizing Period. This period is characterized by a conscious imitation of the Archaic Period of the second and first centuries B.C.; it overlaps the preceding period, and is of importance from a linguistic rather than from a literary point of view. Of writers who manifest the archaizing tendency most conspicuously may be mentioned Fronto, from whose hand we have a collection of letters addressed to the Emperors Antoninus Pius and Marcus Aurelius; also Aulus Gellius, author of the "Attic Nights." Both of these writers flourished in the second half of the second century A.D.

f. The Period of the Decline, from 180 to the close of literary activity in the sixth century A.D. This period is characterized by rapid and radical alterations in the language. The features of the conversational idiom of the lower strata of society invade the literature, while in the remote provinces, such as Gaul, Spain, Africa, the language suffers from the incorporation of local peculiarities. Representative writers of this period are:

Tertullian, about 160-about 240 A.D. (Christian Writer).
Cyprian, about 200-258 A.D. (Christian Writer).
Lactantius, flourished about 300 A.D. (Defense of Christianity).
Ausonius, about 310-about 395 A.D. (Poet).
Ambrose, about 340-397 (Christian Father).
Augustine, 354-430 (Christian Father—"City of God").
Prudentius, flourished 400 A.D. (Christian Poet).
Claudian, flourished 400 A.D. (Poet).
Boethius, about 480-524 A.D. ("Consolation of Philosophy").

4. Subsequent History of the Latin Language.—After the sixth century A.D. Latin divides into two entirely different streams. One of these is the literary language maintained in courts, in the Church, and among scholars. This was no longer the language of people in general, and as time went on, became more and more artificial. The other stream is the colloquial idiom of the common people, which developed ultimately in the provinces into the modern so-called Romance idioms. These are the Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Provençal (spoken in Provence, i.e. southeastern France), the Rhaeto-Romance (spoken in the Canton of the Grisons in Switzerland), and the Roumanian, spoken in modern Roumania and adjacent districts. All these Romance languages bear the same relation to the Latin as the
different groups of the Indo-European family of languages bear to the parent speech.

PART I.

SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY.

THE ALPHABET.

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no w.

1. K occurs only in Kalendae and a few other words; y and z were introduced from the Greek about 50 B.C., and occur only in foreign words—chiefly Greek.

2. With the Romans, who regularly employed only capitals, I served both as vowel and consonant; so also V. For us, however, it is more convenient to distinguish the vowel and consonant sounds, and to write i and u for the former, j and v for the latter. Yet some scholars prefer to employ i and u in the function of consonants as well as vowels.

CLASSIFICATION OF SOUNDS.

2. 1. The Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are ae, oe, ei, au, eu, ui.

2. Consonants are further subdivided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Spirants.

3. The Mutes are p, t, c, k, q; b, d, g; ph, th, ch. Of these,—

   a) p, t, c, k, q are voiceless,[4] i.e. sounded without voice or vibration of the vocal cords.
   b) b, d, g are voiced,[5] i.e. sounded with vibration of the vocal cords.
   c) ph, th, ch are aspirates. These are confined almost exclusively to words derived from the Greek, and were equivalent to p + h, t + h, c + h, i.e. to the corresponding voiceless mutes with a following breath, as in Eng. loop-hole, hot-house, block-house.

4. The Mutes admit of classification also as

   Labials, p, b, ph.
   Dentals (or Linguals), t, d, th.
   Gutturals (or Palatals), c, k, q, g, ch.

5. The Liquids are l, r. These sounds were voiced.

6. The Nasals are m, n. These were voiced. Besides its ordinary sound, n, when followed by a guttural mute also had another sound,—that of ng in sing,—the so-called n adulterinum; as,—

   anceps, double, pronounced angeps.

7. The Spirants (sometimes called Fricatives) are f, s, h. These were voiceless.

8. The Semivowels are j and v. These were voiced.

9. Double Consonants are x and z. Of these, x was equivalent to cs, while the equivalence of z is uncertain. See § 3, 3.

10. The following table will indicate the relations of the consonant sounds:—
VOICELESS. VOICED. ASPIRATES.

p, b, ph, (Labials).

t, d, th, (Dentals).
c, k, q, g, ch, (Gutturals).

Languages, m, n, (Labial).

Spirants, s, (Dental).
h, (Guttural).

Semivowels, j, v.

a. The Double Consonants, x and z, being compound sounds, do not admit of classification in the above table.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

3. The following pronunciation (often called Roman) is substantially that employed by the Romans at the height of their civilization; i.e., roughly, from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

1. Vowels.

ã as in father; ã as in the first syllable ahá;
è as in they; ê as in met;
ì as in machine; ì as in pin;
ð as in note; ð as in obey, melody;
û as in rude; û as in put;
y like French u, German ü.

2. Diphthongs.

ae like ai in aisle; eu with its two elements, ê and ü, pronounced in rapid succession;
œ like oi in oil; ui occurs almost exclusively in cui and huic. These words may be pronounced as though written kwee and wheek.
ci as in rein;
au like ow in how;

3. Consonants.

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu are pronounced as in English, except that bs, bt are pronounced ps, pt.

c is always pronounced as k.
t is always a plain t, never with the sound of sh as in Eng. oration.
g always as in get; when ngu precedes a vowel, gu has the sound of gw, as in anguis, languidus.
j has the sound of y as in yet.
r was probably slightly trilled with the tip of the tongue.
s always voiceless as in sin; in suádeó, suávis, suéscó, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, su has the sound of sw.
v like w.
x always like ks; never like Eng. gz or z.
z uncertain in sound; possibly like Eng. zd, possibly like z. The latter sound is recommended.

The aspirates ph, ch, th were pronounced very nearly like our stressed Eng. p, c, t—so nearly so, that, for practical purposes, the latter sounds suffice.

Doubled letters, like ll, mm, tt, etc., should be so pronounced that both members of the combination are distinctly articulated.

SYLLABLES.
4. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs. In the division of words into syllables,—

1. A single consonant is joined to the following vowel; as, vo-lat, ge-rit, pe-rit, a-dest.

2. Doubled consonants, like tt, ss, etc., are always separated; as, vit-ta, mis-sus.

3. Other combinations of two or more consonants are regularly separated, and the first consonant of the combination is joined with the preceding vowel; as, ma-gis-tri, dig-nus, mōn-strum, sis-te-re.

4. An exception to Rule 3 occurs when the two consonants consist of a mute followed by l or r (pl, cl, tl; pr, cr, tr, etc.). In such cases both consonants are regularly joined to the following vowel; as, a-grī, vo-lu-crīs, pa-trīs, mā-trīs. Yet if the l or r introduces the second part of a compound, the two consonants are separated; as, ab-rumpō, ad-lātus.

5. The double consonant x is joined to the preceding vowel; as, ax-is, tēx-ī.

QUANTITY.

5. A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is long or short according to the length of time required for its pronunciation. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. This knowledge must be gained, in large measure, by experience; but the following principles are of aid:—

1. A vowel is long,[6]—

   a) before nt or ns; as, īnfāns, īnferior, cōnsūmō, cēnseō, īnsum.
      b) when the result of contraction; as, nilum for nihilum.

2. A vowel is short,—

   a) before nt, nd; as, amant, amandus. A few exceptions occur in compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as, nōndum (nōn dum).
      b) before another vowel, or h; as, meus, trahō. Some exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek; as, Aenēs.

B. Quantity of Syllables.

Syllables are distinguished as long or short according to the length of time required for their pronunciation.

1. A syllable is long,[7]—

   a) if it contains a long vowel; as, māter, rēgnum, dīus.
      b) if it contains a diphthong; as, causae, foedus.
      c) if it contains a short vowel followed by x, z, or any two consonants (except a mute with l or r); as, axis, gaza, restō.

2. A syllable is short, if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant; as, mea, amat.

3. Sometimes a syllable varies in quantity, viz. when its vowel is short and is followed by a mute with l or r, i.e. by pl, cl, tl; pr, cr, tr, etc.; as, āgrī, volūcrīs.[8] Such syllables are called common. In prose they were regularly short, but in verse they might be treated as long at the option of the poet.

NOTE.—These distinctions of long and short are not arbitrary and artificial, but are purely natural. Thus, a syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, as ng, is long, because such a syllable requires more time for its pronunciation; while a syllable containing a short vowel followed by one consonant is short, because it takes less time to pronounce it. In case of the common syllables, the mute and the liquid blend so easily as to produce a combination which takes no more time than a single consonant. Yet by separating the two elements (as ag-ri) the poets were able to use such syllables as long.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm 12/244
6. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as, tégit, mōˈrem.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as, amāˈvī, amántis, mísērūm.

3. When the enclitics -que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -dum are appended to words, if the syllable preceding the enclitic is long (either originally or as a result of adding the enclitic) it is accented; as, miserōˈque, hominisˈque. But if the syllable still remains short after the enclitic has been added, it is not accented unless the word originally took the accent on the antepenult. Thus, pórtaque; but miseráque.

4. Sometimes the final -e of -ne and -ce disappears, but without affecting the accent; as, tantōˈn, istīˈc, illūˈc.

5. In utrāˈque, each, and plērāˈque, most, -que is not properly an enclitic; yet these words accent the penult, owing to the influence of their other cases,—utērque, utrūmque, plērūmque.

**Vowel Changes.**[9]

7. 1. In Compounds,

   a) ē before a single consonant becomes ī; as,—
   
   collīgō for con-legō.

   b) ā before a single consonant becomes ī; as,—
   
   adīgō for ad-agō.

   c) ā before two consonants becomes ē; as,—
   
   expers for ex-pars.

   d) ae becomes ī; as,—
   
   conquīrō for con-quærō.

   e) au becomes ū, sometimes ū; as,—
   
   conclūdō for con-claudō;
   
   explūdō for ex-plaudō.

2. Contraction. Concurrent vowels were frequently contracted into one long vowel. The first of the two vowels regularly prevailed; as,—

   trēs for tre-es;  cōpia for co-opia;

   mālō for ma(v)elō;  cōgō for co-agō;

   amāstī for amā(v)istī;  cōmō for co-emō;

   dēbeō for dē(h)abēō;  jūnior for jū(v)enior.

   nil for nihil.

3. Parasitic Vowels. In the environment of liquids and nasals a parasitic vowel sometimes develops; as, —

   vinculum for earlier vinclum.

So periculum, saeculum.

4. Syncope. Sometimes a vowel drops out by syncope; as,—

   ārdor for āridor (compare āridus);
   
   valuē for validē (compare validus).

**Consonant Changes**[10]

8. 1. Rhotacism. An original s between vowels became r; as,—

   arbōs, Gen. arboris (for arbosis);
genus, Gen. generis (for genesis);
dirimā (for dis-emō).

2. dt, tt, ts each give s or ss; as,—

pēnum for pend-tum;
versum for vert-tum;
mīles for mile-t-s;
.sessus for sedtus;
passus for pattus.

3. Final consonants were often omitted; as,—

cor for cordē;
lac for lact.

4. Assimilation of Consonants. Consonants are often assimilated to a following sound. Thus: accūrō (adc-); aggerō (adg-); assērō (ads-); allātus (adl-); apportō (adp-); attulī (adt-); arrīdeō (adr-); afferō (adf-); occurrō (obc-); suppōnō (subp-); offerō (obf-); corrūō (comr-); collātus (coml-); etc.

5. Partial Assimilation. Sometimes the assimilation is only partial. Thus:

   a) b before s or t becomes p; as,—
       scrīpsī (scrib-sī), scrīptum (scrib-tum).

   b) g before s or t becomes c; as,—
       āctus (āg-tus).

   c) m before a dental or guttural becomes n; as,—
       eundem (eum-dem); prīnceps (prīm-ceps).

PECULIARITIES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

9. Many words have variable orthography.

1. Sometimes the different forms belong to different periods of the language. Thus, quom, voltus, volnus, volt, etc., were the prevailing forms almost down to the Augustan age; after that, cum, vultus, vulnus, vult, etc. So optumus, maxumus, lubet, lubidō, etc. down to about the same era; later, optimus, maximus, libet, libidō, etc.

2. In some words the orthography varies at one and the same period of the language. Examples are exspectō, expectō; existō, existō; epistula, epistola; adulēscēns, adulēscēns; paulus, paullus; cottōdē, cotōdē; and, particularly, prepositional compounds, which often made a concession to the etymology in the spelling; as,—

   ad-gerō or aggerō;
   ad-sērō or asserō;
   ad-liciō or alliciō;
   in-lātus or illātus;
   ad-rogaōs or arrogās;
   sub-moveō or summmoveō;

   and many others.

3. Compounds of jaciō were usually written ēciō, déciō, adiciō, obiciō, etc., but were probably pronounced as though written adjiciō, objiciō, etc.

4. Adjectives and nouns in -quus, -quum; -vus, -vum; -us, -uum preserved the earlier forms in -quōs, -quom; -vōs, -vōm; -uos, -uom, down through the Ciceronian age; as, antiquōs, antiquōm; saevōs; perpetuos; equōs; servōs. Similarly verbs in the 3d plural present indicative exhibit the terminations -quōnt, -quontur; -vōnt, -vontur; -uont, -uontur, for the same period; as, relinquōnt, loquontur; vívont, metuont.

The older spelling, while generally followed in editions of Plautus and Terence, has not yet been adopted in our prose texts.
PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

10. The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English, viz. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

11. Of these eight parts of speech the first four are capable of Inflection, i.e. of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called Declension; in case of verbs, Conjugation.

CHAPTER I.—Declension.

A. NOUNS.

12. A Noun is the name of a person, place, thing, or quality; as, Caesar, Caesar; Rōma, Rome; pennā, feather; virtūs, courage.

1. Nouns are either Proper or Common. Proper nouns are permanent names of persons or places; as, Caesar, Rōma. Other nouns are Common: as, pennā, virtūs.

2. Nouns are also distinguished as Concrete or Abstract.

   a) Concrete nouns are those which designate individual objects; as, mōns, mountain; pēs, foot; diēs, day; mēns, mind.

   Under concrete nouns are included, also, collective nouns; as, legiō, legion; comītātus, retinue.

   b) Abstract nouns designate qualities; as, cōnstantia, steadfastness; paupertās, poverty.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

13. There are three Genders,—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Gender in Latin is either natural or grammatical.

Natural Gender.

14. The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex. Natural gender is confined entirely to names of persons; and these are—

1. Masculine, if they denote males; as,—

   nauta, sailor; agricola, farmer.

2. Feminine, if they denote females; as,—

   māter, mother; rēgīna, queen.

Grammatical Gender.

15. Grammatical gender is determined not by sex, but by the general signification of the word, or the ending of its Nominative Singular. By grammatical gender, nouns denoting things or qualities are often Masculine or Feminine, simply by virtue of their signification or the ending of the Nominative Singular. The following are the general principles for determining grammatical gender:—
A. Gender determined by Signification.

1. Names of Rivers, Winds, and Months are Masculine; as,—

Sēquana, Seine; Eurus, east wind; Aprilis, April.

2. Names of Trees, and such names of Towns and Islands as end in -us, are Feminine; as,—

quercus, oak; Corinthus, Corinth; Rhodus, Rhodes.

Other names of towns and islands follow the gender of their endings (see B, below); as,—

Delphī, n.; Leuctra, n.; Tibur, n.; Carthāgō, f.

3. Indeclinable nouns, also infinitives and phrases, are Neuter; as,—

nihil, nothing; nefās, wrong; amāre, to love.

NOTE.—Exceptions to the above principles sometimes occur; as, Allia (the river), f.

B. Gender determined by Ending of Nominative Singular.

The gender of other nouns is determined by the ending of the Nominative Singular.[11]

NOTE 1.—Common Gender. Certain nouns are sometimes Masculine, sometimes Feminine. Thus, sacerdōs may mean either priest or priestess, and is Masculine or Feminine accordingly. So also civis, citizen; parēns, parent; etc. The gender of such nouns is said to be common.

NOTE 2.—Names of animals usually have grammatical gender, according to the ending of the Nominative Singular, but the one form may designate either the male or female; as, ōns, m., goose or gander. So vulpēs, f., fox; aquīla, f., eagle.

NUMBER.

16. The Latin has two Numbers,—the Singular and Plural. The Singular denotes one object, the Plural, more than one.

CASES.

17. There are six Cases in Latin:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>Case of Subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Objective with of, or Possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>Objective with to or for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>Case of Direct Object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>Case of Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>Objective with by, from, in, with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. LOCATIVE. Vestiges of another case, the Locative (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

2. OBLIQUE CASES. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called Oblique Cases.

3. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. The different cases are formed by appending certain case-endings to a fundamental part called the Stem.[12] Thus, portam (Accusative Singular) is formed by adding the case-ending -m to the stem porta-. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has coalesced so closely with the actual case-ending that the latter has become more or less obscured. The apparent case-ending thus resulting is called a termination.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.
18. There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DECLENSION</th>
<th>FINAL LETTER OF STEM.</th>
<th>GEN. TERMINATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>-ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>i / Some consonant</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>ū</td>
<td>-ūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>-ēī / -ēī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cases alike in Form.

19. 1. The Vocative is regularly like the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in -us of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Accusative and Nominative are always alike, and in the Plural end in -ā.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

---------------

FIRST DECLENSION.

ā-Stems.

20. Pure Latin nouns of the First Declension regularly end, in the Nominative Singular, in -ā, weakened from -ā, and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:—

Porta, gate; stem, portā-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CASES.</th>
<th>MEANINGS.</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>porta</td>
<td>a gate (as subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>portae</td>
<td>of a gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>portae</td>
<td>to or for a gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>portām</td>
<td>a gate (as object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>porta</td>
<td>O gate!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>portā</td>
<td>with, by, from, in a gate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CASES.</th>
<th>MEANINGS.</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>portae</td>
<td>gates (as subject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>portārum</td>
<td>of gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>portās</td>
<td>to or for gates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>portās</td>
<td>gates (as object)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>portae</td>
<td>O gates!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>portās</td>
<td>with, by, from, in gates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Latin has no article, and porta may mean either a gate or the gate; and in the Plural, gates or the gates.

Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

21. 1. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, nauta, sailor; agricola,
farmer; also, Hadria, Adriatic Sea.

2. Rare Case-Endings,—

a) An old form of the Genitive Singular in -ās is preserved in the combination pater familiās, father of a family; also in māter familiās, filius familiās, filia familiās. But the regular form of the Genitive in -ae is also admissible in these expressions; as, pater familiāe.

b) In poetry a Genitive in -āi also occurs; as, aulāi.

c) The Locative Singular ends in -ac; as, Rōmae, at Rome.

d) A Genitive Plural in -um instead of -ārum sometimes occurs; as, Dardanidum instead of Dardanidārum. This termination -um is not a contraction of -ārum, but represents an entirely different case-ending.

e) Instead of the regular ending -is, we usually find -ābus in the Dative and Ablative Plural of dea, goddess, and filia, daughter, especially when it is important to distinguish these nouns from the corresponding forms of deus, god, and filius, son. A few other words sometimes have the same peculiarity; as, libertābus (from liberta, freedwoman), equābus (mares), to avoid confusion with libertēs (from libertus, freedman) and equis (from equus, horse).

Greek Nouns.

22. These end in -ē (Feminine); -ās and -ēs (Masculine). In the Plural they are declined like regular Latin nouns of the First Declension. In the Singular they are declined as follows:—

| Archiās, | Epitomē, | Comētēs, |
| Archias. | epitome. | comet. |
| Nom. | Archiās | epitomē | comētēs |
| Gen. | Archiāe | epitomēs | comētæ |
| Dat. | Archiāe | epitomae | comētæ |
| Acc. Archiam (or -ān) | epitomēn | comētēn |
| Voc. | Archiā | epitomē | comētē (or -ā) |
| Abl. | Archiā | epitomē | comētē (or -ā) |

1. But most Greek nouns in -ē become regular Latin nouns in -a, and are declined like porta; as, grammatica, grammar, mūsica, music; rhētorica, rhetoric.

2. Some other peculiarities occur, especially in poetry.

SECOND DECLENSION.

ō-Stems.

23. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in -us, -cr, -ir, Masculine; -um, Neuter. Originally -us in the Nominative of the Masculine was -os; and -um of the Neuters -om. So also in the Accusative.

Nouns in -us and -um are declined as follows:—

| Hortus, garden; stem, hortō-. | Bellum, war; stem, bellō-. |
| SINGULAR. | TERMINATION. | TERMINATION. |
| Nom. | hortus | -us | bellum | -um |
| Gen. | hortī | -ī | bellī | -ī |
| Dat. | hortō | -ō | bellō | -ō |
| Acc. | hortum | -um | bellum | -um |
| Voc. | horte | -e | bellum | -um |
Abl. hortō -ō bellō -ō

PLURAL.
Nom. hortī -ī bella -a
Gen. hortōrum -ōrum bellōrum -ōrum
Dat. hortīs -īs bellīs -īs
Acc. hortōs -ōs bella -a
Voc. hortī -ī bella -a
Abl. hortīs -īs bellīs -īs

Nouns in -er and -ir are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.
Nom. puerī | agrī | virī | -ī |
Gen. puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | -ōrum |
Dat. puerīs | agrīs | virīs | -īs |
Acc. puerōs | agrōs | virōs | -ōs |
Voc. puerī | agrī | virī | -ī |
Abl. puerīs | agrīs | virīs | -īs |

1. Note that in words of the type of puer and vir the final vowel of the stem has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of ager, the stem is further modified by the development of e before r.

2. The following nouns in -er are declined like puer: adulter, adulterer; gener, son-in-law; Liber, Bacchus; socer, father-in-law; vesper, evening; and compounds in -fer and -ger, as signifer, armiger.

Nouns in -vus, -vum, -quus.

24. Nouns ending in the Nominative Singular in -vus, -vum, -quus, exhibited two types of inflection in the classical Latin,—an earlier and a later,—as follows:—

Earlier Inflection (including Caesar and Cicero).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>servos, m., slave.</td>
<td>aevom, n., age.</td>
<td>equos, m., horse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>servos</td>
<td>aevom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>aevī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>aevō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>servom</td>
<td>aevom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>serve</td>
<td>aevom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>aevō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Later inflection (after Cicero).

SINGULAR.
New Latin Grammar

| Nom. | servus | aevum | equus |
| Gen. | servī | aevī | equī |
| Dat. | servō | aevō | equō |
| Act. | servūm | aevūm | equum |
| Voc. | serve | aevum | eque |
| Abl. | servō | aevō | equō |

1. The Plural of these nouns is regular, and always uniform.

Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

25. 1. Proper names in -ius regularly form the Genitive Singular in -ī (instead of -īi), and the Vocative Singular in -i (for -ie); as Vergīli, of Virgil, or O virtig (instead of Vergillī, Vergilie). In such words the accent stands upon the penult, even though that be short. Nouns in -ajus, -ejus form the Gen. in -ai, -ei, as Pompejus, Pompej.

2. Nouns in -ius and -ium, until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (31 B.C.), regularly formed the Genitive Singular in -i (instead of -īi); as,—

| Nom. | ingenium | filius |
| Gen. | ingēnī | filī |

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. Filius forms the Vocative Singular in -i (for -ie); viz. fili, O son!

4. Deus, god, lacks the Vocative Singular. The Plural is inflected as follows:—

| Nom. | dī | (deī) |
| Gen. | deōrum | (deum) |
| Dat. | dīs | (deīs) |
| Acc. | deōs |
| Voc. | dī | (deī) |
| Abl. | dīs | (deīs) |

5. The Locative Singular ends in -i; as, Corinthī, at Corinth.

6. The Genitive Plural has -um, instead of -ōrum,—

   a) in words denoting money and measure; as, talentum, of talents; modium, of pecks; sēstertium, of sesterces.
   b) in duumvir, triumvir, decemvir; as, duumvirum.
   c) sometimes in other words; as, liberum, of the children; socium, of the allies.

Exceptions to Gender in the Second Declension.

26. 1. The following nouns in -us are Feminine by exception:—

   a) Names of towns, islands, trees—according to the general rule laid down in § 15, 2; also some names of countries; as Aegyptus, Egypt.
   b) Five special words,—

   alvus, belly;
   carbasus, flax;
   colus, distaff;
   hōmus, ground;
   vannus, winnowing-fan.

   c) A few Greek Feminines; as,—

   atomus, atom;
diphthongus, diphthong.

2. The following nouns in -us are Neuter:—

pelagus, sea;
vīrus, poison;
vulgus, crowd.

Greek Nouns of the Second Declension.

27. These end in -os, -ōs, Masculine or Feminine; and -on, Neuter. They are mainly proper names, and are declined as follows:—

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barbitos, m. and f., lyre.</td>
<td>Androgeōs, m., Androgeos.</td>
<td>Īlion, n., Troy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>barbitos</td>
<td>Androgeōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>barbitī</td>
<td>Androgeō, -ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>barbitō</td>
<td>Androgeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>barbiton</td>
<td>Androgeō, -ōn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>barbite</td>
<td>Androgeōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>barbitō</td>
<td>Androgeō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -os sometimes form the Accusative Singular in -um instead of -on; as, Dēlum, Delos.

2. The Plural of Greek nouns, when it occurs, is usually regular.

3. For other rare forms of Greek nouns the lexicon may be consulted.

THIRD DECLENSION.

28. Nouns of the Third Declension end in -a, -e, -ē, -ō, -y, -c, -l, -n, -r, -s, -t, -x. The Third Declension includes several distinct classes of Stems,—

I. Pure Consonant-Stems.
II. i-Stems.
III. Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of ī-Stems.
IV. A very few stems ending in a long vowel or a diphthong.
V. Irregular Nouns.

I. Consonant-Stems.

29. 1. In these the stem appears in its unaltered form in all the oblique cases, so that the actual case-endings may be clearly recognized.

2. Consonant-Stems fall into several natural subdivisions, according as the stem ends in a Mute, Liquid, Nasal, or Spirant.

A. Mute-Stems.

30. Mute-Stems may end,—

1. In a Labial (p); as, prīncep-s.
2. In a Guttural (g or c); as, rēmex (rēmeg-s); dux (duc-s).
3. In a Dental (d or t); as, lapis (lapid-s); miles (milet-s).
1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (p).

31. Prīnceps, m., chief.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. prīnceps</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. prīncipīs</td>
<td>-īs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. prīncipī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. prīncipēm</td>
<td>-ēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. prīnceps</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. prīncipe</td>
<td>-e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. prīncipēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. prīncipum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. prīncipibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. prīncipēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. prīncipibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).

32. In these the termination -s of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing -x.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rēmex m., rower</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dux c., leader</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rēmex</td>
<td>rēmigēs</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rēmigīs</td>
<td>rēmigum</td>
<td>ducīs</td>
<td>ducum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rēmigī</td>
<td>rēmigibus</td>
<td>ducē</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rēmigēm</td>
<td>rēmigēs</td>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. rēmex</td>
<td>rēmigēs</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rēmige</td>
<td>rēmigibus</td>
<td>duce</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (d, t).

33. In these the final d or t of the stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending -s.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lapis m., stone</td>
<td></td>
<td>Miles m., soldier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. lapis</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. lapidīs</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>militum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. lapidī</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>militī</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. lapidēm</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>militēm</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. lapis</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>milīte</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. lapide</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td></td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B. Liquid Stems.

34. These end in -l or -r.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vigil m., watchman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. vigil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. vigilīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. vigilī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Acc. vigilem victörem aequor
Voc. vigil victor aequor
Abl. vigile victöre aequore

PLURAL.
Nom. vigilēs victöres aequora
Gen. vigilum victōrum aequorum
Dat. vigilius victōribus aequoribus
Acc. vigilēs victōres aequora
Voc. vigilēs victōres aequora
Abl. vigilius victōribus aequoribus

1. Masculine and Feminine stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without termination.

2. The termination is also lacking in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Singular of all neuter of the Third Declension.

C. Nasal Stems.

35. These end in -n,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leō, m., lion.</th>
<th>Nōmen, n., name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLURAL.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. leō</td>
<td>leōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. leōnīs</td>
<td>leōnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. leōnī</td>
<td>leōnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. leōnem</td>
<td>leōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. leō</td>
<td>leōnēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. leōne</td>
<td>leōnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. s-Stems.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. mōs</td>
<td>genus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mōris</td>
<td>generis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mōrī</td>
<td>generī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mōrem</td>
<td>genus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. mōs</td>
<td>genus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mōre</td>
<td>genere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. mōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. mōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. mōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. mōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. mōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. mōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Note that the final s of the stem becomes r (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In many words (honor, color, and the like) the r of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier s, though the forms honōs, colōs, etc., also occur, particularly in early Latin and in poetry.
II. i-Stems.

A. Masculine and Feminine i-Stems.

37. These regularly end in -is in the Nominative Singular; and always have -ium in the Genitive Plural. Originally the Accusative Singular ended in -im, the Ablative Singular in -i, and the Accusative Plural in -is; but these endings have been largely displaced by -em, -e, and -ēs, the endings of Consonant-Stems.

38. Tussis, ῆγνis, Hostis,
f., cough; m., fire; c., enemy;
stem, stem, stem,
tussī-, ῆγνī- hostī-.

SINGULAR. TERMINATION.
Nom. tussis ῆγνis hostis -is
Gen. tussis ῆγνis hostis -is
Dat. tussī ῆγνī hostī -ī
Acc. tussīm ῆγνem hostem -im, -em
Voc. tussis ῆγνis hostis -is
Abl. tussī ῆγνī or e hoste -ī, -e

PLURAL.
Nom. tussēs ῆγνēs hostēs -ēs
Gen. tussium ῆγνium hostium -ium
Dat. tussībus ῆγνibus hostibus -ibus
Acc. tussīs or ῆγνis -ēs or -ēs hostīs or -ēs
Voc. tussēs ῆγνēs hostēs -ēs
Abl. tussībus ῆγνibus hostibus -ibus

1. To the same class belong—

apis, bee. crātis, hurdle.
auris, ear. *febris, fever.
avis, bird. orbis, circle.
axis, axle. ovis, sheep.
*būris, plough-beam. pelvis, basin.
clāvis, key. puppis, stern.
collis, hill. restis, rope.
and many others.

Words marked with a star regularly have Acc. -im; those marked with a † regularly have Abl. -ī. Of the others, many at times show -im and -i. Town and river names in -is regularly have -im, -i.

2. Not all nouns in -is are i-Stems. Some are genuine consonant-stems, and have the regular consonant terminations throughout, notably, canis, dog; juvenis, youth.[14]

3. Some genuine i-Stems have become disguised in the Nominative Singular; as, pars, part, for part(tis); anas, duck, for ana(tis); so also mors, death; dōs, dowry; nox, night; sors, lot; mēns, mind; ars, art; gēns, tribe; and some others.

B. Neuter i-Stems.

39. These end in the Nominative Singular in -e, -al, and -ar. They always have -i in the Ablative Singular, -ia in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and -ium in the Genitive Plural, thus holding more steadfastly to the i-character than do Masculine and Feminine i-Stems.

Sedile, seat; Animal, animal; Calcar, spur;
stem, sedīli-. stem, animāli-. stem, calcāri-.
### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>scěliē</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>scěliōs</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>animalālis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>scěliī</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>animalī</td>
<td>calcārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>scěliē</td>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>scěliē</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>calcar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Abl. | scěliī | PLURAL.
| Nom. | scěliā | Gen. | animalālia | calcāria | -ia |
| Gen. | scěliōnum | Dat. | animalālium | calcārium | -ium |
| Dat. | scěliōbus | Acc. | animalālius | calcāribus | -ibus |
| Acc. | scěliā | Voc. | animalālia | calcāria | -ia |
| Voc. | scěliā | Abl. | animalālius | calcāribus | -ibus |

1. In most words of this class the final -i of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as -e.

2. Proper names in -e form the Ablative Singular in -e; as, Sōracte, Mt. Soracte; so also sometimes mare, sea.

### III. Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the Inflection of ī-Stems.

40. Many Consonant-Stems have so far adapted themselves to the inflection of ī-stems as to take -ium in the Genitive Plural, and -is in the Accusative Plural. Their true character as Consonant-Stems, however, is shown by the fact that they never take -im in the Accusative Singular, or -i in the Ablative Singular. The following words are examples of this class:

| Caedēs, f., slaughter; | Arx, f., citadel; | Linter, f., skiff; |
| Caedēs | Arx | Linter |
| stem, caed- | stem, arc- | stem, lintr- |

### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>arx</td>
<td>linter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caēdis</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>arcī</td>
<td>lintrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedī</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>arcem</td>
<td>lintrēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedem</td>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>arx</td>
<td>linter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>arce</td>
<td>lintre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Termination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>arcēs</td>
<td>lintrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
<td>lintrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>arcēs, -iās</td>
<td>lintrīs, -iās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>arcēs</td>
<td>lintrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>arcibus</td>
<td>lintrībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The following classes of nouns belong here:

a) Nouns in -ēs, with Genitive in -is; as, nūbēs, aedēs, clādēs, etc.

b) Many monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by one or more consonants; as, urbs, mōns, stirps, lanx.

c) Most nouns in -ns and -rs as, cliēns, cohorts.

d) Útēr, venter; für, īs, mās, mūs, nīx; and the Plurals faucēs, penātēs, Optimātēs, Samnitēs, Quīrtēs.
e) Sometimes nouns in -tās with Genitive -tātis; as, civitās, actās. Civitās usually has civitātium.

IV. Stems in -ī, -ū, and Diphthongs.

41. **Vis., f., force;**  stem, vī-
**Sūs, c., swine;** stem, sū-
**Bōs, c., ox, cow;** stem, bou-
**Juppiter, m.,** Jupiter;
**stem, Jou-**

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>vīs</th>
<th>sūs</th>
<th>bōs</th>
<th>Juppiter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>suīs</td>
<td>bovis</td>
<td>Jovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>suīr</td>
<td>bovī</td>
<td>Jovī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vīm</td>
<td>suem</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>Jovem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>vīs</td>
<td>sūs</td>
<td>bōs</td>
<td>Juppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vīr</td>
<td>sue</td>
<td>bove</td>
<td>Jove</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>vīrēs</th>
<th>suēs</th>
<th>bovēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>vīrium</td>
<td>suum</td>
<td>bovum, boum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>suibus, subus</td>
<td>bōbus, būbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>suēs</td>
<td>bovēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>suēs</td>
<td>bovēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>suibus, subus</td>
<td>bōbus, būbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Notice that the oblique cases of sūs have ū in the root syllable.

2. Grūs is declined like sūs, except that the Dative and Ablative Plural are always grūibus.

3. Juppiter is for Jou-pater, and therefore contains the same stem as in Jov-īs, Jov-ī, etc.

Nāvis was originally a diphthong stem ending in au-, but it has passed over to the I-stems (§ 37). Its ablative often ends in -ī.

V. Irregular Nouns.

42. **Senex, m.,** old man. **Carō, f.,** flesh. **Os, n.,** bone.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>senex</th>
<th>carō</th>
<th>os</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>senis</td>
<td>carnis</td>
<td>ossis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>senī</td>
<td>carnī</td>
<td>ossī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>senem</td>
<td>carnem</td>
<td>os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>senex</td>
<td>carō</td>
<td>os</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sene</td>
<td>carne</td>
<td>osse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>senēs</th>
<th>carnēs</th>
<th>ossa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>senum</td>
<td>carnium</td>
<td>ossium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>senibus</td>
<td>carnibus</td>
<td>ossibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>senēs</td>
<td>carnēs</td>
<td>ossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>senēs</td>
<td>carnēs</td>
<td>ossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>senibus</td>
<td>carnibus</td>
<td>ossibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Iter, itineris, n., way, is inflected regularly throughout from the stem itiner-.

2. Supellex, supellectilis, f., furniture, is confined to the Singular. The oblique cases are formed from the stem supellectil-. The ablative has both -ī and -ē.
3. **Jecur**, n., *liver*, forms its oblique cases from two stems,—*jecor-* and *jecinor-*; Thus, Gen. *jecoris* or *jecinoris*.

4. **Femur**, n., *thigh*, usually forms its oblique cases from the stem *femor-*; but sometimes from the stem *femin-*; Thus, Gen. *femoris* or *feminis*.

**General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.**

43. 1. Nouns in -ō, -ōr, -ōs, -er, -ēs are Masculine.

2. Nouns in -ās, -ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant); -dō, -gō (Genitive -inis); -iō (abstract and collective), -ūs (Genitive -ātis or -ūdis) are Feminine.

3. Nouns ending in -a, -e, -i, -y, -o, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -ūs are Neuter.

**Chief Exceptions to Gender in the Third Declension.**

44. **Exceptions to the Rule for Masculines.**

1. Nouns in -ō.
   
   *a.* Feminine: carō, flesh.

   
   *a.* Feminine: arbor, tree.
   
   *b.* Neuter: aequor, sea; cor, heart; marmor, marble.

   
   *a.* Feminine: dōs, dowry.
   
   *b.* Neuter: ōs (ōris), mouth.

   
   *a.* Feminine: linter, skiff.
   
   *b.* Neuter: cadāver, corpse; iter, way; tūber, tumor; ūber, udder. Also botanical names in -er; as, ascer, maple.

   
   *a.* Feminine: seges, crop.

45. **Exceptions to the Rule for Feminines.**

1. Nouns in -ās.
   
   *a.* Masculine: vās, bondsman.
   
   *b.* Neuter: vās, vessel.

   
   *a.* Masculine: ariēs, ram; pariēs, wall; pēs, foot.

3. Nouns in -is.
   
   *a.* Masculine: all nouns in -nis and -guis; as, amnis, river; ignis, fire; pānis, bread; sanguis, blood; unguis, nail.
   
   Also—
   
   axis, axle.  
   collis, hill.  
   fascis, bundle.  
   lapis, stone.  
   mēnis, month.  
   piscis, fish.  
   postis, post.  
   pulvis, dust.  
   orbis, circle.  
   sentis, brier.

4. Nouns in -x.
a. Masculine: *apex*, *peak*; *cōdex*, *tree-trunk*; *grex*, *flock*; *imbrēx*, *tile*; *pollex*, *thumb*; *vertex*, *summit*; *calix*, *cup*.

5. Nouns in -s preceded by a consonant.
   a. Masculine: *dēns*, *tooth*; *fōns*, *fountain*; *mōns*, *mountain*; *pōns*, *bridge*.

   a. Masculine: *cardō*, *hinge*; *ōrdō*, *order*.

46. Exceptions to the Rule for Neuters.

1. Nouns in -ī.
   a. Masculine: *sōl*, *sun*; *sāl*, *salt*.

2. Nouns in -n.
   a. Masculine: *pecten*, *comb*.

   a. Masculine: *vultūr*, *vulture*.

   a. Masculine: *lepūs*, *hare*.

Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

47. The following are the chief peculiarities of these:—

1. The ending -ā in the Accusative Singular; as, *aetherā*, *aether*; *Salamīnā*, *Salamis*.

2. The ending -ēs in the Nominative Plural; as, *Phrygēs*, *Phrygians*.

3. The ending -ēs in the Accusative Plural; as, *Phrygās*, *Phrygians*.

4. Proper names in -ās (Genitive -antīs) have -ā in the Vocative Singular; as, *Atlās* (*Atlantis*), Vocative *Atlā*.

5. Neuters in -ma (Genitive -matis) have -īs instead of -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural; as, *poēmātis*, *poems*.

6. *Orpheus*, and other proper names ending in -eus, form the Vocative Singular in -eu (*Orpheu*, *etc.*). But in prose the other cases usually follow the second declension; as, *Orphēi*, *Orphēo*, *etc*.

7. Proper names in -ēs, like *Periclēs*, form the Genitive Singular sometimes in -īs, sometimes in -ī, as, *Pericīlis* or *Perīcilī*.

8. Feminine proper names in -ō have -ūs in the Genitive, but -ō in the other oblique cases; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>Didūs</td>
<td>Voc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>Didō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Didō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. The regular Latin endings often occur in Greek nouns.

________________________

FOURTH DECLENSION.

ū-Stems.

48. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in -us Masculine, and -ū Neuter. They are declined as follows:
Fructus, m., fruit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>fructus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fructus</td>
<td>fructus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cornu, n., horn.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>cornu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cornus</td>
<td>cornus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cornus</td>
<td>cornus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cornus</td>
<td>cornus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>cornus</td>
<td>cornus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cornus</td>
<td>cornus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

49. 1. Nouns in -us, particularly in early Latin, often form the Genitive Singular in -ī, following the analogy of nouns in -us of the Second Declension; as, senātī, ornātī. This is usually the case in Plautus and Terence.

2. Nouns in -us sometimes have -ū in the Dative Singular, instead of -uī; as, fructū (for fructuī).

3. The ending -ubus, instead of -ibus, occurs in the Dative and Ablative Plural of artūs (Plural), limbus; tribus, tribe; and in dis-syllables in -cus; as, artubus, tribubus, arcubus, lacubus. But with the exception of tribus, all these words admit the forms in -ibus as well as those in -ubus.

4. Domus, house, is declined according to the Fourth Declension, but has also the following forms of the Second:

- domī (locative), at home;
- domō, from home;
- domum, homewards, to one's home;
- domōs, homewards, to their (etc.) homes

5. The only Neuters of this declension in common use are: cornū, horn; genu, knee; and verū, spit.

Exceptions to Gender in the Fourth Declension.

50. The following nouns in -us are Feminine: acus, needle; domus, house; manus, hand; porticus, colonnade; tribus, tribe; Idūs (Plural), Ides; also names of trees (§ 15, 2).

FIFTH DECLENSION.

ē-Stems.

51. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in -ēs, and are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diēs, m., day.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
<th>Rēs, f., thing.</th>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>rēm</td>
<td>rērum</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fifth Declension.

52. 1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is -ēī, instead of -ēī, when a consonant precedes;
as, spēi, rēi, fidēi.

2. A Genitive ending -ī (for -ēi) is found in plēbī (from plēbēs = plēbs) in the expressions tribūnus plēbī, tribune of the people, and plēbī scītum, decree of the people; sometimes also in other words.

3. A Genitive and Dative form in -ē sometimes occurs; as, aciē.

4. With the exception of diēs and rēs, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural. But aciēs, seriēs, speciēs, spēs, and a few others are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

Gender in the Fifth Declension.

53. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except diēs, day, and merīdiēs, mid-day. But diēs is sometimes Feminine in the Singular, particularly when it means an appointed day.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

54. Here belong—

1. Nouns used in the Singular only.
2. Nouns used in the Plural only.
3. Nouns used only in certain cases.
4. Indeclinable Nouns.

Nouns used in the Singular only.

55. Many nouns, from the nature of their signification, are regularly used in the Singular only. Thus:—

1. Proper names; as, Cicerō, Cicero; Italia, Italy.
2. Nouns denoting material; as, aes, copper; lac, milk.
3. Abstract nouns; as, ignōrantia, ignorance; bonitās, goodness.
4. But the above classes of words are sometimes used in the Plural. Thus:—

   a) Proper names,—to denote different members of a family, or specimens of a type; as, Cicerōnēs, the Ciceros; Catōnēs, men like Cato.
   b) Names of materials,—to denote objects made of the material, or different kinds of the substance; as, aera, bronzes (i.e. bronze figures); ligna, woods.
   c) Abstract nouns,—to denote instances of the quality; as, ignōrantiae, cases of ignorance.

Nouns used in the Plural only.

56. Here belong—

1. Many geographical names; as, Thēbae, Thebes; Leuctra, Leuctra; Pompeji, Pompeii.
2. Many names of festivals; as, Megalēsia, the Megalesian festival.
3. Many special words, of which the following are the most important:—

   angustiae, narrow pass.
   arma, weapons.
   dēliciae, delight.
   dividiae, riches.
   Ídēs, Ides.
   indūtiae, truce.
   īnvidiae, ambush.
   majōrēs, ancestors.

   mānēs, spirits of the dead.
   moenia, city walls.
   minae, threats.
   nūptiae, marriage.
   posterī, descendants.
   reliquiae, remainder.
   tenebrae, darkness.
   verbera, blows.
Also in classical prose regularly—

\begin{itemize}
\item cervēs, neck.
\item fidēs, lyre.
\item nārēs, nose.
\item vīscerā, viscera.
\end{itemize}

Nouns used only in Certain Cases.

57. 1. **Used in only One Case.** Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are found only in the Ablative Singular as, jussū, by the order; injussū, without the order; nātū, by birth.

2. **Used in Two Cases.**


   b. Spontis (free-will), Gen. Sing.; sponte, Abl. Sing.

3. **Used in Three Cases.** Nēmō, no one (Nom.), has also the Dat. nēminī and the Acc. nēminem. The Gen. and Abl. are supplied by the corresponding cases of nūllus; viz. nūllus and nūlō.

4. Impetus has the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing., and the Nom. and Acc. Plu.; viz. impetus, impetum, impetū, impētūs.

5. a. Precī, precem, prece, lacks the Nom. and Gen. Sing.

   b. Vicīs, vicem, vice, lacks the Nom. and Dat. Sing.

6. Opīs, dapis, and frūgis,—all lack the Nom. Sing.

7. Many monosyllables of the Third Declension lack the Gen. Plu.: as, cor, lūx, sōl, aes, ōs (ōris), rūs, sāl, tūs.

Indeclinable Nouns.

58. Here belong—

\begin{itemize}
\item fas, n., right.
\item īnstar, n., likeness.
\item māne, n., morning.
\item nefās, n., impiety.
\item nihil, n., nothing.
\item secus, n., sex.
\end{itemize}

1. With the exception of māne (which may serve also as Ablative, in the morning), the nouns in this list are simply Neuters confined in use to the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

Heteroclītes.

59. These are nouns whose forms are partly of one declension, and partly of another. Thus:—

1. Several nouns have the entire Singular of one declension, while the Plural is of another; as,—

\begin{itemize}
\item vās, vāsis (vessel);
\item Plu., vāsa, vāsorōm, vāsīs, etc.
\item jūgerum, jūgerī (acre);
\item Plu., jūgera, jūgerum, jūgeribus, etc.
\end{itemize}

2. Several nouns, while belonging in the main to one declension, have certain special forms belonging to another. Thus:—

   a) Many nouns of the First Declension ending in -ia take also a Nom. and Acc. of the Fifth; as, māteriēs, māteriēm, material, as well as māteria, māteriam.

   b) Famēs, hunger, regularly of the Third Declension, has the Abl. famē of the Fifth.

   c) Requiēs, requiētis, rest, regularly of the Third Declension, takes an Acc. of the Fifth, requiem, in addition to requiētem.

   d) Besides plēbs, plēbis, common people, of the Third Declension, we find plēbēs, plēbēt (also plēbī, see § 52, 2), of the Fifth.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

60. Heterogeneous nouns vary in Gender. Thus:—
1. Several nouns of the Second Declension have two forms,—one Masc. in -us, and one Neuter in -um; as, *clipeus, clipeum, shield; carrus, carrum, cart.*

2. Other nouns have one gender in the Singular, another in the Plural; as,—

**| **SINGULAR. | **PLURAL. |
---|---|---|
**balneum, n., bath;** | **balneae, f., bath-house.** |
**epulum, n., feast;** | **epulae, f., feast.** |
**frēnum, n., bridle;** | **frēnī, m. (rarely frēna, n.), bridle.** |
**jocus, m., jest;** | **joca, n. (also jocī, m.), jests.** |
**locus, m., place;** | **loca, n., places; locī, m., passages or topics in an author.** |
**rāstrum, n., rake;** | **rāstrī, m.; rāstra, n., rakes.**

*a. Heterogeneous nouns may at the same time be heteroclitic, as in case of the first two examples above.*

**Plurals with Change of Meaning.**

61. The following nouns have one meaning in the Singular, and another in the Plural:—

**| **SINGULAR. | **PLURAL. |
---|---|---|
**aedēs, temple;** | **aedēs, house.** |
**auxilium, help;** | **auxilia, auxiliary troops.** |
**carcer, prison;** | **carcerēs, stalls for racing-chariot.** |
**castrum, fort;** | **castra, camp.** |
**cōpia, abundance;** | **cōpiae, troops, resources.** |
**fīnis, end;** | **fīnēs, borders, territory.** |
**fortūna, fortune;** | **fortūnae, possessions, wealth.** |
**grātia, favor, gratitude;** | **grātiae, thanks.** |
**impedimentum, hindrance;** | **impedimenta, baggage.** |
**littera, letter (of the alphabet);** | **litterae, epistle; literature.** |
**mōs, habit, custom;** | **mōrēs, character.** |
**opera, help, service;** | **operae, laborers.** |
**(ops) opis, help;** | **opēs, resources.** |
**pars, part;** | **partēs, party; rōle.** |
**sāl, salt;** | **sālēs, wit.**

**B. ADJECTIVES.**

62. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes,—

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

**ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.**

63. In these the Masculine is declined like *hortus, puer, or ager*, the Feminine like *porta*, and the Neuter like *bellum*. Thus, Masculine like *hortus*:

**Bonus, good.**

**| **SINGULAR. | **MASCULINE. | **FEMININE. | **NEUTER. |
---|---|---|---|
**Nom.** | **bonus** | **bona** | **bonum** |
**Gen.** | **bonī** | **bonae** | **bonī**
Dat.  bonō       bonae        bonō
Acc.  bonum      bonam       bonum
Voc.  bone       bona        bonum
Abl.  bonō       bonā        bonō

PLURAL.
Nom.  bonī       bonae       bona
Gen.  bonōrum    bonārum     bonōrum
Dat.  bonīs      bonīs       bonīs
Acc.  bonōs      bonās       bona
Voc.  bonī       bonae       bona
Abl.  bonīs      bonīs       bonīs

1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. of Adjectives in -ius ends in -ī (not in -ī as in case of Nouns; see § 25, 1; 2). So also the Voc. Sing. of such Adjectives ends in -ie, not in ī. Thus eximius forms Gen. eximī, Voc. eximīe.

2. Distributives (see § 78, 1, c) regularly form the Gen. Plu. Masc. and Neut. in -um instead of -ōrum (compare § 25, 6); as, dēnum centēnum; but always singulōrum.

64. Masculine like puer:—

Tener, tender.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE.</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>tener</td>
<td>tenera</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tenerī</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>tenerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
<td>teneram</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>tener</td>
<td>tenera</td>
<td>tenerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
<td>tenerā</td>
<td>tenerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE.</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>tenerī</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>tenera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>tenerōrum</td>
<td>tenerārum</td>
<td>tenerōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>tenerōs</td>
<td>tenerās</td>
<td>tenera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>tenerī</td>
<td>tenerae</td>
<td>tenera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
<td>tenerīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65. Masculine like ager:—

Sacer, sacred.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE.</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sacer</td>
<td>sacra</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
<td>sacræ</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
<td>sacræ</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
<td>sacrārum</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>sacer</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
<td>sacrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
<td>sacrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MASCULINE.</th>
<th>FEMININE</th>
<th>NEUTER.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>sacrī</td>
<td>sacræ</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
<td>sacrārum</td>
<td>sacrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
<td>sacrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>sacrōs</td>
<td>sacrās</td>
<td>sacrā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Most adjectives in -er are declined like sacer. The following however, are declined like tener: asper, rough; lacer, torn; liber, free; miser, wretched; prōsper, prosperous; compounds in -fer and -ger; sometimes dexter, right.

2. Satur, full, is declined: satur, satura, saturum.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.

66. Here belong—

alias, another;
ullus, any;
uter, which? (of two);
solus, alone;

alter, the other;
nullus, none;
neuter, neither;
totus, whole;

 unus, one, alone.

They are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neuter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alias</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alter</td>
<td>altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
<td>alterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td>alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. All these words lack the Vocative. The Plural is regular.

2. Neuter is declined like uter.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

67. These fall into three classes,—

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular,—one for each gender.

2. Adjectives of two terminations.

3. Adjectives of one termination.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words mentioned below in § 70, 1, all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of i-stems; i.e. they have the Ablative Singular in -i, the Genitive Plural in -ium, the Accusative Plural in -is (as well as -ēs) in the Masculine and Feminine, and the Nominative and Accusative Plural in -ia in Neuters.
68. These are declined as follows:—

Ācer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine.</th>
<th>Feminine.</th>
<th>Neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Masculine.</th>
<th>Feminine.</th>
<th>Neuter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrīa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ācrēs, -ēs</td>
<td>ācrēs, -ēs</td>
<td>ācrīa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrīa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Like ācer are declined alacer, lively; campester, level; celeber, famous; equester, equestrian; palæster, marshy; pedester, pedestrian; puter, rotten; salūber, wholesome; silvester, woody; terrester, terrestrial; volucere, winged; also names of months in -ber, as September.

2. Celer, celeris, celere, swift, retains the e before r, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

3. In the Nominative Singular of Adjectives of this class the Feminine form is sometimes used for the Masculine. This is regularly true of salūbris, silvestris, and terrestris. In case of the other words in the list, the use of the Feminine for the Masculine is confined chiefly to early and late Latin, and to poetry.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.

69. These are declined as follows:—

Fortis, strong. Fortior, stronger.

SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fortēm</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>fortiorem</td>
<td>fortius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>forte</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>fortī</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fortēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>fortiorēs</td>
<td>fortiorē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fortium</td>
<td>fortium</td>
<td>fortiorum</td>
<td>fortiorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fortēs, -ēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>fortiorēs, -ēs</td>
<td>fortiora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fortēs</td>
<td>fortia</td>
<td>fortiorēs</td>
<td>fortiora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>fortibus</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Fortior is the Comparative of fortis. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way. The Acc. Plu. in -ēs is rare.

Adjectives of One Termination.

70. Felix, happy. Prudens, prudent.
### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fēlicēs</td>
<td>fēlicēs</td>
<td>prūdentēs</td>
<td>prūdentēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fēlicē</td>
<td>fēlicē</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fēlicem</td>
<td>fēlicem</td>
<td>prūdentem</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
<td>prūdens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fēlicī</td>
<td>fēlicī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
<td>prūdentī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>fēlicēs</td>
<td>fēlicia</td>
<td>prūdentēs</td>
<td>prūdentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>fēlicium</td>
<td>fēlicium</td>
<td>prūdentium</td>
<td>prūdentium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>fēlicibus</td>
<td>fēlicibus</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>fēlicēs, -īs</td>
<td>fēlicia</td>
<td>prūdentēs, -īs</td>
<td>prūdentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>fēlicēs</td>
<td>fēlicia</td>
<td>prūdentēs</td>
<td>prūdentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>fēlicibus</td>
<td>fēlicibus</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
<td>prūdentibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Vetus, old.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>plūre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Plūs, more.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>M. AND F.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
<td>plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>veterum</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
<td>plūrēs, -īs</td>
<td>plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
<td>vetera</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It will be observed that vetus is declined as a pure Consonant-Stem; *i.e.* Ablative Singular in -e, Genitive Plural in -um, Nominative Plural Neuter in -a, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in -ēs only. In the same way are declined *compos, controlling; dives, rich; particeps, sharing; pauper, poor; prūnceps, chief; sōpes, safe; superstes, surviving.* Yet *dives* always has Neut. Plu. *dītia.*

2. Inops, needy, and memor, mindful, have Ablative Singular inopī, memorī, but Genitive Plural inopum, memorum.

3. Participles in -āns and -ēns follow the declension of ū-stems. But they do not have -ī the Ablative, except when employed as adjectives; when used as participles or as substantives, they have -e; as,—

\[
\text{ā sapientī virō, by a wise man; but }
\text{ā sapiente, by a philosopher.}
\]

*Tarquinīō rēgnante, under the reign of Tarquin.*

4. Plūs, in the Singular, is always a noun.

5. In the Ablative Singular, adjectives, when used as substantives,—

   a) usually retain the adjective declension; as,—

\[
aequālis, contemporary, Abl. aequālī.
\]
cōnsulāris, ex-consul, Abl. cōnsulāřī

So names of Months; as, Aprīlī, April; Decembrī, December.
b) But adjectives used as proper names have -e in the Ablative Singular; as, Celere, Celer;
Juvenāle, Juvenal.
c) Patrils in -ās, -ātis and -ēs, -ētis, when designating places regularly have -ē; as, in
Arpīnātī, on the estate at Arpinum, yet -e, when used of persons; as, ab Arpīnātē, by an
Arpinatian.

6. A very few indeclinable adjectives occur, the chief of which are frūgī, frugal; nēquam, worthless.

7. In poetry, adjectives and participles in -ns sometimes form the Gen. Plu. in -um instead of -ium; as,
venientum, of those coming.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

71. 1. There are three degrees of Comparison,—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (Neut. -ius), and the Superlative by adding
issimus (-a, -um), to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel; as,—

altus, high,

altior, higher,

altissimus, highest, very high.

fortis, brave,

fortior,

fortissimus.

fēlix, fortunate,

fēlicior,

fēlicissimus.

So also Participles, when used as Adjectives; as,—

doctus, learned,

doctor,

doctissimus.

egōnes, needy,

egentior,

egentissimus.

3. Adjectives in -er form the Superlative by appending -rimus to the Nominative of the Positive. The
Comparative is regular. Thus:—

asper, rough,

asperior,

asprerrimus.

pulcher, beautiful,

pulchrior,

pulcherrimus.

ācer, sharp,

ācrior,

ācerrimus.

celer, swift,

celerior,

cellerimus.

a. Notice mātūrus, mātūrīor, mātūrissimus or mātūrrimus.

4. Five Adjectives in -ilis form the Superlative by adding -limus to the Stem of the Positive deprived of
its final vowel. The Comparative is regular. Thus:—

facilis, easy,

facilior,

facilliimus.

difficilis, difficult,

difficilior,

difficilliimus.

similis, like,

similior,

similliimus.

dissimilis, unlike,

dissimilior,

dissimilliimus.

humilis, low,

humilior,

humilliimus.

5. Adjectives in -dicus, -ficus, and -volus form the Comparative and Superlative as though from forms
in -dicēns, -ficēns, -volēns. Thus:—

maledicus, slanderous,

maledicentior,

maledicentissimus.

magnificus, magnificent,

magnificentior,

magnificentiissimus.

benevolentus, kindly,

benevolentior,

benevolentissimus.

a. Positives in -dicēns and -volēns occur in early Latin; as maledicēns, benevolēns.

6. Dīves has the Comparative dīvitior or dītior; Superlative dīvitissimus or dītissimus.

Irregular Comparison.
72. Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; viz.—

bonus, good,          melior,          optimus.
malus, bad,           pejor,           pessimus.
parvus, small,        minor,           minimus.
magnus, large,        major,           maximus.
multus, much,         plus,            plurimus.
frugil, thrifty,      frugalius,       frugalisimus.
necquam, worthless,   necquior,        necquissimus.

Defective Comparison.

73. 1. Positive lacking entirely,—

(Cf. prae, in front of.)       prior, former,     primum, first
(Cf. citra, this side of.)     citerior, on this side, citimus, near.
(Cf. ultra, beyond.)            ulterior, farther,   ultimus, farthest.
(Cf. intra, within.)            interior, inner,    inmost
(Cf. prope, near.)              prorior, nearer,    proximus, nearest.
(Cf. de, down.)                 dexterior, inferior, dexterimus, worst.
(Cf. archaic potis, possible.)  potior, preferable, potissimus, chiefest

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterodie, annoo, etc. the
following day, etc., posterior, later,
posteri, descendants,    exterior, outer
exteri, foreigners,
nationem exterae, foreign
nations,
inferi, gods of the lower
world,
Mare Inferum,
Mediterranean Sea,
superi, gods above,
Mare Superum, Adriatic Sea,

inferior, lower,
inimum, imus, lowest.

3. Comparative lacking.

fidus, faithful,      fidissimus.
novus, new,           [18] novissimus, last.
sacer, sacred,        sacerrimus.
falsus, false,        falsissimus.

Also in some other words less frequently used.

4. Superlative lacking.

alacer, lively,       alacrior,        —
inguins, great,       ingentiors,       —
salutarius, wholesome, salutarius,       —
juvenis, young,       jovior,          —[20]
senex, old,           sener,           —[21]

a. The Superlative is lacking also in many adjectives in -alis, -ilis, -ilis, -ilis, and in a few others.

Comparison by Magis and Maximē.
74. Many adjectives do not admit terminational comparison, but form the Comparative and Superlative degrees by prefixing magis (more) and maximē (most). Here belong—

1. Many adjectives ending in -alis, -āris, -idus, -īlis, -icus, imus, īmus, -ōrus.

2. Adjectives in -us, preceded by a vowel; as, idōneus, adapted; arduus, steep; necessārius, necessary.

   a. Adjectives in -quus, of course, do not come under this rule. The first u in such cases is not a vowel, but a consonant.

Adjectives not admitting Comparison.

75. Here belong—

1. Many adjectives, which, from the nature of their signification, do not admit of comparison; as, hodiernum, of to-day; annuus, annual; mortālis, mortal.

2. Some special words; as, mīrus, gnārus, merus; and a few others.

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

76. Adverbs are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing -ī of the Genitive Singular to -ē; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing -is of the Genitive Singular to -iter; as,—

   cārus, cārē, dearly;
   pulcher, pulchrē, beautifully;
   ācer, ācrīter, fiercely;
   levis, levīter, lightly.

   a. But Adjectives in -ns, and a few others, add -er (instead of -iter), to form the Adverb; as,

   sapiēns, sapienter, wisely;
   sollers, sollerter, skillfully.

Note audāx, audācter, boldly.

2. The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective; while the Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing the -ī of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to -ē. Thus—

   (cārus) cārē, dearly,
   (pulcher) pulchrē, beautifully,
   (ācer) ācrīter, fiercely,
   (levis) levīter, lightly,
   (sapiēns) sapienter, wisely,
   (audāx) audācter, boldly,
   cărius, căriissimē.
   pulchrīus, pulchrīssiūmē.
   ācrius, ācrrīmē.
   levīus, levissimē.
   sapientius, sapientissimē.
   audācius, audācissimē.

Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

77. 1. benē, well,
     malē, ill,
     magnopere, greatly,
     multum, much,
     nóin multum, little,
     parum,
     melius,
     peius,
     magis,
     plūs,
     minus,
     optimē.
     pessimē.
     maximē.
     plurimum.
     minimē.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
diū, long; diūtius; diūtissimē.
nēquiēr, worthless, nēquiērus; nēquissimē.
saepe, often; saepius; saepissimē.
mātūrē, betimes; mātūrius; mātūrrimē.
prope, near; proprius; proximē.
nūper, recently; potius, rather; nūperrimē.
—; prius, previously, before; potissimum, especially.
—; sētius, less; primum, first.
secus, otherwise,

2. A number of adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form an Adverb in -ō, instead of -ē; as,

   crēbrō, frequently; falsō, falsely;
   continūō, immediately;
   subitō, suddenly;
   rārō, rarely, and a few others.

   a. cito, quickly, has -ō.

3. A few adjectives employ the Accusative Singular Neuter as the Positive of the Adverb; as,—

   multum, much; paulum, little; facile, easily.

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive in -iter; as,—

   firmus, firmiter, firmly; hūmānus, hūmāniter, humanly;
   largus, largiter, copiously; alius, aliter, otherwise.

   a. violentus has violenter.

5. Various other adverbial suffixes occur, the most important of which are -tus and -tim; as, antiquitus, anciently; paulātim, gradually.

NUMERALS.

78. Numerals may be divided into—

I. Numeral Adjectives, comprising—

   a. Cardinals; as, ānus, one; duo, two; etc.
   b. Ordinals; as, prīmus, first; secundus, second; etc.
   c. Distributives; as, singuli, one by one; bīnī, two by two; etc.

II. Numeral Adverbs; as, semel, once; bis, twice; etc.

79. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.
10. decem  decimus  déni  deciēs
11. undecim  undecimus  undeni  undecīēs
12. duodecim  duodecimus  duodēni  duodecīēs
13. tredicim  tertius decimus  tertī deni  terdecīēs
14. quattuordecim  quārtus decimus  quaternī deni  quaterdecīēs
15. quīndecim  quīntus decimus  quīni deni  quīniēs decīēs
16. sēdecim, sexdecim  sextus decimus  sēni deni  sexīēs decīēs
17. septendecim  septimus decimus  septēni deni  septīēs decīēs
18. duōdecim septime decimus  duodēvēcēnī  octīēs decīēs
19. undēvigintī  undēvīcēsīmus  undēvēcēnī  novīēs decīēs
20. vīgintī  vīcēsimus  vīcēnī  vīcīēs
21. vīgintī unus, unus et vigintī  vīcēsimus primus, unus et vīcēsimus  vīcēnī singuli, singuli et vīcēnī  vīcīēs semel
22. vīgintī duo, duo et vigintī  vīcēsimus  vīcēnī bīnī, bīnī et vīcēnī  vīcīēs bis
30. trigintā  trīcēsimus  trīcēnī  trīcīēs
40. quadrāgintā  quadrāgēsimus  quadrāgēnī  quadrāgiēs
50. quinquāgintā  quinquāgēsimus  quinquāgēnī  quinquāgiēs
60. sexāgintā  sexāgēsimus  sexāgēnī  sexāgiēs
70. septuāgintā  septuāgēsimus  septuāgēnī  septuāgiēs
80. octogintā  octogēsimus  octogēnī  octogīēs
90. nōnagintā  nōnagēsimus  nōnagēnī  nōnagīēs
100. centum  centēsimus  centēnī  centīēs
101. centum unus, centum et unus  centēsimus prīmus, centēsimus et prīmus  centēnī singuli, centēnī et singuli  centīēs semel
200. ducentī, -ae, -a  ducentēsimus  ducentēnī  ducentīēs
300. trecentī  trecentēsimus  trecentēnī  trecentīēs
400. quadringenī  quadringenēsimus  quadringenēnī  quadringenētiēs
500. quingenī  quingenēsimus  quingenēnī  quingenētiēs
600. sescentī  sescentēsimus  sescentēnī  sescentīēs
700. septingenī  septingenēsimus  septingenēnī  septingenētiēs
800. octingenī  octingenēsimus  octingenēnī  octingenētiēs
900. nōngenī  nōngenēsimus  nōngenēnī  nōngenētiēs
1,000. mīlia  mīllēsimus  singula mīlia  mīliēs
2,000. duo mīlia  bis mīllēsimus  bīna mīlia  bis mīliēs
100,000. centum mīlia  centēs mīllēsimus  centēna mīlia  centēs mīliēs
1,000,000. deciēs centēna mīlia  deciēs centēs mīllēsimus  deciēs centēna mīlia  deciēs centēs mīliēs

Note.— -ēsimus and -ēns are often written in the numerals instead of -ēsisimus and -ēsēs.

Declension of the Cardinals.

80. 1. The declension of unus has already been given under § 66.

2. Duo is declined as follows:—

Nom.  duo  duae  duo
Gen.  duorum  duārum  duōrum
Dat.  duōbus  duābus  duōbus
Acc.  duōs, duo  duās  duo
Abl.  duōbus  duābus  duōbus

a. So ambō, both, except that its final o is long.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm 41/244
3. Trēs is declined,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>trēs (trēs)</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>trēs (trēs)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. The hundreds (except centum) are declined like the Plural of bonus.

5. Mīlle is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated; § 201, 1), and is declined,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>mīlia</td>
<td>mīlia</td>
<td>mīlia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mīlium</td>
<td>mīlia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>mīlia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mīlibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mīlibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus mīlia hominēs, a thousand men; but duo mīlia hominum, two thousand men, literally two thousands of men.

a. Occasionally the Singular admits the Genitive construction; as, mīlle hominum.

6. Other Cardinals are indeclinable. Ordinals and Distributives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Peculiarities in the Use of Numerals.

81. 1. The compounds from 21 to 99 may be expressed either with the larger or the smaller numeral first. In the latter case, et is used. Thus:—

trīgintā sex or sex et trīgintā, thirty-six.

2. The numerals under 90, ending in 8 and 9, are often expressed by subtraction; as,—

duodēvīgintī, eighteen (but also octōdecim);
undēquadrāgintā, thirty-nine (but also trīgintā novem or novem et trīgintā).

3. Compounds over 100 regularly have the largest number first; the others follow without et; as,—

centum vīgintī septem, one hundred and twenty-seven.
annō octingentēsīmō octōgēsimō secundō, in the year 882.

Yet et may be inserted where the smaller number is either a digit or one of the tens; as,—

centum et septem, one hundred and seven;
centum et quadrāgintā, one hundred and forty.

4. The Distributives are used—

a) To denote so much each, so many apiece; as,—

bīna talenta eīs dedit, he gave them two talents each.

b) When those nouns that are ordinarily Plural in form, but Singular in meaning, are employed in a Plural sense; as,—

bīnae litterae, two epistles.

But in such cases, ūnī (not singulī) is regularly employed for one, and trīnī (not ternī) for three; as,—

ūnae litterae, one epistle; trīnae litterae, three epistles.

c) In multiplication; as,—

bis bīna sunt quattuor, twice two are four.

d) Often in poetry, instead of the cardinals; as,—

bīna hastlia, two spears.
C. PRONOUNS.

82. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

83. There are the following classes of pronouns:—

I. Personal. 
II. Reflexive.
III. Possessive.
IV. Demonstrative.
V. Intensive.
VI. Relative.
VII. Interrogative.
VIII. Indefinite.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

84. These correspond to the English I, you, he, she, it, etc., and are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego, I</td>
<td>nōs, we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mēi[22]</td>
<td>nostrum, nostrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi[22]</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tū, thou</td>
<td>vōs, you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tuī[22]</td>
<td>vestrum, vestrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A Dative Singular mē occurs in poetry.

2. Emphatic forms in -met are occasionally found; as, egomet, I myself; tibimet, to you yourself; tū has tūte and tūtemet (written also tūtīmet).

3. In early Latin, mēd and tēd occur as Accusative and Ablative forms.

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

85. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like myself, yourself, in 'I see myself,' etc. They are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Case</th>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
<th>Third Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Supplied by oblique cases</td>
<td>Supplied by oblique cases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mēi, of myself</td>
<td>tuī, of thyself</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mihi, to myself</td>
<td>tibī, to thyself</td>
<td>sībī[22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē, myself</td>
<td>tē, thyself</td>
<td>sē or sēsē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>______</td>
<td>______</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē, with myself, etc.</td>
<td>tē, with thyself, etc.</td>
<td>sē or sēsē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus suī may mean, of himself, herself, itself, or of themselves; and so with the other forms.
2. All of the Reflexive Pronouns have at times a reciprocal force; as,—

    inter sē pugnant, they fight with each other.

3. In early Latin, sēd occurs as Accusative and Ablative.

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

86. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are—

    First Person.
    meus, -a, -um, my;
    noster, nostra, nostrum, our;

    Second Person.
    tuus, -a, -um, thy;
    vester, vestra, vestrum, your;

    Third Person.
    suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.

1. Suus is exclusively Reflexive; as,—

    pater liberōs suōs amat, the father loves his children.

Otherwise, his, her, its are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of is, viz. ejus; and their by the Genitive Plural, eōrum, eārum.

2. The Vocative Singular Masculine of meus is mí.

3. The enclitic -pte may be joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive Pronouns for the purpose of emphasis. This is particularly common in case of suō, suā; as, suōpte, suāpte.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

87. These point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They are—

    hic, this (where I am);
    iste, that (where you are);
    ille, that (something distinct from the speaker);
    is, that (weaker than ille);
    idem, the same.

Híc, iste, and ille are accordingly the Demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Hic, this.</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hūjus</td>
<td>hēc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>hēc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hēc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>Istē, that, that of yours.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm 44/244
### Ille (archaic olle), that, that one, he, is declined like iste.[25]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ejus</td>
<td>ejus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Nom. Plu. Masc. also has *idem*, and the Dat. Abl. Plu. *idem* or *īdem*.

### V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

88. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is *ipse*. It corresponds to the English *myself, etc.*, in *I myself, he himself*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsūs</td>
<td>ipsūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

89. The Relative Pronoun is *quī*, who. It is declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>cujus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quē[27]</td>
<td>qua[27]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

90. The Interrogative Pronouns are quīs, who? (substantive) and quī, what? what kind of? (adjective).

1. Quīs, who?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quīs</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cūjus</td>
<td>cūjus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuī</td>
<td>cuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rare Plural follows the declension of the Relative Pronoun.

2. Quī, what? what kind of? is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; viz. quīf, quae, quod, etc.

a. An old Ablative quīf occurs, in the sense of how? why?
b. Quī is sometimes used for quīs in Indirect Questions.
c. Quīs, when limiting words denoting persons, is sometimes an adjective. But in such cases quīs homō = what man? whereas quī homō = what sort of man?
d. Quīs and quī may be strengthened by adding -nam. Thus:—

Substantive: quīsnam, who, pray? quīdnam, what, pray?
Adjective: quīnīam, quaenam, quodnam, of what kind, pray?

VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

91. These have the general force of some one, any one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBSTANTIves.</th>
<th>ADJECTIVES.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. AND F.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīs, any one, anything.</td>
<td>quid,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aliquis, some one, something.</td>
<td>aliiquid,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisquam, any one, anything.</td>
<td>quidquam,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quispiam, any one, anything.</td>
<td>quidpiam,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quisque, each.</td>
<td>quidque,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīvīs, quaevīs,</td>
<td>quidvīs,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīlibet, quaelibet, any one (anything) you wish</td>
<td>quīlibet,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quīdam, quaedam, a certain person, or thing.</td>
<td>quīdam,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular alicūjus, cūjuslibet, etc.

2. Note that aliquis has aliqua in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. Quī has both qua and quae in these same cases.

3. Quīdam forms Accusative Singular quendam, quandam; Genitive Plural quōrundam, quārundam; the m being assimilated to n before d.

4. Aliquis may be used adjectively, and (occasionally) aliquis substantively.

5. In combination with nē, sī, nisi, num, either quīs or quī may stand as a Substantive. Thus: sī quīs or sī quī.
6. \textit{Ecquis}, any one, though strictly an Indefinite, generally has interrogative force. It has both substantive and adjective forms,—substantive, \textit{ecquis}, \textit{ecquid}; adjective, \textit{ecquī}, \textit{ecquae} and \textit{ecqua}, \textit{ecquod}.

7. \textit{Quisquam} is not used in the Plural.

8. There are two Indefinite Relatives,—\textit{quicumque} and \textit{quisquis}, whoever. \textit{Quicumque} declines only the first part; \textit{quisquis} declines both but has only \textit{quisquis}, \textit{quidquid}, \textit{quōquō}, in common use.

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The following adjectives, also, frequently have pronominal force:—

1. \textit{alius}, another; \textit{alter}, the other;
\textit{uter}, which of two? (interr.); \textit{neuter}, neither;
\textit{únus}, one; \textit{nūllus}, no one (in oblique cases)

2. The compounds,—

\textit{uterque}, \textit{utrape}, \textit{utrumque}, each of two;
\textit{utercumque}, \textit{utracumque}, \textit{utrumcumque}, whoever of two;
\textit{uterlibet}, \textit{utralibet}, \textit{utrumlibet}, either one you please;
\textit{utervis}, \textit{utravis}, \textit{utrumvis}, either one you please;
\textit{alteruter}, \textit{alterutra}, \textit{alterutrum}, the one or the other.

In these, \textit{uter} alone is declined. The rest of the word remains unchanged, except in case of \textit{alteruter}, which may decline both parts; as,—

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{Nom.} & \textit{alteruter} & \textit{altera utra}
\textit{Gen.} & \textit{alterius utrius}, etc. & \textit{alterum utrum}
\end{tabular}

CHAPTER II.—Conjugation.

93. A Verb is a word which asserts something; as, \textit{est}, he is; \textit{amat}, he loves. The Inflection of Verbs is called Conjugation.

94. Verbs have Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person:—

1. Two Voices,—Active and Passive.
2. Three Moods,—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.
3. Six Tenses,—
   \begin{align*}
   \text{Present,} & \quad \text{Perfect,} \\
   \text{Imperfect,} & \quad \text{Pluperfect,} \\
   \text{Future,} & \quad \text{Perfect.}
   \end{align*}

   But the Subjunctive lacks the Future and Future Perfect; while the Imperative employs only the Present and Future.
4. Two Numbers,—Singular and Plural.
5. Three Persons,—First, Second, and Third.

95. These make up the so-called \textit{Finite Verb}. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms:—

1. Noun Forms,—Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.
2. Adjective Forms,—Participles (including the Gerundive).
96. The Personal Endings of the Verb are,—

    Active.                                      Passive.
   Sing. 1.  -ō; -m; -ī (Perf. Ind.);            -r.
            -s; -sī (Perf Ind.);                  -rīs, -rē;
   2.     -tō or wanting (Impv.);                -rē, -tor (Impv.).
   3.     -tī; -tō (Impv.);                      -tur; -tor (Impv.).
   Plu. 1.  -mus;
            -tis; -stīs (Perf Ind.);             -minī.
   2.     -te, -tōte (Impv.);
   3.     -ntī; -ērunt (Perf Ind.);
            -ntur; -ntor (Impv.).

VERB STEMS.

97. Conjugation consists in appending certain endings to the Stem. We distinguish three different stems in a fully inflected verb,—

I. Present Stem, from which are formed—
   1. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative,
   2. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive,
   3. The Imperative,
   4. The Present Infinitive,
      - (Active and Passive.)
   5. The Present Active Participle, the Gerund, and Gerundive.

II. Perfect Stem, from which are formed—
   1. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative,
   2. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,
   3. Perfect Infinitive,
      - (Active.)

III. Participle Stem, from which are formed—
   1. Perfect Participle,
   2. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative,
   3. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive,
   4. Perfect Infinitive,
      - (Passive.)

Apparently from the same stem, though really of different origin, are the Supine, the Future Active Participle, the Future Infinitive Active and Passive.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

98. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUGATION.</th>
<th>INFINITIVE TERMINATION.</th>
<th>DISTINGUISHING VOWEL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>-āre</td>
<td>ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>-īre</td>
<td>ē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

99. Principal Parts. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle[28] constitute the Principal Parts of a Latin verb,—so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

CONJUGATION OF SUM.
100. The irregular verb sum is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRINCIPAL PARTS.</th>
<th>PRESENT TENSE.</th>
<th>FUTURE TENSE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>esse</td>
<td>fui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum, I am,</td>
<td>sumus, we are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es, thou art,</td>
<td>estis, you are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est, he is;</td>
<td>sunt, they are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crám, I was,</td>
<td>crámus, we were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eräs, thou wast,</td>
<td>erätis, you were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat, he was;</td>
<td>erant, they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erimus, we shall be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crit, they will be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fúimus, we have been, we were,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fúerunt, füere, they have been, they were.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUPERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerámus, we had been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerätis, you had been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerant, they had been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerimus, we shall have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueritis, you will have been,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerint, they will have been.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE.[30]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim, may I be,</td>
<td>simus, let us be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sís, mayst thou be,</td>
<td>sitis, be ye, may you be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit, let him be, may he be;</td>
<td>sint, let them be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essem,[31] I should be,</td>
<td>essémus, we should be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essés,[31] thou wouldst be,</td>
<td>essétis, you would be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset,[31] he would be;</td>
<td>essent,[31] they would be.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerim, I may have been,</td>
<td>fuerímus, we may have been,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
101. **Active Voice.**—Amō, I love.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SINGULAR.</strong></th>
<th><strong>PLURAL.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō, I love,</td>
<td>amāmus, we love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amās, you love,</td>
<td>amātis, you love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat, he loves;</td>
<td>amant, they love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābam, I was loving,</td>
<td>amābāmus, we were loving,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābās, you were loving,</td>
<td>amābatis, you were loving,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābat, he was loving;</td>
<td>amābant, they were loving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābō, I shall love,</td>
<td>amābimus, we shall love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābis, you will love,</td>
<td>amābitis, you will love,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit, he will love;</td>
<td>amābunt, they will love.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvī, I have loved, I loved,</td>
<td>amāvimus, we have loved, we loved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvīstis, you have loved, you loved</td>
<td>amāvīstis, you have loved, you loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvīt, he has loved, he loved;</td>
<td>amāvīrunt, -ēre, they have loved, they loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveram, I had loved,</td>
<td>amāverāmus, we had loved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverās, you had loved,</td>
<td>amāverātis, you had loved,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverat, he had loved;</td>
<td>amāverant, they had loved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FUTURE PERFECT.

amáverò, I shall have loved,
amáveris, you will have loved,
amáverit, he will have loved;
amáverimus, we shall have loved,
amáveritis, you will have loved,
amáverint, they will have loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
amêmus, let us love,
amêtis, may you love,
ament, let them love.

IMPERFECT.
amârêmus, we should love,
amârétis, you would love,
amârent, they would love.

PERFECT.
amâverímus, we may have loved,
amâverítis, you may have loved,
amâverint, they may have loved.

PLUPERFECT.
amâvissémus, we should have loved,
amâvissétis, you would have loved,
amâvissent, they would have loved.

IMPERATIVE.
amâte, love ye.
amâtote, ye shall love,
amantō, they shall love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amā, love thou;
Fut. amātō, thou shalt love,
amātō, he shall love;

PARTICIPLE.

(Gener. amantīs.)
Fut. amātūrīs, about to love.

GERUND.

Gener. amandī, of loving,
Dat. amandō, for loving,
Acc. amandūm, loving,
Abl. amandō, by loving.

SUPINE.

Acc. amātūm, to love,
Abl. amātū, to love, be loved.

102. Passive Voice.—Amor, I am loved.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
amôr
Pres. Inf.
amārī
Perf. Ind.
amātus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.
I am loved.

SINGULAR.
amor
amāris

PLURAL.
amāmur
amāminī
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātur</strong></td>
<td>I was loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābāris, <em>or</em>-re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābātur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td><strong>amābor</strong></td>
<td>I shall be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāberis, <em>or</em>-re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amābītur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus</strong> (<em>-a, -um</em>) sum[36]</td>
<td>I have been loved, or I was loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus es</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus est</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUPERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus eram</strong>[36]</td>
<td>I had been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus erās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus erat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus erō</strong>[36]</td>
<td>I shall have been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus eris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus erit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amer</strong></td>
<td>May I be loved, let him be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amēris, <em>or</em>-re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amārer</strong></td>
<td>I should be loved, he would be loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāreris, <em>or</em>-re</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amāretur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus sim</strong>[37]</td>
<td>I may have been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus sis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUPERFECT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>amātus essēm</strong>[37]</td>
<td>I should have been loved, he would have been loved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus essēs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>amātus essētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
amātus esset

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amāre, [38] be thou loved;
Fut. amātor, thou shalt be loved,
amātor, he shall be loved;

amāti essent
amāmini, be ye loved.
amantor, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amārī, to be loved.
Perf. amātus esse, to have been loved.
Fut. amātum īrī, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLE.

amātus, loved, having been loved.
amandus, to be loved,
deserving to be loved.

SECOND (OR Ė-) CONJUGATION.

103. Active voice.—Moneō, I advise.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES. IND.</th>
<th>PRES. INF.</th>
<th>PERF. IND.</th>
<th>PERF. PASS. PARTIC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monitus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

moneō
monēs
monet

PLURAL.

monēmus
monētis
monēnt

IMPERFECT.

I was advising, or I advised.

monēbam
monēbās
monēbat

FUTURE.

I shall advise.

monēbō
monēbis
monēbit

PERFECT.

I have advised, or I advised.

monui
monuiistī
monuiit

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

monueram
monuerās
monuerat

monuerāmus
monuerātis
monuerant
**FUTURE PERFECT.**

*I shall have advised.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monuerō</th>
<th>monuerimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

**PRESENT.**

*May I advise, let him advise.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>moneam</th>
<th>moneāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>moneant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT.**

*I should advise, he would advise.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monērem</th>
<th>monērēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monērent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFECT.**

*I may have advised.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monuerim</th>
<th>monuerīmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuerīs</td>
<td>monuerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PUPERFECT.**

*I should have advised, he would have advised.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monuissem</th>
<th>monuissequemus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuissēs</td>
<td>monuissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisset</td>
<td>monuissēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE.**

*Pres.*  monē, advise thou;  
*Fut.*   monētō, thou shalt advise, monētō, he shall advise;  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>monētē, advise ye.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>monētōte, ye shall advise, monentō, they shall advise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVE.**

*Pres.*  monēre, to advise.  
*Perf.*  monuisse, to have advised.  
*Fut.*  monitūrus esse, to be about to advise.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>monēns, advising.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Gen. monentis.)</td>
<td>monitūrus, about to advise.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PARTICIPLE.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>monendi, of advising,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>monendō, for advising,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>monendum, advising,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>monendō, by advising.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Acc. | monitum, to advise, |
| Abl. | monitū, to advise, be advised. |

**GERUND.**

104. Passive voice.—Moneor, I am advised.

**SUPINE.**

**PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES. IND.</th>
<th>PRES. INF.</th>
<th>PERF. IND.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monērī</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Tense</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēris</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>monentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>monēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāris, or -re</td>
<td>monēbāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>monēbantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall be advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>monēbimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēberis, or -re</td>
<td>monēbimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td>monēbuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have been advised, I was advised.</td>
<td>monitī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitī sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitī estis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitī sunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had been advised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus eram</td>
<td>monitī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erās</td>
<td>monitī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erat</td>
<td>monitī erant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have been advised.</td>
<td>monitī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erō</td>
<td>monitī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus eris</td>
<td>monitī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus erit</td>
<td>monitī erunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBJUNCTIVE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May I be advised, let him be advised.</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monear</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēaris, or -re</td>
<td>moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēatur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I should be advised, he would be advised.</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērer</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērēris, or -re</td>
<td>monērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>monērentur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I may have been advised.</td>
<td>monitī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus sim</td>
<td>monitī sīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitus sis</td>
<td>monitī sītis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
monitus sit
monitō sit

PLUPERFECT.
I should have been advised, he would have been advised.
monitus essem
monitus essēs
monitus esset
monitō essēmus
monitō essētis
monitō essent

IMPERATIVE.
Pres. monēre, be thou advised;
monēmini, be ye advised.
Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,
monētor, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.
Pres. monēri, to be advised.
Perfect.
Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitum trī, to be about to be
advised.
Gerundive.
monendus, to be advised,
deserving to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.
monitus, advised, having been
advised.

THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

105. Active Voice.—Regō, I rule.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

| PRES. IND. | PRES. INF. | PERF. IND. | PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>rēctus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.
I rule

SINGULAR.
regō
regis
regit

PLURAL.
regimus
regitis
regunt

IMPERFECT.
I was ruling, or I ruled.
regēbam
regēbās
regēbat

FUTURE.
I shall rule.
regām
regēs
reget

PERFECT.
I have ruled, or I ruled
rēxī
rēxistī
rēxit
rēximus
rēxistis
rēxērunt, or -ēre
PLUPERFECT.
I had ruled.
rexeram
rexerás
rexerat
rexerámus
rexerátis
rexerant

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall have ruled.
rexerō
rexeris
rexerit
rexerimus
rexeritis
rexerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
May I rule, let him rule.
regam
regás
regat
regámus
regátis
regant

IMPERFECT.
I should rule, he would rule.
regerem
regerēs
regeret
regerēmus
regerētis
regerent

PERFECT.
I may have ruled.
rexerim
rexerís
rexerit
rexerimus
rexeritis
rexerint

PLUPERFECT.
I should have ruled, he would have ruled.
rexissēm
rexissēs
rexisset
rexissēmus
rexissētis
rexissent

IMPERATIVE.

rege, rule thou;
regitō, thou shalt rule,
regitō, he shall rule;
regite, rule ye.
regitōte, ye shall rule,
reguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.
regere, to rule.
rēxisce, to have ruled.
rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule

PARTICIPLE.
Pres.
regēns, ruling.
(reg. regentis.)
Fut.
rēctūrus, about to rule.

GERUND.
regendī, of ruling,
regendō, for ruling,
regendum, ruling,
regendo, by ruling.

SUPINE.
Acc.
rēctum, to rule,
Abl.
rēctū, to rule, be ruled.

106. Passive Voice.—Regor, I am ruled.
### Principal Parts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regor</td>
<td>regī</td>
<td>rēctus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indicative Mood

#### Present Tense

**I am ruled.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regor</td>
<td>regimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regeris</td>
<td>regimīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitur</td>
<td>reguntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

**I was ruled.**

| regēbar | regēbāmur |
| regēbāris, or -re | regēbāminī |
| regēbātur | regēbantur |

#### Future

**I shall be ruled.**

| regar | regēmur |
| regēris, or -re | regēminī |
| regētur | regentur |

#### Perfect

**I have been ruled, or I was ruled.**

| rēctus sum | rēctī sumus |
| rēctus es  | rēctī estis |
| rēctus est | rēctī sunt  |

#### Pluperfect

**I had been ruled.**

| rēctus eram | rēctī erāmus |
| rēctus erās | rēctī erātis |
| rēctus erat | rēctī erant  |

#### Future Perfect

**I shall have been ruled.**

| rēctus erō  | rēctī erīmus |
| rēctus erīs | rēctī erītis |
| rēctus erit | rēctī erunt  |

### Subjunctive

#### Present

**May I be ruled, let him be ruled.**

| regar | regāmur |
| regāris, or -re | regāminī |
| regātur | regantur |

#### Imperfect

**I should be ruled, he would be ruled.**

| regerer | regerēmur |
| regerēris, or -re | regerēminī |
| regerētur | regerentur |
PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rēctus sim  rēctī sīmus
rēctus sis  rēctī sītis
rēctus sit  rēctī sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.

rēctus essēm  rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs  rectī essētis
rēctus esset  rectī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.  regere, be thou ruled;
Fut.  regīminī, be ye ruled.

Regītor, thou shalt be ruled,
Regītor, he shall be ruled;
Reguntor, they shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.  regī, to be ruled.
Perf.  rēctus esse, to have been ruled.
Fut.  rēctum īrī, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect.

rēctus, ruled, having been ruled.
regendus, to be ruled,
deserving to be ruled.

FOURTH (OR Ī-) CONJUGATION.

107. Active voice.—Audiō, I hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PRES. IND.</th>
<th>PRES. INF.</th>
<th>PERF. IND.</th>
<th>PERF. PASS. PARTIC.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td></td>
<td>audīre</td>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audītus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō  audiūmus
audīs  audītis
audīt  audīunt

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing, or I heard.

audiēbam  audiēbāmus
audiēbās  audiēbātis
audiēbat  audiēbant

FUTURE.

I shall hear.

audiām  audiēmus
audiēs  audiētis
audiet  audiēunt
PERFECT.
I have heard, or I heard.

audīvī
audīvīstmī
audīvīt

audīvīmus
audīvīstīs
audīvērunt, or -ēre

PLUPERFECT.
I had heard.

audīveram
audīverās
audīverat

audīverāmus
audīverātīs
audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT.
I shall have heard.

audīverō
audīveris
audīverit

audīverīmus
audīverītīs
audīverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
May I hear, let him hear.

audīam
audiās
audīat

audiāmus
audiātīs
audīant

IMPERFECT.
I should hear, he would hear.

audīrem
audīrēs
audīret

audīrēmus
audīrētīs
audīrent

PERFECT.
I may have heard.

audīverim
audīverīs
audīverit

audīverīmus
audīverītīs
audīverint

PLUPERFECT.
I should have heard, he would have heard.

audīvissem
audīvissēs
audīvisset

audīvissēmus
audīvissētīs
audīvissent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audī, hear thou;
audīte, hear ye.

Fut. audītō, thou shalt hear,
audītōte, ye shall hear,
audīuntō, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīre, to hear.

Perf. audīvisse, to have heard.

Fut. auditūrus esse, to be about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiēns, hearing.

(Gen. audiēntīs.)

Fut. auditūrus, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. audiendī, of hearing,

Dat. audiendō, for hearing,

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRES. IND.</th>
<th>PRES. INF.</th>
<th>PERF. IND.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audiērī</td>
<td>audiērī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

*audior*  
*I am heard.*

#### SINGULAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>audior</th>
<th>audiēbar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēris</td>
<td>audiēbāris, or -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītus</td>
<td>audiēbātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>audīmur</th>
<th>audiēbāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēminī</td>
<td>audiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētantur</td>
<td>audiēbāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |

#### FUTURE.

*I shall be heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |

#### PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |

#### PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall have been heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PRESENT.

*May I be heard, let him be heard.*

| audiēbar | audiēbar | audiēbar |
| audiēbāris | audiēbāris | audiēbāris |
| audiēbātur | audiēbātur | audiēbātur |
IMPERFECT.

I should be heard, he would be heard.

audīrer  
audīrēris, or -re  
audīrētūr

audīrēmur  
audīrēmini  
audīrēmentūr

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

audītus sim  
audītus sis  
audītus sit

audītī sīmus  
audītī sītis  
audītī sīnt

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard.

audītus esse  
audītus essēs  
audītus essēt

audītī essēmus  
audītī essētis  
audītī essent

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.  
audīre, be thou heard;  
Fut.  
audītōr, thou shalt be heard;  
Audītōr, he shall be heard;  

audīmini, be ye heard.  
Audītuntōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.  
audīrī, to be heard.  
Perf.  
audītus esse, to have been heard.  
Fut.  
audītūm irī, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect.  
audītus, heard, having been heard  
Gerundive.  
audīendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard

VERBS IN -ĪO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

109. 1. Verbs in -īo of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

2. Here belong—

a) capiō, to take; cupiō, to desire; faciō, to make; fodiō, to dig; fugiō, to flee; jacīō, to throw; parīō, to bear; quatiō, to shake; rapiō, to seize; sapiō, to taste.

b) Compounds of faciō and speciō (both ante-classical); as, alliciō, entice; conspiciō, behold.

c) The deponents gradior, to go; moriō, to die; patiō, to suffer.

110. Active voice.—Capiō, I take.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.  
capiō,  
capere  
Perf. Ind.  
cēpī,  
captus  

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.  
capiō, capis, capit;  
Plural.  
capimus, capitis, capiunt.
capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;
capiam, -iēs, -iēt;
cēpī, -istī, -iēt;
cēperam, -erās, -erat;
cēperō, -eris, -erit;

Pres. capē;
Fut. capītō,
capītō;

INFinitive.
Pres. capere
Perf. cēpisse.
Fut. captūrus esse.

GERUND.
Gen. capiēndī,
Dat. capiēndō,
Acc. capiēndum,
Abl. capiēndō.

111. Passive Voice.—Capior, I am taken.

PARTiciple.
Pres. capiēns.
Fut. captūrus.

SUPine.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. capior,
Pres. Inf. capī,
Perf. Ind. captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.
capiēr, caperis, captur;

Plural.
capiēmur, capimīnī, capiuntur.
capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur; capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, -iēbāntur.

FUTURE.
capiēmur, -iēminī, -iēntur.

PERFECT.
captī sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.
captī erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT.
captī erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.
capiāmur, -iāminī, -iāntur.

IMPERFECT.
caperēmur, -erēminī, -erēntur.

PERFECT.
captī sīmus, sītis, sint.

PLUPERFECT.
captī essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. capere;
capiēmur.

Fut. capitor,
capiuntur.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. capī.

Perf. captus esse.

Fut. captum īrī.

Perfect. captus.

Gerundive. capiendus.

DEPONENT VERBS.

112. Deponent Verbs have in the main Passive forms with Active or Neuter meaning. But—

a. They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

b. They have the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive, and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle; as—

sequendus, to be followed; adeptus, attained.

113. Paradigms of Dependent Verbs are—

I. Conj. mīrōr, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, admire.

II. Conj. vereor, vererī, verētus sum, fear.

III. Conj. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.
NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

IV. Conj. largior, largīrī, largītus sum, give.
III. (in -ior) patior, patī, passus sum, suffer.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīror</td>
<td>vereor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>largior</td>
<td>patior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrēris</td>
<td>verēris</td>
<td>sequeris</td>
<td>largēris</td>
<td>pateris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrātur</td>
<td>verētur</td>
<td>sequitur</td>
<td>largītur</td>
<td>patitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrāmur</td>
<td>verēmur</td>
<td>sequimur</td>
<td>largīmur</td>
<td>patimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrāmini</td>
<td>verēmini</td>
<td>sequimīnī</td>
<td>largēmini</td>
<td>patiminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mīrantur</td>
<td>verentur</td>
<td>sequuntur</td>
<td>largiuntur</td>
<td>patiuntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impl.</td>
<td>mīrābar</td>
<td>verēbar</td>
<td>sequēbar</td>
<td>largēbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mīrābor</td>
<td>verēbor</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>largiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mīrātus sum</td>
<td>veritus sum</td>
<td>secūtus sum</td>
<td>largiatus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>mīrātus cram</td>
<td>veritus cram</td>
<td>secūtus cram</td>
<td>largiatus cram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.P.</td>
<td>mīrātus erō</td>
<td>veritus erō</td>
<td>secūtus erō</td>
<td>largiatus erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrēr</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>largiar</td>
<td>patiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impl.</td>
<td>mīrērēr</td>
<td>verērer</td>
<td>sequer</td>
<td>largērēr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mīrātus sim</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>secūtus sim</td>
<td>largiatus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>mīrātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>largiatus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.P.</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essem</td>
<td>passus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrāre, etc.</td>
<td>verēre, etc.</td>
<td>sequere, etc.</td>
<td>largiēre, etc.</td>
<td>patere, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mīrātor, etc.</td>
<td>verētor, etc.</td>
<td>sequitor, etc.</td>
<td>patitior, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrāri</td>
<td>verēri</td>
<td>sequī</td>
<td>largīrī</td>
<td>patī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mīrātus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>secūtus esse</td>
<td>largiatus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mīrātūrus esse</td>
<td>veritūrus esse</td>
<td>secūtūrus esse</td>
<td>largiātūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrans</td>
<td>verēns</td>
<td>sequēns</td>
<td>largiēns</td>
<td>patiēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>mīrātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>largitūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>mīrātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>largitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>mīrandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>largiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrandī</td>
<td>verendī</td>
<td>sequendī</td>
<td>largiendī</td>
<td>patiendī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mirandō, etc.</td>
<td>verendō, etc.</td>
<td>sequendō, etc.</td>
<td>largiendō, etc.</td>
<td>patiendō, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPINE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
<th>III (in -ior)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mīrātum, -tū</td>
<td>veritum, -tū</td>
<td>secūtum, -tū</td>
<td>largītum, -tū</td>
<td>passum, -sū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

114. 1. Semi-Deponents are verbs which have the Present System in the Active Voice, but the Perfect System in the Passive without change of meaning. Here belong—

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, to dare.

gaudēō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, to rejoice.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, to be wont.
fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, to trust.

2. The following verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning:—

adolēscō, grow up; adulthus, having grown up,
cēnāre, dine; cēnātus, having dined.
placēre, please; placitūs, having pleased, agreeable.
prandēre, lunch; prānsus, having lunched.
pōtāre, drink; pōtus, having drunk.
jūrāre, swear; jūrātus, having sworn.

a. Jūrātus is used in a passive sense also.

3. Revertor and dēvertor both regularly form their Perfect in the Active Voice; viz.—

revertor, reverted (Inf.), revertī (Perf.), to return.
dēvertor, dēverted (Inf.), dēvertī (Perf.), to turn aside.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

115. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations,—the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary sum, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. amātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to love.
Inf. amātūrus eram, I was about to love.
Fut. amātūrus erō, I shall be about to love.
Perf. amātūrus fuī, I have been (was) about to love.
Plup. amātūrus fueram, I had been about to love.
Fut. P. amātūrus fuerō, I shall have been about to love.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amātūrus esse, to be about to love.
Imp. amātūrus essēm, I should be about to love.
Perf. amātūrus fuerim, I may have been about to love.
Plup. amātūrus fuisset, I should have been about to love.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. amātūrus esse, to be about to love.
Perf. amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. amandus (-a, -um) sum, I am to be loved, must be loved.
Imp. amandus eram, I was to be loved.
Fut. amandus erō, I shall deserve to be loved.
Perf. amandus fuī, I was to be loved.
Plup. amandus fueram, I had deserved to be loved.
Fut. P. amandus fuerō, I shall have deserved to be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. amandus esse, may I deserve to be loved.
Imp. amandus essēm, I should deserve to be loved.
Perf. amandus fuerim, I may have deserved to be loved.
Plup. amendus fuisset, I should have deserved to be loved.

INFINITIVE.
Pres. amandus esse, to deserve to be loved.
Perf. amantus fuisse, to have deserved to be loved.

PECULIARITIES OF CONJUGATION.

116. 1. Perfects in -āvī, -ēvī, and -īvī, with the forms derived from them, often drop the ve or vi before endings beginning with r or s. So also nōvī (from nōscō) and the compounds of mōvī (from moveō). Thus:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvīstī</td>
<td>amāstī</td>
<td>dēlēvīstī</td>
<td>dēlēstī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvīsse</td>
<td>amāsse</td>
<td>dēlēvīsse</td>
<td>dēlēsse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvĕrunt</td>
<td>amārunt</td>
<td>dēlēvĕrunt</td>
<td>dēlērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>amārim</td>
<td>dēlēverim</td>
<td>dēlērim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveram</td>
<td>amāram</td>
<td>dēlēveram</td>
<td>dēlēram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverō</td>
<td>amārō</td>
<td>dēlēverō</td>
<td>dēlērō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōvīstī</td>
<td>nōstī</td>
<td>nōverim</td>
<td>nōrim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōvīsse</td>
<td>nōsse</td>
<td>nōveram</td>
<td>nōram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvīstī</td>
<td>audīstī</td>
<td>audīvīsse</td>
<td>audīsse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. In the Gerund and Gerundive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations, the endings -undus, -undi, often occur instead of -endus and -endi, as faciundus, faciundī.

3. Dīcō, dūcō, faciō, form the Imperatives, dīc, dūc, fac. But compounds of faciō form the Imperative in -fīce, as cōnfīce. Compounds of dīcō, dūcō, accent the ultima; as, ēdū'cē, ēdī'cē.

4. Archaic and Poetic forms:—
   a. The ending -ier in the Present Infinitive Passive; as, amārier, monērier, dicier, for amāri, monēri, dicēri.
   b. The ending -ībam for -iēbam in Imperfects of the Fourth Conjugation, and -ībō for -iam in Futures; as, scībam, scībo, for scīēbam, sciam.
   c. Instead of the fuller forms, in such words as dīxistī, scrīpsistis, surrexisse, we sometimes find dixistī, scrīpsistis, surrexisse, etc.
   d. The endings -im, -is, etc. (for -am, -ās, etc.) occur in a few Subjunctive forms; as, edim (eat), duinit, perduinit.

5. In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, the auxiliary esse is often omitted; as, āctūrum for āctūrum esse; ējectus for ējectus esse.

FORMATION OF THE VERB STEMS.

Formation of the Present Stem.

117. Many verbs employ the simple Verb Stem for the Present Stem;[39] as, dīcere, amāre, monēre, audīre. Others modify the Verb Stem to form the Present, as follows:—

1. By appending the vowels, ā, ē, ī; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Verb Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
juvāre, juvā- juv-
augēre, augē- aug-
vincire, vincī- vinc-

2. By adding i, as capiō, Present Stem capi- (Verb Stem cap-).

3. By the insertion of n (m before labial-mutes) before the final consonant of the Verb Stem; as, fundō (Stem fud-), rumpō (Stem rup-).

4. By appending -n to the Verb Stem; as,—
cern-ō pell-ō (for pel-nō).

5. By appending t to the Verb Stem; as,—
flect-ō.

6. By appending sc to the Verb Stem; as,—
crēsc-ō. scisc-ō.

7. By Reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant of the Verb Stem with i; as,—
 gi-gn-ō (root gen-), si-st-ō (root sta-).

Formation of the Perfect Stem.

118. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb Stem—

1. By adding v (in case of Vowel Stems); as,—
amāv-ī, delēv-ī, audīv-ī.

2. By adding u (in case of some Consonant Stems); as,—
strepū-ī, genu-ī, alū-ī.

3. By adding s (in case of most Consonant Stems); as,—
carp-ō, Perfect carps-ī.
scrib-ō, " scrips-ī (for scrib-sī).
rid-eō, " rīs-ī (for rid-sī).
sent-iō, " sēns-ī (for sent-sī).
dīc-ō, " dīx-ī (i.e. dīc-sī).

a. Note that before the ending -sī a Dental Mute (t, d) is lost; a Guttural Mute (c, g) unites with s to form x; while the Labial b is changed to p.

4. Without addition. Of this formation there are three types:—

a) The Verb Stem is reduplicated by prefixing the initial consonant with the following vowel or e; as,—
currō, Perfect cu-currī.
poscō, " po-poscī.
pellō, " pe-pulī.

NOTE 1.—Compounds, with the exception of dō, stō, sistō, discō, poscō, omit the reduplication. Thus: com-pulī, but re-poposći.

NOTE 2.—Verbs beginning with sp or st retain both consonants in the reduplication, but drop s from the stem; as, spondeō, spo-pondī; stō, stetī.
b) The short vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened; as, legō, lēgī; agō, ēgī. Note that ā by this process becomes ē.

c) The vowel of the Verb Stem is unchanged; as, vertō, vertī; minūō, minūī.

**Formation of the Participial Stem.**

119. The Perfect Passive Participle, from which the Participial Stem is derived by dropping -us, is formed:—

1. By adding -tus (sometimes to the Present Stem, sometimes to the Verb Stem); as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Participial Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amā-re,</td>
<td>amā-tus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>délē-re,</td>
<td>délē-tus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audī-re,</td>
<td>audī-tus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leg-ere,</td>
<td>lēc-tus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scrib-ere,</td>
<td>scrip-tus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentī-re,</td>
<td>sēn-sus (for sent-tus).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caed-ere,</td>
<td>caes-sus (for caed-tus).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a. Note that g, before t, becomes c (see § 8, 5); b becomes p; while dt or tt becomes ss, which is then often simplified to s (§ 8, 2).

2. After the analogy of Participles like sēnsus and caesus, where -sus arises by phonetic change, -sus for -tus is added to other Verb Stems; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Participial Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lāb-rī,</td>
<td>lāp-sus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig-ere,</td>
<td>ñī-xus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a. The same consonant changes occur in appending this ending -sus to the stem as in the case of the Perfect ending -sī (see § 118, 3, a).

3. A few Verbs form the Participle in -itus; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Participial Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domā-re,</td>
<td>dom-itus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monē-re,</td>
<td>mon-itus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. The Future Active Participle is usually identical in its stem with the Perfect Passive Participle; as, amā-tus, amātūrus; monī-tus, monitūrus. But—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>juvā-re,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>jūtus,</td>
<td>juvātūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lavā-re,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>lautus,</td>
<td>lavātūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>par-ere,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>partus,</td>
<td>parītūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ru-ere,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>rutus,</td>
<td>ruitūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secā-re,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>sectus,</td>
<td>sectītūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fru-ī,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>fructus,</td>
<td>fruitūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mor-ī,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>mortuus,</td>
<td>moritūrus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orī-rī,</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>ortus,</td>
<td>ortītūrus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS, WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS.**

**First (ā-) Conjugation.**

120. I. PERFECT IN -VĪ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Stem</th>
<th>Imperfect Stem</th>
<th>Perfect Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amō</td>
<td>amāre</td>
<td>amāvī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   All regular verbs of the First Conjugation follow this model.
II. PERFECT IN -UĪ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pōtō</th>
<th>pōtāre</th>
<th>pōtāvī</th>
<th>pōtus (§ 114, 2)</th>
<th>drink</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crepō</td>
<td>crepāre</td>
<td>crepuī</td>
<td>crepitūrus</td>
<td>rattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubō</td>
<td>cubāre</td>
<td>cubuī</td>
<td>cubitūrus</td>
<td>lie down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domō</td>
<td>domāre</td>
<td>domuī</td>
<td>domitus</td>
<td>tame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fricō</td>
<td>fricāre</td>
<td>fricuī</td>
<td>frictus and fricātus</td>
<td>rub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micō</td>
<td>micāre</td>
<td>micuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>glitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūmicō</td>
<td>dūmicāre</td>
<td>dūmicāvī</td>
<td>dūmicātum (est)</td>
<td>fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-plicō</td>
<td>explicāre</td>
<td>explicāvī</td>
<td>explicātus (-itus)</td>
<td>unfold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im-plicō</td>
<td>implicāre</td>
<td>implicāvī</td>
<td>implicātus (-itus)</td>
<td>entwine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secō</td>
<td>secāre</td>
<td>secuī</td>
<td>sectus</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonō</td>
<td>sonāre</td>
<td>sonuī</td>
<td>sonātūrus</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonō</td>
<td>tonāre</td>
<td>tonuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>thunder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetō</td>
<td>vetāre</td>
<td>vetuī</td>
<td>vetitus</td>
<td>forbid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. PERFECT IN -Ī WITH LENGTHENING OF THE STEM VOWEL.

| juvō | juvāre | jūvī | jūtus | help |
| lavō | lavāre | lāvī | lautus | wash |

IV. PERFECT REDUPLICATED.

| stō | stāre | stetī | stātūrus |

V. DEPONENTS.

These are all regular, and follow mīrō, mīrāri, mīrātus sum.

Second (Ē-) Conjugation.

121. I. PERFECT IN -ĒĪ.

| dēleō | dēlēre | dēlevī | dēletus | destroy |
| fleō | flēre | flēvī | flētus | weep, lament |
| compleō | complēre | complēvī | complētus | fill up |
| abolō | abolēre | abolēvī | abolitus | destroy |
| cīē | cīēre | cīvī | citus | set in motion |

II. PERFECT IN -UĪ.

a. Type -eō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

| arceō | arcēre | arcuī | coercēre | coercuī | coercitus | keep off |
| coerced | coercēre | coercuī | coercitus | practise |
| exercēō | exercēre | exercuī | exercitus | be warm |
| calcō | calēre | caluī | calitūrus | be without |
| careō | carēre | caruī | caritūrus | grieve |
| dolō | dolēre | doluī | dolitūrus | have |
| habēō | habēre | habuī | habitus | owe |
| dēbēō | dēbēre | dēbuī | débitus | offer |
| praebēō | praebēre | praebuī | praebitus | lie |
| jaceō | jacēre | jacuī | jacitūrus | earn, deserve |
| mereō | merēre | meruī | meritus | advise |
| moneō | monēre | monuī | monitus | injure |
| noceō | nocēre | nociuī | nocitum (est) | |
pārcō pārēre pārui pāritūrus obey
placeō placēre placuī placitūrus please
taceō tacēre tacuī tacitūrus be silent
terreō terrēre terruī territus frighten
valēō valēre valuī valitūrus be strong

NOTE 1.—The following lack the Participial Stem:—

egeō egeēre egui — want
cēmineō cēminēre cēminuī — stand forth
flōreō flōrēre flōruī — bloom
horreō horrēre horrui — bristle
lateō latēre latuī — lurk
nīteō nītreēre nituī — gleam
oleō olēre oluī — smell
palleō pallēre palluī — be pale
pateō patēre patuī — lie open
rubeō rubēre rubuī — be red
sileō silēre siluī — be silent
splendēō splendēre splenduī — gleam
studeō studēre studuī — study
stupēō stupēre stupuī — be amazed
timeō timēre timuī — fear
torpeō torpēre torpuī — be dull
vigeō vigēre viguī — flourish
vireō virēre viruī — be green

and others.

NOTE 2.—The following are used only in the Present System:—

aveō avēre — wish
frigeō frigēre — be cold
immineō imminēre — overhang
maerēo maerēre — mourn
pollēo pollēre — be strong

and others.

b. Type -ēō, -ēre, -uī, -tus (-sus).

ċēnseō cēnsēre cēnsuī cēensus estimate
doceō docēre docuī doctus teach
miscēō miscēre miscui mixtus mix
teneō tenēre tenuī — hold

So contineō and sustineō; but—
retineō retinēre retinuī retentus retain
obtineō obtinēre obtinuī obtentus maintain
torreō torrēre torruī tostus bake

III. Perfect in -SĪ.

augeō augēre auxī auctus increase
torqueō torquēre torsī tortus twist
indulgeō indulgēre indulsuī — indulge
lūceō lūcēre lūxī — be light
lūgeō lūgēre lūxī — mourn
jubeō jubēre jussī jussus order
permulceō permulcēre permulsī permulsus soothe
rideō ridēre rīsī rīsum (est) laugh
suādeō suādēre suāsī suāsum (est) advise
abs-tergeō abstergerēre abstersī abstersus wipe off
ārdeō ārdēre ārsī ārsūrus burn
haeireō haerēre haesī haesūrus stick
maneō manēre mānsī mānsūrus stay
algeō algēre alsī —— be cold
fulgeō fulgerēre fulsī —— gleam
urgeō urgēre ursī —— press

IV. PERFECT IN -I WITH REDUPLICATION.

mordeō mordēre momordī morsus bite
spondeō spondēre spoondī spōnsus promise
tondeō tondēre totondī tōnsus shear
pendeō pendēre pependī hang

V. PERFECT IN -I WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

caveō cavēre cāvī cautūrus take care
faveō favēre fāvī fautūrus favor
foveō favēre fōvī fōtus cherish
moveō movēre mōvī mōtus move
paveō pavēre pāvī —— fear
sedeō sedēre sēdī sessūrus sit
videō vidēre vīdī vītus see
voveō vovēre vōvī vōtus vow

VI. PERFECT IN -I WITHOUT EITHER REDUPLICATION OR LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

ferveō fervēre (fervī, ferbūī) —— boil
prandcō prandēre prandī prānsus (§ 114, 2) lunch
strīdeō strīdēre strīdī —— creak

VII. DEPONENTS.

liceor licēri licitus sum bid
polliceor pollicēri pollicitus sum promise
mercor merēri meritus sum earn
misercor miserēri miseritus sum pity
vereor verēri veritus sum fear
fateor fatēri fassus sum confess
confiteor confitēri confession confess
reor reēri ratus sum think
medeor medēri —— heal
tueor tuēri —— protect

Third (Consonant) Conjugation.

122. I. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

I. Perfect in -stī.

a. Type -ō, -āre, -stī, -tus.

carpō carpere carpsī carptus pluck
sculpō sculpere sculpśī sculptus chisel
rēpō rēpere rēpsī —— creep
serpō serpere serpsī —— crawl
scribō scribere scrīpsī scriptus write
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nūbō</td>
<td>nūbere</td>
<td>nūpsī</td>
<td>nūpta (woman only)</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>rēctus</td>
<td>govern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegō</td>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>tēxī</td>
<td>tectus</td>
<td>cover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>af-fliō</td>
<td>affligere</td>
<td>afflixiō</td>
<td>afflictus</td>
<td>shatter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dīcō</td>
<td>dicere</td>
<td>dīxī</td>
<td>dictus</td>
<td>say</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcō</td>
<td>dúcare</td>
<td>dúxī</td>
<td>ductus</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coquō</td>
<td>coquire</td>
<td>coxī</td>
<td>coctus</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trahō</td>
<td>trahere</td>
<td>trāxī</td>
<td>trāctus</td>
<td>draw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vehō</td>
<td>vehere</td>
<td>vexī</td>
<td>vectus</td>
<td>carry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cingō</td>
<td>cingere</td>
<td>cīnxī</td>
<td>cinctus</td>
<td>gird</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tingō</td>
<td>tingere</td>
<td>tīnxī</td>
<td>tinctus</td>
<td>dip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jungō</td>
<td>jungere</td>
<td>jūnxī</td>
<td>jūctus</td>
<td>join</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fingō</td>
<td>fingere</td>
<td>fīnxī</td>
<td>fictus</td>
<td>would</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pingō</td>
<td>pingere</td>
<td>pīnxī</td>
<td>pictus</td>
<td>paint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stringō</td>
<td>stringere</td>
<td>strīnxī</td>
<td>strictus</td>
<td>bind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stinguere</td>
<td>-stīnxī</td>
<td>-stīctus</td>
<td>blot out</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Type -ō, -ēre, -ṣī, -sus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fīgō</td>
<td>figere</td>
<td>fixī</td>
<td>fixus</td>
<td>fasten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mergō</td>
<td>mergere</td>
<td>mersī</td>
<td>mersus</td>
<td>sink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spargō</td>
<td>spargere</td>
<td>sparsī</td>
<td>sparsus</td>
<td>scatter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flectō</td>
<td>flectere</td>
<td>flexī</td>
<td>flexus</td>
<td>bend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nectō</td>
<td>nectere</td>
<td>nexuī</td>
<td>nexus</td>
<td>twine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mittō</td>
<td>mittere</td>
<td>mīsī</td>
<td>missus</td>
<td>send</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rādō</td>
<td>rādere</td>
<td>rāsī</td>
<td>rāsus</td>
<td>shave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōdō</td>
<td>rōdere</td>
<td>rōsī</td>
<td>rōsus</td>
<td>gnaw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vādō</td>
<td>vadere</td>
<td>-vāsī</td>
<td>-vāsum (est)</td>
<td>march, walk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdō</td>
<td>lūdere</td>
<td>lūsī</td>
<td>lūsum (est)</td>
<td>play</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trūdō</td>
<td>trūdere</td>
<td>trūsī</td>
<td>trūsus</td>
<td>push</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laedō</td>
<td>laedere</td>
<td>laesī</td>
<td>laesus</td>
<td>injure, hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claudō</td>
<td>claudere</td>
<td>claustī</td>
<td>clausus</td>
<td>close</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plaudō</td>
<td>plaudere</td>
<td>plaussī</td>
<td>plausum (est)</td>
<td>clap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explōdō</td>
<td>explōdere</td>
<td>explōsī</td>
<td>explōsus</td>
<td>hoot off</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēdō</td>
<td>cēdere</td>
<td>cessī</td>
<td>cessum (est)</td>
<td>withdraw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dividō</td>
<td>dividere</td>
<td>divīsī</td>
<td>divīsus</td>
<td>divide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>premō</td>
<td>premere</td>
<td>pressī</td>
<td>pressus</td>
<td>press</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Perfect in -ī with Reduplication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab-dō</td>
<td>abdere</td>
<td>abdīdī</td>
<td>abditus</td>
<td>conceal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red-dō</td>
<td>red-dere</td>
<td>reddīdī</td>
<td>redditus</td>
<td>return</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So addō, condō, dēdō, perdō, prōdō, trādō, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōn-sistō</td>
<td>cōnsistere</td>
<td>cōnstitī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>take one's stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistō</td>
<td>resistere</td>
<td>restītī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>resist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum-sistō</td>
<td>circum-sistere</td>
<td>circum-stetī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>surround</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cadō</td>
<td>cadere</td>
<td>cecidī</td>
<td>căsūrus</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
caedō caedere cecidī caeusus kill
pendō pendere pependī pensus weigh, pay
tendō tendere tetendī tentus stretch
tundō tundere tutudī tūsus, tūsus beat
fallō fallere fefellī (falsus, as Adj.) deceive
pellō pellere pepuli pulsus drive out
currō currere cucurrī cursum (est) run
parcō parcere pepercī parsūrus spare
canō canere cecinī sing
tangō tangere tetigī tactus touch
punō punere pupugī punctus prick

NOTE.—In the following verbs the perfects were originally reduplicated, but have lost the reduplicating syllable:

per-cellō percellere perculī perculus strike down
findō findere fidī fissus split
scindō scindere scidī scissus tear apart
tollō tollere sus-tulī sublātus remove

3. Perfect in -ī with Lengthening of Stem Vowel.

agō agere ēgī āctus drive, do
peragō peragere perēgī perāctus finish
subigō subigere subēgī subāctus subdue
coēgō coēgere coēgī coāctus force, gather
frangō frangere frēgī frāctus break
perfringō perfringere perfrēgī perfrāctus break down
legō legere lēgī lēctus gather, read
perlegō perlegere perlēgī perlēctus read through
colligō colligere collēgī collēctus collect
dēligō déligerē délēgī délēctus choose
dilīgō dilīgere dilēgī dilēctus love
intellegō intellegere intellexī intellectus understand
neglegō neglegere neglexī neglectus neglect
emō emere ēmī ēmpitus buy
coēmō coēmere coēmī coēmpitus buy up
redimō redimere redēmī redēmpitus buy back
dirimō dirimere dirēmī dirēmpitus destroy
dēmō dēmere dēmpī dēmpitus take away
sumō sūmere sūmpī sūmpitus take
prōmō prōmere prōmpsī (prōmpitus, as Adjud.) take out
vincō vincere vicī victus conquer
re-linquiō reliquere relicī leave
rumpō rumpere rūpī ruptus break
edō ēsse (§ 128) ēdī ēsus eat
fundō fundere fūdī fūsus four

4. Perfect in -ī without either Reduplication or Lengthening of Stem Vowel.

excūdō excūdere excūdī excūsus hammer
consīdō consīdere consēdī —— take one's seat
possīdō possīdere possēdī possessus take possession
accendō accendere accendī accēnsus kindle
ascendō ascendere ascendī ascēnsus (est) climb
dē-fendō dēfendere dēfendī dēfēnsus defend
5. Perfect in -ui.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>incumbö</td>
<td>lean on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gignö</td>
<td>bring forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>molö</td>
<td>grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vomö</td>
<td>vomit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fremö</td>
<td>snort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gemö</td>
<td>sigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metö</td>
<td>reap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremö</td>
<td>tremble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strepö</td>
<td>rattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alö</td>
<td>nourish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colö</td>
<td>cultivate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incolö</td>
<td>inhabit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excolö</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsulö</td>
<td>consult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnsrerö</td>
<td>join</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēserö</td>
<td>desert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissö</td>
<td>discourse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texö</td>
<td>weave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Perfect in -vī.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sinö</td>
<td>allow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desinö</td>
<td>cease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ponö</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ob-linö</td>
<td>smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serö</td>
<td>sow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnserö</td>
<td>plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cernö</td>
<td>separate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discernö</td>
<td>distinguish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēcernö</td>
<td>decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spernö</td>
<td>scorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sternö</td>
<td>spread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prō-sternö</td>
<td>overthrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petö</td>
<td>seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appetö</td>
<td>long for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terö</td>
<td>rub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quaerö</td>
<td>seek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acquirö</td>
<td>acquire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcessö</td>
<td>summon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capessö</td>
<td>seize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lassocö</td>
<td>provoke</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Used only in Present System.
angō  angere  ——  ——  choke
lambō  lambere  ——  ——  tick
clauðō  claudere  ——  ——  be lame
fūrō  furere  ——  ——  rive
vergō  vergere  ——  ——  bend

and a few others.

II. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -U.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Induction</th>
<th>Inducere</th>
<th>Induē</th>
<th>Indūtus</th>
<th>Put on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imduction</td>
<td>Imbuere</td>
<td>Imbuī</td>
<td>Imbūtus</td>
<td>Moisten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>漉</td>
<td>Luere</td>
<td>Luī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>Polluere</td>
<td>Polluī</td>
<td>Pollūtus</td>
<td>Defile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minuō</td>
<td>Minuere</td>
<td>Minuī</td>
<td>Minūtus</td>
<td>Lessen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statuō</td>
<td>Statuere</td>
<td>Statuī</td>
<td>Statūtus</td>
<td>Set up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constituō</td>
<td>Constituere</td>
<td>Constituī</td>
<td>Constitūtus</td>
<td>Determine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suō</td>
<td>Suere</td>
<td>Suī</td>
<td>Sūtus</td>
<td>Sew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tribuō</td>
<td>Tribuere</td>
<td>Tribuī</td>
<td>Tribūtus</td>
<td>Allot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruō</td>
<td>Ruere</td>
<td>Ruī</td>
<td>Ruitūrus</td>
<td>Fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīruō</td>
<td>Dīruere</td>
<td>Dīruī</td>
<td>Dīrutus</td>
<td>Destroy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obruō</td>
<td>Obruere</td>
<td>Obruī</td>
<td>Obrutus</td>
<td>Overwhelm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acuō</td>
<td>Acuere</td>
<td>Acuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Sharpen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arguō</td>
<td>Arguere</td>
<td>Arguī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Accuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congruō</td>
<td>Congruere</td>
<td>Congruī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Agree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metuō</td>
<td>Metuere</td>
<td>Metuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab-nuō</td>
<td>Abnuere</td>
<td>Abnuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Decline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-spūō</td>
<td>Respuere</td>
<td>Respuī</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>Reject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Struō</td>
<td>Struere</td>
<td>Strūxī</td>
<td>Strūctus</td>
<td>Build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluō</td>
<td>Fluere</td>
<td>Flūxī</td>
<td>(Flūxus, as Adj.)</td>
<td>Flow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -I.

| Capiō | Cupere | Cupīvī | Cupītus | Wish |
| Sapīō | Sapere | Sapivī | —— | Taste |
| Rapiō | Rapere | Rapuī | Raptus | Snatch |
| Diripiō | Diripere | Diripuī | Direptus | Plunder |
| Cōspiciō | Cōspicere | Cōspexī | Cōspectus | Gaze at |
| Aspiciō | Aspicere | Aspexī | Aspectus | Behold |
| Illiciō | Illicer | Illexī | Illectus | Allure |
| Pelliciō | Pellicer | Pellexī | Pellectus | Allure |
| Ēliciō | Ēlicer | Ēlicuī | Ēlicitus | Elicit |
| Quatiō | Quatere | —— | Quassus | Shake |
| Consciō | Conscere | Conscuī | Concussus | Shake |
| Parīō | Parere | Peperi | Partus | Bring forth |
| Capīō | Capere | Čēpī | Captus | Take |
| Accipiō | Accipere | Accēpī | Acceptus | Accept |
| Iniciō | Inicere | Inicēpī | Inceptus | Begin |
| Faciō | Facere | Fēcī | Factus | Make |
| Afficiō | Afficere | Affēcī | Affectus | Affect |

Passive, afficiō, affectus, affectus sum.

So other prepositional compounds, perficiō, perficere; intericiō, interficere; etc. But—
assuēficere assuēficē assuēfactus accusum

Passive, assuēficē, assuēficiō, assuēfactus sum.

So also pateficiō, pateficiō; caleficiō, caleficiō; and all non-prepositional compounds.

jaciō  jacere  jēcī  jactus  hurl
abiciō  abicere  abjēcī  abjectus  throw away
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fodii</td>
<td>fossus</td>
<td>dig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fugii</td>
<td>fugiturus</td>
<td>flee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>effugi</td>
<td></td>
<td>escape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IV. VERBS IN -SCÔ.

1. Verbs in -scô from Simple Roots.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>posco</td>
<td>poscere</td>
<td>demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disco</td>
<td>discere</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pascô</td>
<td>pascere</td>
<td>feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasco</td>
<td>pastum sum</td>
<td>graze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cresci</td>
<td>crescere</td>
<td>grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consuensis</td>
<td>consuiscere</td>
<td>accustom one's self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiesscô</td>
<td>quiessere</td>
<td>be still</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adolesscô</td>
<td>adolessere</td>
<td>grow up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsolescô</td>
<td>obsolescere</td>
<td>grow old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nescô</td>
<td>nescere</td>
<td>become acquainted with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignoscô</td>
<td>ignoscere</td>
<td>pardon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agnoscô</td>
<td>agnoscere</td>
<td>recognize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognoscô</td>
<td>cognoscere</td>
<td>get acquainted with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Verbs in -scô formed from other Verbs.

These usually have Inchoative or Inceptive meaning (see § 155, 1). When they have the Perfect, it is the same as that of the Verbs from which they are derived.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>florlescô</td>
<td>florlescere</td>
<td>begin to bloom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciscô</td>
<td>sciscere</td>
<td>enact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arlescô</td>
<td>arlescere</td>
<td>become dry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callescô</td>
<td>callescere</td>
<td>become hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consenescô</td>
<td>conseniscere</td>
<td>grow old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extimescô</td>
<td>extimescere</td>
<td>fear greatly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingemiscô</td>
<td>ingemiscere</td>
<td>sigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adhaerescô</td>
<td>adhaerescere</td>
<td>stick</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Verbs in -scô derived from Adjectives, usually with Inchoative meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>obdurlescô</td>
<td>obdurlescere</td>
<td>grow hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evanescô</td>
<td>evanescere</td>
<td>disappear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percêbrlescô</td>
<td>percêbrlescere</td>
<td>grow fresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matûrlescô</td>
<td>matûrlescere</td>
<td>grow ripe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obmutlescô</td>
<td>obmutlescere</td>
<td>grow dumb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### V. DEPONENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>past participle</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fungor</td>
<td>functus sum</td>
<td>perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queror</td>
<td>questus sum</td>
<td>complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loquor</td>
<td>locutus sum</td>
<td>speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>secutus sum</td>
<td>follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruor</td>
<td>fruiturus</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfbruor</td>
<td>perfructus sum</td>
<td>thoroughly enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor</td>
<td>lapsus sum</td>
<td>glide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amplexctor</td>
<td>amplexus sum</td>
<td>embrace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nitôr</td>
<td>nîthus</td>
<td>strive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradior</td>
<td>gressus sum</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patior</td>
<td>passus sum</td>
<td>suffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perpetior</td>
<td>persessus sum</td>
<td>endure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latinate Verb</td>
<td>Latin Infinitive</td>
<td>Latin Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>útor</td>
<td>ütí</td>
<td>úsus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morior</td>
<td>morí</td>
<td>mortus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adipíscur</td>
<td>adipísći</td>
<td>adeptus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commíníscur</td>
<td>commínísći</td>
<td>commentus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reminíscur</td>
<td>reminísći</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nancíscur</td>
<td>nancísći</td>
<td>nactus (nactus) sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>náscur</td>
<td>násći</td>
<td>nátus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oblívíscur</td>
<td>oblívísći</td>
<td>oblítus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pacíscur</td>
<td>pacísći</td>
<td>pactus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profícíscur</td>
<td>profícísći</td>
<td>profectus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ulcíscor</td>
<td>ulcíscći</td>
<td>ultus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iráscur</td>
<td>irásći</td>
<td>(irátus, as Adj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vescor</td>
<td>vescić</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Fourth Conjugation.

### 123. I. Perfect ends in -VÍ.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Perfect</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audíre</td>
<td>audívī</td>
<td>audítus</td>
<td>hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sepelíō</td>
<td>sepeleíre</td>
<td>sepelívī</td>
<td>sepelítus</td>
<td>bury</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### II. Perfect ends in -UI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Perfect</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aperiō</td>
<td>aperíre</td>
<td>aperuí</td>
<td>apertus</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operiō</td>
<td>operíre</td>
<td>operuí</td>
<td>opertus</td>
<td>cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saliō</td>
<td>salíre</td>
<td>saluí</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>leap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### III. Perfect ends in -SI.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Perfect</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>saepiō</td>
<td>saepíre</td>
<td>saepsī</td>
<td>saep्तus</td>
<td>hedge in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sanció</td>
<td>sancíre</td>
<td>sánxī</td>
<td>sánctus</td>
<td>ratify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vinció</td>
<td>vincíre</td>
<td>vinxī</td>
<td>vinc्तus</td>
<td>bind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amiciō</td>
<td>amicíre</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>amíctus</td>
<td>envelop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulciō</td>
<td>fulcíre</td>
<td>fulśī</td>
<td>fultus</td>
<td>prop up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>referciō</td>
<td>refercíre</td>
<td>referśī</td>
<td>refer्तus</td>
<td>fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacriō</td>
<td>sacríre</td>
<td>sarsi</td>
<td>sartus</td>
<td>patch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hauriō</td>
<td>haureíre</td>
<td>hausī</td>
<td>haustus</td>
<td>draw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sentiō</td>
<td>sentíre</td>
<td>sēnsī</td>
<td>sēnsus</td>
<td>feel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IV. Perfect in -I with lengthening of stem vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Perfect</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>veniō</td>
<td>veníre</td>
<td>vēnī</td>
<td>ventum (est)</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adveniō</td>
<td>adveníre</td>
<td>advēnĭ</td>
<td>adventum (est)</td>
<td>arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveniō</td>
<td>inveníre</td>
<td>invēnĭ</td>
<td>inventus</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### V. Perfect with loss of Reduplication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Perfect</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reperiō</td>
<td>reperíre</td>
<td>repérī</td>
<td>repertus</td>
<td>find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comperiō</td>
<td>comperíre</td>
<td>comperī</td>
<td>compertus</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VI. Used only in the present.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>feriō</td>
<td>ferīre</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēsurīō</td>
<td>ēsurīre</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>be hungry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### VII. Deponents.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latinate Verb</th>
<th>Latin Infinitive</th>
<th>Latin Present</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>largiō</td>
<td>largiī</td>
<td>largítus sum</td>
<td>bestow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
So many others.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin (Sing.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imp. Subj.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imper.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>experior</td>
<td>experīrī</td>
<td>expertus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opperior</td>
<td>opperīrī</td>
<td>oppertus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>òrdior</td>
<td>òrdīrī</td>
<td>čorris sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orior</td>
<td>orīrī</td>
<td>ortus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Orior* usually follows the Third Conjugation in its inflection; as *oreris, orītur, orīmur; orerer* (Imp. Subj.); *orere* (Imper.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin (Sing.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imp. Subj.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imper.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mētiōr</td>
<td>mētīrī</td>
<td>mēnsus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assentior</td>
<td>assentīrī</td>
<td>assēnsus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IRREGULAR VERBS.

124. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are *sum, dō, edō, ferō, volō, nōlo, mālō, eō, fō* The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel, as *fer-s* (2d Sing. of *fer-ō*), instead of *fer-i-s*. They are but the relics of what was once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

125. The Inflection of *sum* has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. They are—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin (Sing.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imp. Subj.)</th>
<th>Latin (Imper.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>absum</td>
<td>abesse</td>
<td>āfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Partic.</td>
<td>absēns (absentis), absent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adsum</td>
<td>adesse</td>
<td>adfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēsum</td>
<td>dēesse</td>
<td>dēfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insum</td>
<td>inesse</td>
<td>īnfūī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intersum</td>
<td>interesse</td>
<td>interfūī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praesum</td>
<td>praesse</td>
<td>praeſuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Partic.</td>
<td>praeſēns (praesentis), present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsum</td>
<td>obesse</td>
<td>obfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōsum</td>
<td>prōdesse</td>
<td>prōfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsum</td>
<td>subesse</td>
<td>subfuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supersum</td>
<td>supersesse</td>
<td>superfuī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE.—*Prōsum* is compounded of *prōd* (earlier form of *prō*) and *sum*; the *d* disappears before consonants, as *prōsumus*; but *prōdestis*.

126. *Pōsum*. In its Present System *pōsum* is a compound of *pot-* (for *pote*, able) and *sum*; *pōtuī* is from an obsolete *pōtērēc*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

possum, posse, potūi, to be able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possum, potes, potest;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>poteram;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>poterō;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuī;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>potueram;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. P.</td>
<td>potuerō;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>possim, possīs, possit;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>possem;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>potuerim;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
127. Dō, I give.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>dō, dās, dat;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>dābam, etc.;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>dābō, etc.;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>dedī;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>dederam;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut. P.</strong></td>
<td>dederō;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>dem;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp.</strong></td>
<td>dārem;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>dederim;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong></td>
<td>dedissem;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>dā;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>dātō;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dātō.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>dāre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>dedisse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>dātūrus esse.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND.

dandī, etc.

PARTICIPLE.

dāns.

dātūrus.

SUPINE.

dātum, dātū.

1. The passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: dārī, dātur, dārētur, etc.

2. The archaic and poetic Present Subjunctive forms duim, duint, perduit, perduint, etc., are not from the root da-, but from du-, a collateral root of similar meaning.

128. Edō, I eat.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>edō, edimus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēs, ēstis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēst; edunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>edō, edimus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēs, ēstis,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ēst; edunt.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE.
Imp. ēsscm, ēssēmus,
ēssēs, ēssētis,
ēsset; ēssent.

IMPERATIVE.
Pres. ēs; ēste.
Fut. ēstō; ēstōte.
ēstō; eduntō.

FINITIVE.
Pres. ēsse.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.
Pres. 3d Sing. ēstur.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
Imp. 3d Sing. ēssētur.

1. Observe the long vowel of the forms in ēs-, which alone distinguishes them from the corresponding forms of esse, to be.

2. Note comedō, comēsse, comēdī, comēsus or comēstus, consume.

3. The Present Subjunctive has edim, -īs, -īt, etc., less often edam, -ās, etc.

129. Ferō, I bear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.
ferō, ferre, tullī, lātus.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.
Pres. ferō, fers, fert;
Imp. ferēbam;
Fut. feram;
Perf. tullī;
Plup. tuleram;
Fut. P. tulerō;

PLURAL.
ferimus, fertis, ferunt[46]
ferēbamus.
ferēmus.
tulimus.
tulerāmus.
tulerimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres. feram;
Imp. ferrem;
Perf. tulerim;
Plup. tulissem;

SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres. ferāmus.
Imp. ferrēmus.
Perf. tulerīmus.
Plup. tulissēmus.

IMPERATIVE
Pres. fer;
Fut. fertō;
ferō;

INFINITIVE.
Pres. ferre.
Perf. tulisse.

PARTICIPLE.
Pres. ferēns.
Fut. lātūrus esse. 

GERUND.
Gen. ferendī.
Dat. ferendō.
Acc. ferendum.
Abl. ferendō.
Passive Voice.
feror, ferrī, lātus sum, to be borne.

SUPINE.
Fut. lātūrus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.
Pres. feror, ferris, fertur;
Imp. ferēbar;
Fut. ferar;
Perf. lātus sum;
Plup. lātus eram;
Fut. P. lātus erō;

PLURAL.
ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.
ferēbāmur.
ferēmur.
lātī sumus.
lātī erāmus.
lātī erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
Pres. ferar;
Imp. ferrer;
Perf. lātus sum;
Plup. lātus esse;

IMPERATIVE.
Pres. ferre;
Fut. ferto;

INFINITIVE.
Pres. ferrī.
Perf. lātus esse.
Fut. lātum īrī.

PARTICIPLE.
Perf. lātus.
Fut. ferendus.

So also the Compounds—

afferō afferre attulī allātus bring toward
auferō auferre abstulī ablātus take away
cōñferō cōñferre contulī collātus compare
differō differre distulī dilātus put off
efferō efferre extulī ēlātus carry out
īñferō īñferre intulī illātus bring against
offerō offerre obtulī oblātus present
referō referre rettulī relātus bring back

NOTE.—The forms sustulī and sublātus belong to tollō.

130. volō, nōlō, mālō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.
volō, velle, volū, to wish.
nōlō, nōlle, nōlū, to be unwilling.
mālō, mālle, mālū, to prefer.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. volō, nōlō, mālō,
vīs, nōn vīs, māvīs,
vult; nōn vult; māvult;
volumus, nōlumus, mālumus,
vultis, nōn vultis, māvultis,
volut. nōlunt. mālunt.

Imp. volēbam. nōlēbam. mālēbam.

Fut. volam. nōlām. mālām.

Perf. volūī. nōlūī. mālūī.

Plup. volueram. nōlueram. mālueram.

Fut. P. voluerō. nōluerō. māluerō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. velim, -īs, -it, etc. nōlim. mālim.

Inf. vellem, -ēs, -et, etc. nōllem. māllem.

Perf. voluerim. nōluerim. māluerim.

Pluf. voluissem. nōluissem. māluissem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. nōli; nōlīte.

Fut. nōllī; nōllīte.
nōllīō; nōllīntō.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle. nōlle. mālle.

Perf. voluisse. nōlisse. mālisse

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. volēns nōlēns.

131. Fīō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

fīō, fierī, factus sum, to become, be made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR, PLURAL.

Pres. fīō, fīs, fīt; fīmus, fītis, fīunt.

Inf. fīēbam; fīēbamus.

Fut. fīam; fīēmus.

Perf. factus sum; factī sumus.

Pluf. factus eram; factī erāmus.

Fut. P. factus erō; factī erīmus.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. fīam; fīāmus.

Imp. fierēm; fierēmus.

Perf. factus sim; factī sīmus.

Plup. factus essem; factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. fi; fīte.

PARTICIPLE.
INFINITIVE.

Pres. fieri.
Perf. factus esse. Perf. factus.
Fut. factum iūr. Ger. faciendus.

NOTE.—A few isolated forms of compounds of fīō occur; as, dēfit lacks; iinfit, begins.

132. Eō.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

eō, īre, īvi, itum (est), to itum (est), to

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Pres. eō, īs, īt; īmus, ītis, eunt.
Imp. ībam; ībāmus.
Fut. ībō; ībimus.
Perf. īvi (īi); īvimus (īimus).
Plur. īveram (īeram); īverāmus (īerāmus)
Fut. P. īverō (īerō); īverimus (īerimus).

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Pres. eam; eāmus.
Inf. īrem; īrēmus.
Perf. īverim (īerim); īverīmus (īerīmus).
Plur. īvissem (īissem, īssem); īvissemus (īissēmus, īssēmus).

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. ī; īte.
Fut. ītō; ītōte, euntō.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

Perf. īvisse (īsse). (Gen. euntis.)

GERUND.
eundī, etc. SUPINE.

itum, itū.

1. Transitive compounds of eō admit the full Passive inflection; as adeor, adīris, adītur, etc.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important:—

133. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

Coepī, Memīnī, Ōdī,
I have begun. I remember. I hate.
INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perf. coepī. meminī. ōdī.
Plup. coeperam. memineram. ōderam.
Fut. P. coeperō. meminerō. ōderō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf. coeperim. meminerim. ōderim.
Plup. coepissem. meminissem. ōdissem.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. mementō; Plur. mementōte.

INFINITIVE.

Perf. coepisse. meminisse. ōdisse.
Fut. coeptūrus esse. ōsūrus esse.

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. coeptus, begun.
Fut. coeptūrus.

1. When coepī governs a Passive Infinitive it usually takes the form coeptus est; as, amāri coeptus est, he began to be loved.

2. Note that meminī and ōdī, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force of the Imperfect and Future; as, memineram, I remembered; ōderō, I shall hate.

134. Inquam, I say (inserted between words of a direct quotation)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

Pres. inquam, inquiunt.

Fut. inquirēs, inquiet.

Perf. 3d Sing. inquit.

135. Ajō, I say.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. PLURAL

Pres. aijō, aijū.

Imp. aijēbam, aijēbāmus,

ajēbās, aijēbātis,

ajēbat; aijēbant.

Perf 3d Sing. aijt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres 3d Sing. aijat.

NOTE.—For aisne, do you mean? aín is common.

136. Fārī, to speak.

This is inflected regularly in the perfect tenses. In the Present System it has—
**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāitur.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fābor,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fābitur.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impv.</td>
<td>fāre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>fāri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. Partic.</td>
<td>fantis, fantī, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund, G.,</td>
<td>fandī; D. and Abl., fandō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerundive,</td>
<td>fandus.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE.**—Forms of fāri are rare. More frequent are its compounds; as,— affāitur, he addresses; praefāmur, we say in advance.

**137. OTHER DEFECTIVE FORMS.**

1. Queō, quīre, quīvi, to be able, and nequeō, nequīre, nequīvi, to be unable, are inflected like eō, but occur chiefly in the Present Tense, and there only in special forms.

2. Quaesō, I entreat; quaesumus, we entreat.

3. Cedō (2d sing. Impv.), cettē (2d plu.); give me, tell me.

4. Salvē, salvēte, hail. Also Infinitive, salvēre.

5. Havē (avē), havēte, hail. Also Infinitive, havēre.

---

**IMPERSONAL VERBS.**

**138.** Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English, it snows, it seems, etc. They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, mē pudet hoc fēcisse, lit. it shames me to have done this; hoc deceit, this is fitting. Here belong—

**I.** Verbs denoting operations of the weather; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fulget</th>
<th>fulsit</th>
<th>it lightens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tonat</td>
<td>tonuit</td>
<td>it thunders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandinat</td>
<td></td>
<td>it hails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ningit</td>
<td>ninxit</td>
<td>it snows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluit</td>
<td>pluit</td>
<td>it rains</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**II.** Special Verbs.

| paenitet | paenitēre | paenuituit | it repents |
| piget    | pigēre    | piguit     | it grieves |
| pudet    | pudēre    | puduit     | it causes shame |
| taedet   | taedēre   | taeduit    | it disgusts |
| miseret  | miserēre  | miseruit   | it causes pity |
| libet    | libēre    | libuit     | it pleases |
| licet    | licēre    | licuit     | it is lawful |
| oportet  | oportēre  | oportuit   | it is fitting |
| decet    | decēre    | decuit     | it is becoming |
| dēdecet  | dēdecēre  | dēdecuit   | it is unbecoming |
| réfert   | réferrē   | rétulit    | it concerns |

**III.** Verbs Impersonal only in Special Senses.
cōnstat  cōnstāre  cōnstīt  it is evident
praecstat  praestāre  praestītī  it is better
juvat  juvāre  jūvīt  it delights
appāret  appārēre  appāruit  it appears
placet  placēre  placuit  it pleases
( placitum est )
accēdit  accēdēre  accessit  it is added
accidit  accidere  accidit  it happens
contingit  contingere  contigit  it happens
ēvenit  ēvenīre  ēvenīt  it turns out
interest  interesse  interfuit  it concerns

IV. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs; as,—

ītur  lit. it is gone  i.e. some one goes
currītur  lit. it is run  i.e. some one runs
ventum est  lit. it has been come  i.e. some one has come
veniendum est  lit. it must be come  i.e. somebody must come
pugnārī potest  lit. it can be fought  i.e. somebody can fight

PART III.

PARTICLES.

139. Particles are the four Parts of Speech that do not admit of inflection; viz. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.

ADVERBS.

140. Adverbs denote manner, place, time, or degree Most adverbs are in origin case-forms which have become stereotyped by usage. The common adverbial terminations have already been given above (§ 76). The following TABLE OF CORRELATIVES is important:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE.</th>
<th>DEMONSTRATIVE.</th>
<th>INDEFINITE.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ubī, where; where?</td>
<td>hic, here.</td>
<td>alicubī, ësquam, ëspiam, somewhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quō, whither; whither?</td>
<td>ibī, illīc, istīc, there.</td>
<td>aliquō, to some place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unde, whence; whence?</td>
<td>hūc, hither.</td>
<td>alicunde, from somewhere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quā, where; where?</td>
<td>eō, istīc, illūc, thither.</td>
<td>alicuā, by some way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum, when.</td>
<td>hinc, hence.</td>
<td>alicuardō, umquam, sometime, ever.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quandō, when?</td>
<td>inde, istinc, illinc, thence.</td>
<td>alicquotīens, some number of times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotiēns, as often as; how often?</td>
<td>hāc, by this way.</td>
<td>alicuantum, somewhat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quam, as much as; how much?</td>
<td>cā, istāc, illāc, by that way.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nunc, now.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tum, tunc, then.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>totiēns, so often.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tam, so much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PREPOSITIONS.
141. Prepositions show relations of words. The following Prepositions govern the Accusative:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad, to.</td>
<td>contrā, against.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversus, against.</td>
<td>ergā, toward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversum, toward, against.</td>
<td>extrā, outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ante, before.</td>
<td>infrā, below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apud, with, near.</td>
<td>inter, between.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circā, around.</td>
<td>intrā, within.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circiter, about.</td>
<td>jūxtā, near.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circum, around.</td>
<td>ob, on account of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cis, this side of.</td>
<td>penes, in the hands of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cīrā, this side of.</td>
<td>per, through.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pōne, behind.</td>
<td>prae, before.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post, after.</td>
<td>praepter, past.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praetēr, past.</td>
<td>prope, near.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propēr, on account of.</td>
<td>secundum, after.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subter, beneath.</td>
<td>super, over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suprā, above.</td>
<td>tranṣ, across.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ultrā, beyond.</td>
<td>versus, toward.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Æque is often prefixed to ad, in the sense of even; as,—

Æque ad urbem, even to the city.

2. Versus always follows its case; as,—

Rōmam versus, toward Rome.

It may be combined with a preceding Preposition; as,—

ad urbem versus, toward the city.

3. Like prope, the Comparatives propior, propius, and the Superlatives proximus, proximē, sometimes govern the Accusative; as,—

Ubiī proximē Rōnēum incolum, the Ubii dwell next to the Rhine;
propius castra hostium, nearer the camp of the enemy.

142. The following Prepositions govern the Ablative:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā, ab, abs, from, by.</td>
<td>cum, with.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absque, without.</td>
<td>dē, from, concerning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōram, in the presence of.</td>
<td>e, ex, from out of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenus, up to.</td>
<td>prō, in front of, for.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine, without.</td>
<td>praec, before.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Ā, ab, abs. Before vowels or h, ab must be used; before consonants we find sometimes ā, sometimes ab (the latter usually not before the labials b, p, f, v, m; nor before c, g, q, or t); abs occurs only before tē, and ā is admissible even there.

2. Ė, ex. Before vowels or h, ex must be used; before consonants we find sometimes ē, sometimes ex.

3. Tenus regularly follows its case, as, pectoribus tenus, up to the breast. It sometimes governs the Genitive, as, labrōrum tenus, as far as the lips.

4. Cum is appended to the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, and to the Reflexive Pronoun; usually also to the Relative and Interrogative. Thus:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mēcum</td>
<td>nōbiscum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quōcum or cum quō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēcum</td>
<td>vōbiscum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quācum or cum quā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sēcum</td>
<td>quibuscum or cum quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

On quīcum, see § 89, Footnote 27.

143. Two Prepositions, in, in, into, and sub, under, govern both the Accusative and the Ablative. With the Accusative they denote motion; with the Ablative, rest; as,—

in urbem, into the city;
in urbe, in the city.

1. Subter and super are also occasionally construed with the Ablative.

144. RELATION OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.
1. Prepositions were originally Adverbs, and many of them still retain their adverbial meaning; as, *post*, afterwards; *ante*, previously; *contrā*, on the other hand, etc.

2. Conversely several words, usually adverbs, are occasionally employed as prepositions; as,—

   *clam, pridiē*, with the Accusative.
   *procul, simul, palam*, with the Ablative.

3. **Anástrophe.** A Preposition sometimes follows its case. This is called Anástrophe; as,—

   *ei, quōs inter erat, those among whom he was.*

Anastrophe occurs chiefly with disyllabic prepositions.

**CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.**

145. 1. Conjunctions are used to connect ideas. For Coördinate Conjunctions, see §§ 341 ff. Subordinate Conjunctions are treated in connection with Subordinate Clauses.

2. Interjections express emotion. Thus:—

   1. Surprise; as, *ēn, ecce, ō.*
   2. Joy; as, *īō, euoec.*
   4. Calling; as, *heus, cho.*

**PART IV.**

**WORD-FORMATION.**

**I. DERIVATIVES.**

146. Derivatives are formed by appending certain terminations called Suffixes to stems of verbs, nouns, or adjectives.

**A. NOUNS.**

1. Nouns derived from Verbs.

147. 1. The suffix *-tor (-sor)*, Fem. *-trīx*, denotes *the agent*; as,—

   *victor, victrīx, victor; dēfensor, defender.*

   NOTE.—The suffix *-tor* is occasionally appended to noun stems; as,—

   *gladiātor, gladiator* (from *gladius*).

2. The suffix *-or* (originally *-ōs*) denotes *an activity or a condition*; as,—

   *amor, love; timor, fear; dolor, pain.*

3. The suffixes *-tiō (-siō),* Gen. *-ōnis,* and *-tus (-sus),* Gen. *-ūs,* denote *an action as in process*; as,—
vēnātiō, hunting; obsessiō, blockade; gemitus, sighing; cursus, running.

NOTE.—Rarer endings with the same force are:—

a) -tūra, -sūra; as,—
   sepultūra, burial; mēnsūra, measuring.

b) -ium; as,—
   gaudium, rejoicing.

c) -īdō; as,—
   cupidō, desire.

4. The suffixes -men, -mentum, -crum, -trum, -bulum, -culum, denote the means or place of an action; as,—

   lūmen (lūc-s-men), light; vocābulum, word;
   ōrnāmentum, ornament; documentum, proof;
   sepulcrum, grave; arātrum, plough;

   vehiculum, carriage.

2. Nouns derived from Nouns.

148. 1. Diminutives end in—

   -ulus,  (- ula, -ulum)
   -olus,  (- ola, -olum), after a vowel
   -ulus,  (- ula, -ulum)
   -ellus,  (- ella, -ellum)
   -illus,  (- illa, -illum)

as,—

   nīdulus, little nest  (nīdus);
   virgula, wand  (virga);
   oppidulum, little town  (oppidum);
   filiolus, little son  (filius);
   opusculum, little work  (opus);
   tabella, tablet  (tabula);
   lapillus, pebble  (lapis).

NOTE 1.—It will be observed that in gender the Diminutives follow the gender of the words from which they are derived.

NOTE 2.—The endings -ellus, -illus contain the primitive form of the diminutive suffix, viz., -lo-. Thus:

   agellus, field, for ager-lus;
   lapillus, pebble, for lapid-lus.

2. The suffix -ium appended to nouns denoting persons designates either a collection of such persons or their function; as,—

   collēgium, a corporation, body of colleagues (collēga);
   sacerdōtium, priestly function (sacerdōs).

3. The suffixes -ārium, -ētum, -ile designate a place where objects are kept or are found in abundance; as,—
columbārium, dove-cote (columba);
olivētum, olive-orchard (oliva);
ōvile, sheep-fold (ōvis).

4. The suffix -ātus denotes official position or honor; as,—
cōnsulātus, consulship (cōnsul).

5. The suffix -īna appended to nouns denoting persons designates a vocation or the place where it is carried on; as,—
doctrīna, teaching (doctor, teacher);
medicīna, the art of healing (medicus, physician);
sūtrīna, cobbler’s shop (sūtor, cobbler).

6. Patronymics are Greek proper names denoting son of ..., daughter of ... They have the following suffixes:—

   a) Masculines: -idēs, -adēs, -idēs; as, Priamidēs, son of Priam; Aeneadēs, son of Aeneas; Pēlidēs, son of Pelus.
   b) Feminines: -ēis, -īs, -īas; as, Nērēis, daughter of Nereus; Atlantīs, daughter of Atlas; Thaumantīas, daughter of Thaumas.

3. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

149. The suffixes -tās (-itās), -tūdō (-itūdō), -īa, -itia are used for the formation of abstract nouns denoting qualities; as,—

   bonitās, goodness; celeritās, swiftness; magnitūdō, greatness; audācia, boldness; amicitia, friendship.


B. ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

150. 1. The suffixes -bundus and -cundus give nearly the force of a present participle; as,—
tremebundus, trembling; jūcundus (juvō), pleasing.

2. The suffixes -āx and -ulus denote an inclination or tendency, mostly a faulty one; as,—
loquāx, loquacious; crēdulus, credulous.

3. The suffix -īdus denotes a state; as,—
calidus, hot; timidus, timid; cupidus, eager.

4. The suffixes -ilis and -bilis denote capacity or ability, usually in a passive sense; as,—
fragilis, fragile (i.e. capable of being broken);
docilis, docile.

2. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

   a) From Common Nouns.

151. 1. The suffixes -eus and -inus are appended to names of substances or materials; as,—
aureus, of gold; ferreus, of iron; fāginus, of beech.
2. The suffixes -ius, -icus, -ilis, -ālis, -āris, -ārius, -anus, -īnus, -īvus, -ēnīs signify belonging to, connected with; as,—

ōrātōrius, oratorical; 
belicus, pertaining to war; 
civilis, civil; 
rēgālis, regal; 
cōnsulāris, consular; 
circēnīs, belonging to the circus.

legiōnārius, legiary; 
paternus, paternal; 
urbānus, of the city; 
marinus, marine; 
aestīvus, pertaining to summer;

3. The suffixes -ōsus and -lentus denote fullness; as,—

pericūlōsus, full of danger, dangerous; 
glōriōsus, glorious; 
opulentus, wealthy.

4. The suffix -tus has the force of provided with; as,—

barbātus, bearded; 
stellātus, set with stars.

b) From Proper Names.

152. 1. Names of persons take the suffixes: -ānus, -iānus, -īnus; as,—

Catōniānus, belonging to Cato; 
Plautīnus, belonging to Plautus.

2. Names of nations take the suffixes -icus, -ius; as,—

Germanicus, German; 
Thrācīus, Thracian.

3. Names of places take the suffixes -ānus, -īnus, -ēnīs, -aeus, -ius; as,—

Rōmānus, Roman; 
Athēnēnīs, Athenian; 
Amerīnus, of Ameria; 
Smynrāeus, of Smyrna; 
Corinthius, Corinthian.

NOTE.— -ānus and -ēnīs, appended to names of countries, designate something stationed in the country or connected with it, but not indigenous; as,—

bellum Africānum, a war (of Romans with Romans) in Africa. 
bellum Hispānīense, a war carried on in Spain. 
legiōnes Gallicānae, (Roman) legions stationed in Gaul.

3. Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

153. Diminutives in -lus sometimes occur; as,—

parvulus, little; 
misellus (passer), poor little (sparrow); 
pauperculus, needy.

4. Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

154. These end in -ernus, -ternus, -tīnus, -tīnus; as,—

hodiernus, of to-day (hodiē); 
hesternus, of yesterday (herī); 
intestīnus, internal (intus); 
diūtīnus, long-lasting (diū).

C. VERBS.
1. Verbs derived from Verbs.

155. 1. INCEPTIVES OR INCHOATIVES. These end in -scō, and are formed from Present Stems. They denote the beginning of an action; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labāscō,</td>
<td>begin to totter</td>
<td>labō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horreścō,</td>
<td>grow rough</td>
<td>horreō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremēscō,</td>
<td>begin to tremble</td>
<td>tremō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obdormēscō,</td>
<td>fall asleep</td>
<td>dormēō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. FREQUENTATIVES OR INTENSIVES. These denote a repeated or energetic action. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in -tō or -sō. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in -ıtō (not -ıtō, as we should expect). Examples of Frequentatives are—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jactō,</td>
<td>toss about, brandish</td>
<td>jaciō, hurtō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursō,</td>
<td>run hither and thither</td>
<td>currō, runō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volitō,</td>
<td>flit about</td>
<td>volō, fly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   a. Some double Frequentatives occur; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cantitō,</td>
<td>sing over and over</td>
<td>cantō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursitō,</td>
<td>keep running about</td>
<td>cursō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventitō,</td>
<td>keep coming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b. agitō, set in motion, is formed from the Present Stem.

3. DESIDERATIVES. These denote a desire to do something. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in -uriō; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ēsuriō,</td>
<td>desire to eat, am hungry</td>
<td>edō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parturiō,</td>
<td>want to bring forth, am in labor</td>
<td>parīō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominatives).

156. Denominatives of the First Conjugation are mostly transitive; those of the Second exclusively intransitive. Those of the Third and Fourth Conjugations are partly transitive, partly intransitive. Examples are—

   a) From Nouns:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fraudō,</td>
<td>defraud</td>
<td>fraus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestō,</td>
<td>clothe</td>
<td>vestis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flōreo,</td>
<td>bloom</td>
<td>flōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   b) From Adjectives:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>liberō,</td>
<td>free</td>
<td>liber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saevō,</td>
<td>fierce</td>
<td>saevus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D. ADVERBS.

157. 1. Adverbs derived from verbs are formed from the Participial Stem by means of the suffix -im; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>certātim,</td>
<td>emulously</td>
<td>certō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursim,</td>
<td>in haste</td>
<td>currō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statim,</td>
<td>immediately</td>
<td>stō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Adverbs derived from nouns and adjectives are formed:—

   a) With the suffixes -tim (-sim), -ātim; as,—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gradātim,</td>
<td>step by step</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
paulātim, gradually;
virītim, man by man.
b) With the suffix -tus; as,—
   antiquitās, of old;
   rādīcitās, from the roots.
c) With the suffix -ter; as,—
   breviter, briefly.

II. COMPOUNDS.

158. 1. Compounds are formed by the union of simple words. The second member usually contains the essential meaning of the compound; the first member expresses some modification of this.

2. Vowel changes often occur in the process of composition. Thus:—
   
a. In the second member of compounds. (See § 7, 1.)
   
b. The final vowel of the stem of the first member of the compound often appears as ī where we should expect ō or ā; sometimes it is dropped altogether, and in case of consonant stems ī is often inserted; as,—
   
      signifier, standard-bearer;
      tubicen, trumpeter;
      magnanimus, high-minded;
      matricida, matricide.

159. EXAMPLES OF COMPOUNDS.

1. Nouns:—
   
a) Preposition + Noun; as,—
      dē-decus, disgrace;
      pro-avus, great-grandfather.
   
b) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—
      agri-cola, farmer;
      frātri-cida, fratricide.

2. Adjectives:—
   
a) Preposition + Adjective (or Noun); as,—
      per-magnus, very great;
      sub-obscurus, rather obscure;
      ā-mēns, frantic.
   
b) Adjective + Noun; as,—
      magn-animus, great-hearted;
      celeri-pēs, swift-footed.
   
c) Noun + Verb Stem; as,—
      parti-ceps, sharing;
      morti-fer, death-dealing.

3. Verbs:—

   The second member is always a verb. The first may be—
   
a) A Noun; as,—
      aedi-ficā, build.
   
b) An Adjective; as,—
      ampli-ficā, enlarge.
c) An Adverb; as,—
   *male-dīcō*, *rail at*.

d) Another Verb; as,—
   *cale-faciō*, *make warm*.

e) A Preposition; as,—
   *ab-jungō*, *detach*;
   *re-ferō*, *bring back*;
   *dis-cernō*, *distinguish*;
   *ex-spectō*, *await*.

NOTE.—Here belong the so-called INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS:

   *ambi-* (*amb*), *around*;
   *dis*- (*dir*-, *di*), *apart, asunder*;
   *por-* (*for*), *forward*;
   *red*- (*re*), *back*;
   *sēd*- (*sē*), *apart from*;
   *vē-* (*without*).

4. Adverbs;—

These are of various types; as,—

   *anteā*, *before*;
   *īīcō* (*in locō*), *on the spot*;
   *imprīnīs*, *especially*;
   *obviām*, *in the way*.

---

PART V.

---

SYNTAX.

---

160. Syntax treats of the use of words in sentences

CHAPTER I.—Sentences.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

161. Sentences may be classified as follows;—

1. DECLARATIVE, which state something; as,—
   
   *puer scribit*, *the boy is writing*.

2. INTERROGATIVE, which ask a question; as,—
   
   *quid puer scribit*, *what is the boy writing?*

3. EXCLAMATORY, which are in the form of an exclamation; as,—
   
   *quot librōs scribit*, *how many books he writes!*

4. IMPERATIVE, which express a command or an admonition; as,—
FORM OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

162. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

1. Word-Questions. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs, such as —quis, quæ, quâlis, quantus, quot, quotiens, quò, quâ, etc. Thus:—

   quis venit, *who comes?* quam diū manēbit, *how long will he stay?*

2. Sentence-Questions. These are introduced—

   a) By *nōnne* implying the answer 'yes'; as,—

      *nōnne* vidētis, *do you not see?*

   b) By *num* implying the answer 'no'; as,—

      *num* exspectās, *do you expect?* (i.e. *you don't expect, do you?*)

   c) by the enclitic -ne, appended to the emphatic word (which usually stands first), and simply asking for information; as,—

      vidēsne, *do you see?*

      A question introduced by -ne may receive a special implication from the context; as,—

      sēnistiōne, *did you not perceive?*

   d) Sometimes by no special word, particularly in expressions of surprise or indignation; as,—

      tū in jūdicum cōnspectum venīre audēs, *do you dare to come into the presence of the judges?*

3. Rhetorical Questions. These are questions merely in form, being employed to express an emphatic assertion; as, *quis dubitat, who doubts?* (= *no one doubts*).

4. Double Questions. Double Questions are introduced by the following particles:—

   utrum ... an;

   -ne ... an;

   —— ... an.

If the second member is negative, *annōn* (less often *necne*) is used. Examples:—

   utrum honestum est an turpe,  }
   honestumne est an turpe,  }
   honestum est an turpe,  }
   suntne dī annōn, *are there gods or not?*

   a. *An* was not originally confined to double questions, but introduced single questions, having the force of -ne, *nōnne*, or *num*. Traces of this use survive in classical Latin; as,—

      *Â rēbus gerendīs abstrahit senectūs. Quibus? An eīs quae juventūte geruntur et
      virtūbus? Old age (it is alleged) withdraws men from active pursuits. From what
      pursuits? Is it not merely from those which are carried on by the strength of
      youth?*

5. Answers.

   a. The answer *YES* is expressed by *ita, etiam, vērō, sānē*, or by repetition of the verb; as,—

      'vīsne locum mātēmus?' *sānē*. *Shall we change the place?* 'Certainly."

      'estīsne vōs lēgatī?' *sumus.* *Are you envoys?* 'Yes."

   b. The answer *NO* is expressed by *nōn, minimē, minimē vērō*, or by repeating the verb with
      a negative; as,—

      'jam ea praeteriit?' *nōn.* *Has it passed?* 'No."

      'estēn frāter intus?' *nōn est.* *Is your brother within?* 'No."

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.
163. The two essential parts of a sentence are the SUBJECT and PREDICATE. The SUBJECT is that concerning which something is said, asked, etc. The PREDICATE is that which is said, asked, etc., concerning the SUBJECT.

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

164. Sentences containing but one Subject and one Predicate are called SIMPLE SENTENCES, those containing more are called COMPOUND SENTENCES. Thus puer librōs legit, *the boy reads books*, is a Simple Sentence; but puer librōs legit et epistulās scribit, *the boy reads books and writes letters*, is a Compound Sentence. The different members of a Compound Sentence are called Clauses.

165. COÖRDINATE AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. Clauses which stand upon an equality are called COÖRDINATE; a Clause dependent on another is called SUBORDINATE. Thus in puer librōs legit et epistulās scribit the two clauses are COÖrdinate; but in puer librōs legit quōs pater scribit, *the boy reads the books which his father writes*, the second clause is Subordinate to the first.

CHAPTER II.—Syntax of Nouns.

SUBJECT.

166. The Subject of a Finite Verb (*i.e.* any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

1. The Subject may be—

   a) A Noun or Pronoun; as,—
   
   *puer scribit*, *the boy writes*;
   *hīc scribit*, *this man writes*.

   b) An Infinitive; as,—
   
   *deōrum est prō patriā morī*, *to die for one's county is a noble thing*.

   c) A Clause; as,—
   
   *opportūnē accidit quod vīdistī*, *it happened opportunely that you saw*.

2. A Personal Pronoun as Subject is usually implied in the Verb and is not separately expressed; as,—

   *scribō*, *I write*; *videt*, *he sees*.

   a. But for the purpose of emphasis or contrast the Pronoun is expressed; as,—
   
   *ego scribō et tū legis*, *I write, and you read*.

3. The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be easily supplied from the context, especially the auxiliary *sum*; as,—

   *rēctē ille (sc. facit)*, *he does rightly*; *consul profectus (sc. est)*, *the consul set out*.

PREDICATE NOUNS.

167. A Predicate NOUN is one connected with the Subject by some form of the verb SUM or a similar verb.

168. A Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Case;[47] as,—

   *Cicerō ōrātor fuit*, *Cicero was an orator*;
   *Numa créātus est rēx*, *Numa was elected king*.

   1. when possible, the Predicate Noun usually agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

   *philosophia est vítae magistra*, *philosophy is the guide of life.*
2. Besides sum, the verbs most frequently accompanied by a Predicate Noun are—

   a) fiō, ēvādō, existō; maneō; videor; as,—
      Croesus nōn semper mānsit rēx, Croesus did not always remain king.
   b) Passive verbs of making, calling, regarding, etc.; as, crecor, appellor, habeo; as,—
      Rōmulus rēx appellatus est, Romulus was called king;
      habitus est deus, he was regarded as a god.

APPOSITIVES.

169. 1. An Appositive is a Noun explaining or defining another Noun denoting the same person or thing; as,—

      Cicerō cōnsul, Cicero, the Consul;
      urbs Rōma, the city Rome.

2. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in Case; as,—

      opera Cicerōnis õrātōris, the works of Cicero, the orator;
      apud Hērodotum, patrem historiae, in the works of Herodotus, the father of history.

3. When possible, the Appositive agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

      assentātīō adjūtrīx vitiōrum, flattery, the promoter of evils.

4. A Locative may take in Apposition the Ablative of urbs or oppidum, with or without a preposition; as,—

      Corinthī, Achāiae urbe, or in Achāiae urbe, at Corinth, a city of Greece.

5. PARTITIVE APPOSITION. A Noun denoting a whole is frequently followed by an Appositive denoting a part; as,—

      militēs, fortissimus quisque, hostibus restitērunt, the soldiers, all the bravest of them, resisted the enemy.

THE CASES.

THE NOMINATIVE.

170. The Nominative is confined to its use as Subject, Appositive, or Predicate Noun, as already explained. See §§ 166-169.

THE VOCATIVE.

171. The Vocative is the Case of direct address; as,—

      crēdite mihi, jūdicēs, believe me, judges.

1. By a species of attraction, the Nominative is occasionally used for the Vocative, especially in poetry and formal prose; as, audi tō, populus Albānus, hear ye, Alban people!

2. Similarly the Appositive of a Vocative may, in poetry, stand in the Nominative; as, nāte, mea magna potentia sōlus, O son, alone the source of my great power.
THE ACCUSATIVE.

172. The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object.

173. The Direct Object may express either of the two following relations:—

A. The PERSON OR THING AFFECTED by the action; as,—

  cōnsulem interfēcit, he slew the consul;
  legō librum, I read the book.

B. The RESULT PRODUCED by the action; as,—

  librum scripsī, I wrote a book (i.e. produced one);
  templum struit, he constructs a temple.

174. Verbs that admit a Direct Object of either of these two types are TRANSITIVE VERBS.

  a. Verbs that regularly take a Direct Object are sometimes used without it. They are then
     said to be employed absolutely; as,—
     rūmor est meum gnātum amāre, it is rumored that my son is in love.

Accusative of the Person or Thing Affected.

175. 1. This is the most frequent use of the Accusative; as in—

     parentēs amāmus, we love our parents;
     mare aspicīt, he gazes at the sea.

  2. The following classes of Verbs taking an Accusative of this kind are worthy of note:—

     a) Many Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with a Preposition, become Transitive. Thus:

        1) Compounds of circum, praeter, trāns; as,—
           hostēs circumstāre, to surround the enemy;
           urbeṃ praetrīre, to pass by the city;
           mūrōs trānscendere, to climb over the walls.
        2) Less frequently, compounds of ad, per, in, sub; as,—
           adīre urbem, to visit the city;
           peragrāre Itāliam, to travel through Italy;
           intīre magistrātum, to take office;
           subīre perīculum, to undergo danger.

     b) Many Verbs expressing emotions, regularly Intransitive, have also a Transitive use; as,—

        quercor fātum, I lament my fate;
        dolēō ejus mortem, I grieve at his death;
        ridēō tuam stultitiam, I laugh at your folly.

        So also lūgeō, maereō, mourn; gemō, bemoan; horreō, shudder, and others.

     c) The impersonals dect, it becomes; dēdect, it is unbecoming; juvat, it pleases, take the
        Accusative of the Person Affected; as,—

        mē dect haec dicere, it becomes me to say this.

     d) In poetry many Passive Verbs, in imitation of Greek usage, are employed as Middles (§
        256, 1; 2), and take the Accusative as Object; as,—

        galeam induitur, he puts on his helmet;
        cīnctus tempora hederā, having bound his temples with ivy;
        nōdō sinus collēcta, having gathered her dress in a knot.

Accusative of the Result Produced.
176. 1. The ordinary type of this Accusative is seen in such expressions as—

\[\text{librüm scribō, I write a book;}\]
\[\text{domum aedicō, I build a house.}\]

2. Many Verbs usually Intransitive take a Neuter Pronoun, or Adjective, as an Accusative of Result. Thus:—

\(a\) A Neuter Pronoun; as,—
\[\text{haec gemēbat, he made these moans;}\]
\[\text{idem glōriārī, to make the same boast;}\]
\[\text{cadem peccat, he makes the same mistakes.}\]

\(b\) A Neuter Adjective,—particularly Adjectives of number or amount,—multum, multa,
\[\text{pauca, etc.; also nihil; as,—}\]
\[\text{multa egeō, I have many needs;}\]
\[\text{pauca studet, he has few interests;}\]
\[\text{multum valet, he has great strength;}\]
\[\text{nihil peccat, he makes no mistake.}\]

**NOTE.**—In poetry other Adjectives are freely used in this construction; as—

\[\text{minitantem vāna, making vain threats;}\]
\[\text{acerbā tuēns, giving a fierce look;}\]
\[\text{dulce loquentem, sweetly talking.}\]

3. The adverbial use of several Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives grows out of this Accusative; as,—

\[\text{multum sunt in vēnātīōne, they are much engaged in hunting.}\]

\(a\) So also plūrimum, very greatly; plērumque, generally; aliquid, somewhat; quid, why?
\[\text{nihil, not at all; etc.}\]

4. Sometimes an Intransitive Verb takes an Accusative of Result which is of kindred etymology with
the Verb. This is called a Cognate ACCUSATIVE, and is usually modified by an Adjective; as,—

\[\text{sempiternam servitūtem serviat, let him serve an everlasting slavery;}\]
\[\text{vītam dūram vixī, I have lived a hard life.}\]

\(a\) Sometimes the Cognate Accusative is not of kindred etymology, but merely of kindred
meaning; as,—

\[\text{stadium currit, he runs a race;}\]
\[\text{Olympia vincit, he wins an Olympic victory.}\]

5. The Accusative of Result occurs also after Verbs of tasting and smelling; as,—

\[\text{piscis mare sapit, the fish tastes of the sea;}\]
\[\text{ōratiōnēs antiquitātem redolent, the speeches smack of the past.}\]

**Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.**

177. Many Verbs of Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of
the Person or Thing Affected, the other a Predicate Accusative; as,—

\[\text{mē hērēdēm fēcit, he made me heir.}\]

Here mē is Direct Object, hērēdēm Predicate Accusative. So also—

\[\text{eum jūdicem cēpēre, they took him as judge;}\]
\[\text{urbem Rōmam vocāvit, he called the city Rome;}\]
\[\text{sē virum praestitit, he showed himself a man.}\]

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as,—

\[\text{hominēs caecōs reddit cupiditās, covetousness renders men blind;}\]
Apollo Socratem sapientissimum judicavit, Apollo adjudged Socrates the wisest man.

a. Some Verbs, as reddō, usually admit only an Adjective as the Predicate Accusative.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative (§ 168, 2, b): as,—

urbs Roma vocāta est, the city was called Rome.

a. Not all Verbs admit the Passive construction; reddō and efficiō, for example, never take it.

Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

178. 1. Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the Person Affected, the other of the Result Produced. Thus:—

a) Verbs of requesting and demanding; as,—

ōtium divōs rogat, he asks the gods for rest;
me duās ōratiōnēs postulās, you demand two speeches of me.

So also ērō, poscō, reposcō, exposcō, flāgitō, though some of these prefer the Ablative with ab to the Accusative of the Person; as,—

opem ā tē poscō, I demand aid of you.

b) Verbs of teaching (doceō and its compounds); as,—

tē litterās doceō, I teach you your letters.

c) Verbs of inquiring; as,—

tē haec rogō, I ask you this;
tē sententiam rogō, I ask you your opinion.

d) Several Special Verbs; viz. moneō, admonēō, commoneō, cōgō, accūsō, arguō, and a few others. These admit only a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as Accusative of the Thing; as,—

hóc tē moneō, I give you this advice;
mē id accūsās, you bring this accusation against me;
id cōgit nōs nātūra, nature compels us (to) this.

e) One Verb of concealing, cēlō; as,—

nōn tē cēlāvī sermōnem, I have not concealed the conversation from you.

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as,—

omnēs artēs édoctus est, he was taught all accomplishments;
rogātus sum sententiam, I was asked my opinion;
multa ādmonēmur, we are given many admonitions.

a. Only a few Verbs admit the Passive construction.

Two Accusatives with Compounds.

179. 1. Transitive compounds of trāns may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition, as,—

militēs flūmen trānsportat, he leads his soldiers across the river.

2. With other compounds this construction is rare.

3. In the Passive the Accusative dependent upon the preposition is retained; as,—

militēs flūmen trādūcēbantur, the soldiers were led across the river.

Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative.
180. 1. The Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative denotes the part to which an action or quality refers; as,—

*tremit artūs*, literally, *he trembles as to his limbs*, i.e. his limbs tremble;
*nūda genū*, lit. *bare as to the knee*, i.e. with knee bare;
*manūs revinctus*, lit. *tied as to the hands*, i.e. with hands tied.

2. Note that this construction—

   a) Is borrowed from the Greek.
   b) Is chiefly confined to poetry.
   c) Usually refers to a part of the body.
   d) Is used with Adjectives as well as Verbs.

**Accusative of Time and Space.**

181. 1. *Duration of Time* and *Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative; as,—

*quadrāgintā annōs vīxīt*, *he lived forty years*;
*hīc locus passūs sescentōs aberat*, *this place was six hundred paces away*;
*arborēs quīnquāgintā pedēs altae*, *trees fifty feet high*;
*abhinc septem annōs*, *seven years ago*.

2. Emphasis is sometimes added by using the Preposition *per*; as,

*per biennium labōrāvī*, *I toiled throughout two years*.

**Accusative of Limit of Motion.**

182. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used—

   a) With names of *Towns*, *Small Islands*, and *Peninsulas*; as,—
   
   *Rōmam vēnī*, *I came to Rome*;
   *Athēnās proficiscitur*, *he sets out for Athens*;
   *Dēlum pervēnī*, *I arrived at Delos*.

   b) With *domum*, *domōs*, *rūs*; as,—
   
   *domum revertitur*, *he returns home*;
   *rūs ibō*, *I shall go to the country*.

**NOTE.**—When *domus* means *house* (i.e. building), it takes a preposition; as,—

*in domum veterem remigrāre*, *to move back to an old house*.

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition to denote Limit of Motion; as,—

*ad Italian vēnit*, *he came to Italy*.

   a. The Preposition is also customary with the Accusatives *urbem* or *oppidum* when they stand in apposition with the name of a town; as,—
   
   *Thalam, in oppidum magnum*, *to Thala, a large town*;
   *Genavam ad oppidum*, *to the town Geneva*.

   b. The name of a town denoting limit of motion may be combined with the name of a country or other word dependent upon a preposition; as,—
   
   *Thūriōs in Italian pervectus*, *carried to Thurii in Italy*;
   *cum Acēn ad exercitum vēnisset*, *when he had come to the army at Ace*.

3. To denote toward, *to the vicinity of*, in *the vicinity of*, *ad* is used; as,—

*ad Tarentum vēnī*, *I came to the vicinity of Tarentum*;
*ad Cannās pugna facta est*, *a battle was fought near Cannae*.
4. In poetry the Accusative of any noun denoting a place may be used without a preposition to express the limit of motion; as,—

Italiam vēnit, he came to Italy.

5. The *goal* notion seems to represent the original function of the Accusative Case. Traces of this primitive force are recognizable in the phrase infitiās ire, to deny (lit. to go to a denial), and a few other similar expressions.

**Accusative in Exclamations.**

183. The Accusative, generally modified by an Adjective, is used in Exclamations; as,—

mē miserum, ah, wretched me!
Ó fallācem spēm, oh, deceptive hope!

**Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive.**

184. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative; as,—

video hominem abīre, I see that the man is going away.

**Other Uses of the Accusative.**

185. Here belong—

1. Some Accusatives which were originally Appositives; viz.—

id ġenus, of that kind; as, hominēs id ġenus, men of that kind (originally hominēs, id ġenus hominum, men, that kind of men);
virūlē secus, muliēbre secus, of the male sex, of the female sex;
meām vicem, tuam vicem, etc., for my part, etc.;
bonam partem, magnam partem, in large part;
maximam partem, for the most part.

2. Some phrases of doubtful origin; as,—

id temporis, at that time; quod si, but if;
id aetātis, at that time; cētera, in other respects.

THE DATIVE.

186. The Dative case, in general, expresses relations which are designated in English by the prepositions to and for.

**Dative of Indirect Object.**

187. The commonest use of the Dative is to denote the person to whom something is given, said, or done. Thus:—

1. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; as,—

hanc pecūniam mihi dat, he gives me this money;
haec nōbis dīxit, he said this to us.

a. Some verbs which take this construction (particularly dōnō and circumdō) admit also the Accusative of the person along with the Ablative of the thing. Thus:—

Either Themistoclē mūnera dōnāvit, he presented gifts to Themistocles, or
Themistoclem mūneribus dōnāvit, he presented Themistocles with gifts;
urbī mūrōs circumdat, he builds walls around the city, or
urbem mūrīs circumdat, he surrounds the city with walls

II. With many intransitive verbs; as,—

nūllī labōrī cēdit, he yields to no labor.

a. Here belong many verbs signifying favor,[48] help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, believe, persuade, and the like; as,—

Caesar populāribus favor, Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party;
amīcis cōnfidō, I trust (to) my friends;
Orgetorix Helvētiīs persuāsit, Orgetorix persuaded (made it acceptable to) the Helvetians;
bonīs nocet quī malīs parcit, he injures (does harm to) the good, who spares the bad.

NOTE.—It is to be borne in mind that these verbs do not take the Dative by virtue of their apparent English equivalence, but simply because they are intransitive, and adapted to an indirect object. Some verbs of the same apparent English equivalence are transitive and govern the Accusative; as, juvō, laedo, délectō. Thus: audentēs deus juvāt, God helps the bold; nēminem laesit he injured no one.

b. Verbs of this class are used in the passive only impersonally; as,—
tībī parcitur, you are spared;
mīhi persuādētur, I am being persuaded;
eī invidētur, he is envied.

c. Some of the foregoing verbs admit also a Direct Object in connection with the Dative; as,

mīhi mortem minītātur, he threatens me with death (threatens death to me).

III. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: ad, ante, circum, com,[49] in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super.

These verbs fall into two main classes,—

1. Many simple verbs which cannot take a Dative of the indirect object become capable of doing so when compounded with a preposition; as,—

afflicēs succurrīt, he helps the afflicted;
exercitui praefuit, he was in command of the army;
intersum cōnsilīōs, I share in the deliberations.

2. Many transitive verbs which take only a direct object become capable, when compounded, of taking a dative also as indirect object; as,—

pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit, he puts honor before money;
inīcere spem amīcis, to inspire hope in one's friends;
mūnītōni Labiēnum praefēcit, he put Labienus in charge of the fortifications.

Dative of Reference.

188. 1. The Dative of Reference denotes the person to whom a statement refers, of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest; as,—

mīhi ante oculōs versāris, you hover before my eyes (lit. hover before the eyes to me);
ilī sevēritās amōrem nōn dēminuit, in his case severity did not diminish love (lit. to him severity did not diminish);
interclūdere inimīcis commeātum, to cut off the supplies of the enemy.

a. Note the phrase alicui interdicere aquā et īgni, to interdict one from fire and water.
NOTE.—The Dative of Reference, unlike the Dative of Indirect Object, does not modify the verb, but rather the sentence as a whole. It is often used where, according to the English idiom, we should expect a Genitive; so in the first and third of the above examples.

2. Special varieties of the Dative of Reference are—

a) **Dative of the Local Standpoint.** This is regularly a participle; as,—

   oppidum primum Thessalææ venientibus ab Æpirō, the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus (lit. to those coming from Epirus).

b) **Ethical Dative.** This name is given to those Dative constructions of the personal pronouns in which the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is of the very slightest sort; as,—

   tú mihi istus audaciām dēfendis? tell me, do you defend that man's audacity?
   quid mihi Celsus agit? what is my Celsus doing?

c) **Dative of Person Judging;** as,—

   erit ille mihi semper deus, he will always be a god to me (i.e. in my opinion);
   quae ista servitūs tam clāro homini, how can that be slavery to so illustrious a man (i.e. to his mind)!

d) **Dative of Separation.** Some verbs of taking away, especially compounds of ab, dē, ex, ad, govern a Dative of the person, less often of the thing; as,—

   honōrem dētrāxerunt homini, they took away the honor from the man;
   Caesar rēgī tetrarchiam ēripuit, Caesar took the tetarchy away from the king;
   silicē scintillam excūdit, he struck a spark from the flint.

**Dative of Agency.**

189. The Dative is used to denote agency—

1. Regularly with the Gerundive; as,—

   haec nōbis agenda sunt, these things must be done by us;
   mihi eundum est, I must go (lit. it must be gone by me).

   a. To avoid ambiguity, ā with the Ablative is sometimes used with the Gerundive; as,—

   hostibus ā nōbis parcum ē est, the enemy must be spared by us.

2. Much less frequently with the compound tenses of the passive voice and the perfect passive participle; as,—

   disputātiō quae mihi nūper habita ē est, the discussion which was recently conducted by me.

3. Rarely with the uncompounded tenses of the passive; as,—

   honesta bonis viris quaeruntur, noble ends are sought by good men.

**Dative of Possession.**

190. The Dative of Possession occurs with the verb esse in such expressions as:—

   mihi est liber, I have a book;
   mihi nōmen est Mārcus, I have the name Marcus.

1. But with nōmen est the name is more commonly attracted into the Dative; as, mihi Mārcō nōmen est.

**Dative of Purpose or Tendency.**

191. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency designates the end toward which an action is directed or the direction in which it tends. It is used—
1. Unaccompanied by another Dative; as,—

castrîs locum dêligere, to choose a place for a camp;
legiôns praesidiô relinquare, to leave the legions as a guard (lit. for a guard);
receptuî canere, to sound the signal for a retreat.

2. Much more frequently in connection with another Dative of the person;—

a) Especially with some form of esse; as,—

fortûnae tuae mihi cûrae sunt, your fortunes are a care to me (lit. for a care);
quibus sunt odio, to whom they are an object of hatred;
cui bonô? to whom is it of advantage?

b) With other verbs; as,—

hôs tibi mûnerî mîsit, he has sent these to you for a present;
Pausaniâs Atticîs vênit auxiliô, Pausanias came to the aid of the Athenians (lit. to the Athenians for aid).

3. In connection with the Gerundive; as,—

decemvirî légibus scribundîs, decemvirs for codifying the laws;
mê gerendô bellô ducem creâvère, me they have made leader for carrying on the war.

NOTE.—This construction with the gerundive is not common till Livy.

Dative with Adjectives.

192. The use of the Dative with Adjectives corresponds very closely to its use with verbs. Thus;—

1. Corresponding to the Dative of Indirect Object it occurs with adjectives signifying: friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to, etc.; as,—

mihi inimicus, hostile to me;
sunt proximî Germânîs, they are next to the Germans;
noxiae poena pär estô, let the penalty be equal to the damage.

a. For propior and proximus with the Accusative, see § 141, 3.

2. Corresponding to the Dative of Purpose, the Dative occurs with adjectives signifying: suitable, adapted, fit; as,—

castrîs idôneus locus, a place fit for a camp;
apta diês sacrificiô, a day suitable for a sacrifice.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this last class often take the Accusative with ad.

Dative of Direction.

193. In the poets the Dative is occasionally used to denote the direction of motion; as,—

it clâmor caelô, the shout goes heavenward;
cinerês rîvô fluenti jace, cast the ashes toward a flowing stream.

1. By an extension of this construction the poets sometimes use the Dative to denote the limit of motion; as,—

dum Latiô deôs ìnferret, till he should bring his gods to Latium.

THE GENITIVE.
194. The Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

195. With Nouns the Genitive is the case which defines the meaning of the limited noun more closely. This relation is generally indicated in English by the preposition of. There are the following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns:—

Genitive of Origin, Objective Genitive,
Genitive of Material, Genitive of the Whole,
Genitive of Possession, Appositional Genitive,
Subjective Genitive, Genitive of Quality.

196. Genitive of Origin; as,—

Mārcē filius, the son of Marcus.

197. Genitive of Material; as,—

talentum aurī, a talent of gold;
acervus frūmentī, a pile of grain.

198. Genitive of Possession or Ownership; as,—

domus Cicerōnis, Cicero's house.

1. Here belongs the Genitive with causā and grātiā. The Genitive always precedes; as,—

hominum causā, for the sake of men;
meōrum amīcōrum grātiā, for the sake of my friends.

2. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with esse and fierī; as,—

domus est régis, the house is the king's;
stultī est in errōre manēre, it is (the part) of a fool to remain in error;
dē bellō jūdiciōnem imperātōris est, nōn mīlitum, the decision concerning war belongs to the general, not to the soldiers.

   a. For the difference in force between the Possessive Genitive and the Dative of Possession, see § 359, 1.

199. Subjective Genitive. This denotes the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling; as,—

dicta Platōnis, the utterances of Plato;
timōrēs ībīrōrum, the fears of the children.

200. Objective Genitive. This denotes the object of an action or feeling; as,—

metus deōrum, the fear of the gods;
amor libertātīs, love of liberty;
cōnsuētūdōn bonōrum hominum, intercourse with good men.

1. This relation is often expressed by means of prepositions; as,—

amor ergā parentēs, love toward one's parents.

201. Genitive of the Whole. This designates the whole of which a part is taken. It is used—

1. With Nouns, Pronouns, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Ordinal Numerals; as,—

magna pars hominum, a great part of mankind;
duo mīlia peditum, two thousand foot-soldiers;
quis mortālīum, who of mortals?
major frātrum, the elder of the brothers;
gens maxima Germanorum, the largest tribe of the Germans;
primum omnium, the first of all.

a. Yet instead of the Genitive of the Whole we often find ex or de with the Ablative, regularly so with Cardinal numbers and quidam; as,—
fidélissimus de servis, the most trusty of the slaves;
quidam ex amicis, certain of his friends;
ūnus ex militibus, one of the soldiers.

b. In English we often use of where there is no relation of whole to part. In such cases the Latin is more exact, and does not use the Genitive; as,—
quot vos estis, how many of you are there?
trecenī conjūrāvimus, three hundred of us have conspired (i.e. we, three hundred in number).

2. The Genitive of the Whole is used also with the Nominative or Accusative Singular Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; also with the Adverbs parum, satis, and partim when used substantively; as,—

quid cōnsili, what purpose?
tantum cibum, so much food;
plūs auctoritātis, more authority;
minus labōris, less labor;
satis pecūniae, enough money;
parum industriae, too little industry.

a. An Adjective of the second declension used substantively may be employed as a Genitive of the Whole; as, nihil boni, nothing good.

b. But Adjectives of the third declension agree directly with the noun they limit; as, nihil dulcius, nothing sweeter.

3. Occasionally we find the Genitive of the Whole dependent upon Adverbs of place; as,—

ubi terrārum? ubi gentium? where in the world?

a. By an extension of this usage the Genitive sometimes occurs in dependence upon prīdiē and postrīdiē, but only in the phrases prīdiē ejus diēi, on the day before that; postrīdiē ejus diēi, on the day after that.

202. Appositional Genitive. The Genitive sometimes has the force of an appositive; as,—

nōmen rēgis, the name of king;
poea mortis, the penalty of death;
ars scribendi, the art of writing.

203. Genitive of Quality. The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality. This construction presents several varieties. Thus it is used—

1. To denote some internal or permanent characteristic of a person or thing; as,—

vir magnae virtūtis, a man of great virtue;
ratōnēs ejus modi, considerations of that sort.

a. Only a limited number of Adjectives occur in this construction, chiefly magnus, maximus, summus, tantus, along with ejus.

2. To denote measure (breadth, length, etc.); as,—

fossa quīndecim pedum, a trench fifteen feet wide (or deep);
exsilium decem annōrum, an exile of ten years.

3. Equivalent to the Genitive of Quality (though probably of different origin) are the Genitives tantī, quantī, parvī, magnī, minōris, plūris, minimī, plūrimī, maximī. These are used predicatively to denote indefinite value; as,—

nūlla studia tantī sunt, no studies are of so much value;
magnī opera ejus existimāta est, his assistance was highly esteemed.

4. By an extension of the notion of value, quantī, tantī, plūris, and minōris are also used with verbs of buying and selling, to denote indefinite price; as,—

quantī aedes ēmisī, at how high a price did you purchase the house?

5. Any of the above varieties of the Genitive of Quality may be used predicatively; as,—

tantae mōlis erat Rōmānā condere gentem, of so great difficulty was it to found the Roman race.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

204. The Genitive is used with many Adjectives to limit the extent of their application. Thus:—

1. With adjectives signifying desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fullness, and their opposites; as,—

studīōsus discendi, desirous of learning;
peritus belli, skilled in war;
insuētus labōris, unused to toil;
immemor mandātī tui, unmindful of your commission;
plēna periculōrum est vīta, life is full of dangers.

a. Some participles used adjectively also take the Genitive; as,—

diligēns vēritātis, fond of truth;
amāns patriae, devoted to one's country.

2. Sometimes with proprius and commūnis; as,—

virtū propria est fortitūdō, bravery is characteristic of a man.
memoria est commūnis omnium artium, memory is common to all professions.

a. proprius and commūnis are also construed with the Dative.

3. With similis the Genitive is the commoner construction in Cicero, when the reference is to living objects; as,—

filius patris simillimus est, the son is exactly like his father;
meī similis, like me; vestrī similis, like you.

When the reference is to things, both Genitive and Dative occur; as,—

mors somnō (or somnī) similis est, death is like sleep.

4. In the poets and later prose writers the use of the Genitive with Adjectives is extended far beyond earlier limits; as, atrōx animī, fierce of temper; incertus cōnsilī, undecided in purpose.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

205. The Genitive is used with the following classes of Verbs:—

Memini, Reminiō, Obliviō.

206. 1. When referring to persons—

a. meminī always takes the Genitive of personal or reflexive pronouns; as,—

meī meminerīs, remember me!
nostrī meminīt, he remembers us.

With other words denoting persons meminī takes the Accusative, rarely the Genitive; as,—

Sullam meminī, I recall Sulla;
vivōrum memini, I remember the living.

b. oblīvīscor regularly takes the Genitive; as,—

Epicūrī nōn licet oblīvīscī, we mustn't forget Epicurus.

2. When referring to things, meminī, reminīscor, oblīvīscor take sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative, without difference of meaning; as,—

animus praeteritōrum meminīt, the mind remembers the past;
meministīne nōmina, do you remember the names?
remīnīscere veteris incommōdi, remember the former disaster;
remīnīscēns acerbītātem, remembering the bitterness.

a. But neuter pronouns, and adjectives used substantively, regularly stand in the Accusative; as,—

haec meminī, I remember this;
multa reminīscor, I remember many things.

3. The phrase mihi (tibi, etc.) in mentem venīt, following the analogy of meminī, takes the Genitive; as,—

mihi patriae veniēbat in mentem, I remembered my country.

*Admoneō, Commoneō, Commonefaciō.*

207. These verbs, in addition to an Accusative of the person, occasionally take a Genitive of the thing; as,—

tē veteris amīcitiae commonefaciō, I remind you of our old friendship.

a. But more frequently (in Cicero almost invariably) these verbs take dē with the Ablative; as,—

mē admonēs dē sorōre, you remind me of your sister.

b. A neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively regularly stands in the Accusative (§ 178, 1, d); as,—

tē hōc admoneō, I give you this warning.

**Verbs of Judicial Action.**

208. 1. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting take the Genitive of the charge; as,—

mē fūrī accūsat, he accuses me of theft;
Verrem avārītiae coarguit, he convicts Verres of avarice;
impīctātis absolvētus est, he was acquitted of blasphemy.

2. Verbs of Condemning take—

a. The Genitive of the charge; as,—

pecūniae publicae condemnātus, condemned (on the charge) of embezzlement (lit. public money);
capitis damnātus, condemned on a capital charge (lit. on a charge involving his head).

b. The Ablative of the penalty; as,—

capite damnātus est, he was condemned to death;
mīlle nummīs damnātus est, he was condemned (to pay) a thousand sesterces (lit. by a thousand sesterces, Abl. of Means).

3. Note the phrases:—

vōī damnātus, vōī reus, having attained one's prayer (lit. condemned on the score of one's vow);
dē vi, (accused, convicted, etc.) of assault;
inter sicariōs, (accused, convicted, etc.) of murder.

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

209. 1. The Impersonals pudet, paenitet, miseret, taedet, piget take the Accusative of the person affected, along with the Genitive of the person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed; as,—

pudet mē tui, I am ashamed of you (lit. it shames me of you);
paenitet mē hūjus factī, I repent of this act;
cum taedet vītæ, he is weary of life;
pauperum tē miseret, you pity the poor.

a. Instead of the Genitive of the thing we often find an Infinitive or Neuter Pronoun used as subject of the verb. Thus;—
mē paenitet hōc fēcisse, I repent of having done this;
mē hōc pudet, I am ashamed of this.

2. Misereor and miserēscō also govern the Genitive; as,—
miserēminī sociōrum, pity the allies.

Interest, Rēfert.

210. With interest, it concerns, three points enter into consideration; viz.—

a) the person concerned;
b) the thing about which he is concerned;
c) the extent of his concern.

211. 1. The person concerned is regularly denoted by the Genitive; as,—

patris interest, it concerns the father.

a. But instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, meī, tui, nostrī, vestrī, the Latin uses the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive, viz.: meā, tuā, etc.; as,—

meā interest, it concerns me.

2. The thing about which a person is concerned is denoted—

a) by a Neuter Pronoun as subject; as,—
hōc reī publicae interest, this concerns the state.
b) by an Infinitive; as,—
omnium interest valēre, it concerns all to keep well.
c) by an Indirect Question; as,—
meā interest quandō veniās, I am concerned as to when you are coming.

3. The degree of concern is denoted—

a) by the Genitive (cf. § 203, 3): magnī, parvī, etc.; as,—
meā magnī interest, it concerns me greatly.
b) by the Adverbs, magnopere, magis, maximē, etc.; as,—
civium minimē interest, it concerns the citizens very little.
c) by the Neuters, multum, plūs, minus, etc.; as,—
multum vestrā interest, it concerns you much.

4. Rēfert follows interest in its construction, except that it rarely takes the Genitive of the person. Thus:—

meā rēfert, it concerns me;
but rarely illīus rēfert, it concerns him.
Genitive with Other Verbs.

212. 1. Verbs of Plenty and Want sometimes govern the Genitive; as,—

pecūniae indigēs, you need money.

a. These verbs more commonly take the Ablative (§ 214, 1); indigēō is the only verb which has a preference for the Genitive.

2. Potior, though usually followed by the Ablative, sometimes takes the Genitive, almost always so in Sallust; and regularly in the phrase potiōr rerum, to get control of affairs.

3. In poetry some verbs take the Genitive in imitation of the Greek; as,—

dēsine querellārum, cease your complaints;
operum solūti, freed from their tasks.

THE ABLATIVE.

213. The Latin Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; viz.—

The Ablative or from-case.
The Instrumental or with-case.
The Locative or where-case.

The uses of the Latin Ablative accordingly fall into Genuine Ablative uses, Instrumental uses, and Locative uses.

GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

Ablative of Separation.

214. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

1. The following words regularly take the Ablative without a preposition:—

a) The Verbs of freeing: liberō, solvō, levō;
b) The Verbs of depriving: privō, spoliō, exuō, fraudō, nūdō;
c) The Verbs of lacking: egeō, careō, vacō;
d) The corresponding Adjectives, liber, inānis, vacuus, nūdus,

and some others of similar meaning.

Thus:—
cūrō liberātus, freed from cares;
Caesar hostēs armīs exuit, Caesar stripped the enemy of their arms;
caret sēnsū commūnī, he lacks common sense;
auxiliō eget, he needs help;
bonōrum vīta vacua est metū, the life of the good is free from fear.

NOTE 1.—Yet Adjectives and liberō may take the preposition ab,—regularly so with the Ablative of persons; as,—

urbem ā tyranno liberārunt, they freed the city from the tyrant.

NOTE 2.—Indigēō usually takes the Genitive. See § 212, 1, a.

2. Of Verbs signifying to keep from, to remove, to withdraw, some take the preposition, others omit it. The same Verb often admits both constructions. Examples:—

abstinēre cībō, to abstain from food;
hostēs finibus prohibuērunt, they kept the enemy from their borders;
praedōnēs ab īnsula prohibuit, he kept the pirates from the island.

3. Other Verbs of separation usually take the Ablative with a Preposition, particularly compounds of dis- and sē-; as,—
dissentū ā tē, I dissent from you;
sēcernantur ā nōbīs, let them be separated from us.

4. The Preposition is freely omitted in poetry.

Ablative of Source.

215. The Ablative of Source is used with the participles nātus and ortus (in poetry also with ēditus, satus, and some others), to designate parentage or station; as,—

Jove nātus, son of Jupiter;
summō locō nātus, high-born (lit. born from a very high place);
nōbīlī genere ortus, born of a noble family.

1. Pronouns regularly (nouns rarely) take ex; as,

ex mē nātus, sprung from me.

2. To denote remoter descent, ortus ab, or oriundus (with or without ab), is used; as,—

ab Ulixe oriundus, descended from Ulysses.

Ablative of Agent.

216. The Ablative accompanied by ā (ab) is used with passive verbs to denote the personal agent; as,—

ā Caesare accusātus est, he was arraigned by Caesar.

1. Collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified, may be construed as the personal agent. Thus:—

hostēs ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, the enemy were deserted by Fortune;
ā multīfūdine hostium mōntēs tenēbantur, the mountains were held by a multitude of the enemy.

2. Names of animals sometimes admit the same construction. Thus:—

ā canibus laniātus est, he was torn to pieces by dogs.

Ablative of Comparison.

217. 1. The Ablative is often used with Comparatives in the sense of than; as,—
melle dulcior, sweeter than honey;
patria mihi vītā cārior est, my country is dearer to me than life.

2. This construction, as a rule, occurs only as a substitute for quam (than) with the Nominative or Accusative. In other cases quam must be used; as,—
tūf studīōsior sum quam illīus, I am fonder of you than of him.
—Studiōsior illō would have meant, I am fonder of you than he is.

Plūs, minus, amplius, longius are often employed as the equivalents of plūs quam, minus quam, etc. Thus:—

amplius vīgīntī urbēs incenduntur, more than twenty cities are fired;
minus quīnquē milīa prōcessit, he advanced less than five miles.
3. Note the use of opīniōne with Comparatives; as,—

opīniōne celerius venit, he comes more quickly than expected (lit. than opinion).

INSTRUMENTAL USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

Ablative of Means.

218. The Ablative is used to denote means or instrument; as,—

Alexander sagittā vulnerātus est, Alexander was wounded by an arrow.

There are the following special varieties of this Ablative:—

1. Útor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds take the Ablative; as,—

divitiēs ūtitur, he uses his wealth (lit. he benefits himself by his wealth);

vītā fruētur, he enjoys life (lit. he enjoys himself by life);

mūnere fungōr, I perform my duty (lit. I busy myself with duty);

carne vescuntur, they eat flesh (lit. feed themselves by means of);

castrīs poffūs est, he got possession of the camp (lit. made himself powerful by the camp).

a.. Potior sometimes governs the Genitive. See § 212, 2.

2. With opus est (rarely ľūsus est), there is need; as,—

duce nōbis opus est, we need a leader.

a. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective often stands as subject with opus as predicate. Thus:—

hōc mihi opus est, this is necessary for me.

b. An ordinary substantive rarely stands as subject. Thus dux nōbis opus est is a rare form of expression.

c. Note the occasional use of a perfect passive participle with opus est; as,—

opus est properātō, there is need of haste.

3. With nītor, innīxus, and frētus; as,—

nītitur hastā, he rests on a spear (lit. supports himself by a spear);

frētus virtūte, relying on virtue (lit. supported by virtue).

4. With continērī, cōnsistere, cōnstāre, consist of; as,—

nervīs et ossibus continentur, they consist of sinews and bones (lit. they are held together by sinews and bones);

mortāli cōnsistīt corpore mundus, the world consists of mortal substance (lit. holds together by means of, etc.).

6. In expressions of the following type:—

quid hōc homine faciās, what can you do with this man?

quid meā Tulliolā fiet, what will become of my dear Tullia? (lit. what will be done with my dear Tullia?)

7. In the following special phrases at variance with the ordinary English idiom:—

proelīō contendere, vincere, to contend, conquer in battle;

proelīō lacessere, to provoke to battle;

currū vehī, to ride in a chariot;

pedibus ūre, to go on foot;

castrīs sē tenēre, to keep in camp.

8. With Verbs of filling and Adjectives of plenty; as,—
fossās virgūltīs complērunt, they filled the trenches with brush.

a. But plēnus more commonly takes the Genitive. See § 204, 1.

9. Under 'Means' belongs also the Ablative of the Way by Which; as,—

vīnūm Tiberti dēvectum, wine brought down (by) the Tiber.

10. The means may be a person as well as a thing. Thus:—

mīlitibus ā lacū Lēmannō ad montem Jūram mūrum perdūcit, with (i.e. by means of) his troops he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mt. Jura.

Ablative of Cause.

219. The Ablative is used to denote cause; as,—

multa glōriæ cupiditātē fēcit, he did many things on account of his love of glory.

1. So especially with verbs denoting mental states; as, dēlector, gāudeō, laetor, glōrior, fidō, cōnfidō. Also with contentus; as,—

fortūnā amīcī gaudeō, I rejoice at the fortune of my friend (i.e. on account of it);

victōriā suā glōriantur, they exult over their victory;

nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant, they trusted in the character of their country (lit. were confident on account of the character).

a. fidō and cōnfidō always take the Dative of the person (§ 187, II, a); sometimes the Dative of the thing.

2. As Ablatives of Cause are to be reckoned also such Ablatives as jussū, by order of, injussū, without the order, rogātū, etc.

Ablative of Manner.

220. The Ablative with cum is used to denote manner; as,—

cum gravitātē loquitur, he speaks with dignity.

1. The preposition may be absent when the Ablative is modified by an adjective; as,—

magnā gravitātē loquitur, he speaks with great dignity.

2. The preposition is regularly absent in the expressions jūre, injūriā, jocō, vī, fraude, voluntāte, fūrtō, silentiō.

3. A special variety of the Ablative of Manner denotes that in accordance with which or in pursuance of which anything is or is done. It is generally used without a preposition. Thus:—

meā sententiā, according to my opinion;

suīs mōribus, in accordance with their custom;

suā sponte, voluntarily, of his (their) own accord;

eā condiciōne, on these terms.

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

221. The Ablative is often used to denote an attendant circumstance of an action or an event; as,—

bonīs auspicīis, under good auspices;

nūlla est altercātiō clāmoribus unquam habīta majōribus, no debate was ever held under circumstances of greater applause;

extinguitur interpretō lūctū provinciae, he dies under circumstances of great grief on the part of the province;

longō intervāllō sequitur, he follows at a great distance.
Ablative of Accompaniment.

222. The Ablative with cum is used with verbs of motion to denote *accompaniment*; as,—

- *cum comitibus praefectus est*, *he set out with his attendants*;
- *cum febrī domum rediit*, *he returned home with a fever*.

1. In military expressions the Ablative may stand without *cum* when modified by any adjective except a numeral; as,—

- *omnibus cōpiīs, ingenti exercitu, magnā manū*; but usually *cum exercitu, cum duābus legiōnibus*.

Ablative of Association.

222A. The Ablative is often used with verbs of *joining, mixing, clinging, exchanging*; also with *assuēscō, cōnsuēscō, assuēfacciō*, and some others to denote *association*; as,—

- *improbītās scelere jūncta*, *badness joined with crime*;
- *āēr calōre admixtus*, *air mixed with heat*;
- *assuētūs labōre*, *accustomed to (lit. familiarized with) toil*;
- *pācem bellō permūtānt*, *they change peace for (lit. with) war*.

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

223. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as *post, ante, infrā, suprā*) to denote the *degree of difference*; as,—

- *dimidiō minor*, *smaller by a half*;
- *tribus pedibus altior*, *three feet higher*;
- *paulō post*, *a little afterwards*;
- *quō plurā habēmus, eō cupimus ampliore*, *the more we have, the more we want*.

Ablative of Quality.

224. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as,—

- *puella eximīa fōrmā*, *a girl of exceptional beauty*;
- *vir singulārī industriā*, *a man of singular industry*.

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as,—

- *est magnā prūdentīa*, *he is (a man) of great wisdom*;
- *bonō animā sunt*, *they are of good courage*.

2. In place of the Adjective we sometimes find a limiting Genitive; as,—

- *sunt speciē et colōre taurī*, *they are of the appearance and color of a bull*.

3. In poetry the Ablative of Quality sometimes denotes *material*; as,—

- *scopulis pendentibus antrum*, *a cave of arching rocks*.

Ablative of Price.

225. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is designated by the Ablative; as—

- *servum quīnque minīs ēmit*, *he bought the slave for five minae*.

1. The Ablatives *magnō, plūrimō, parvō, minimō* (by omission of *pretiō*) are used to denote *indefinite price*; as,—
aedēs magnō vēndidit, he sold the house for a high price.

2. For the Genitive of Indefinite Price, see § 203, 4.

Ablative of Specification.

226. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is done; as,

Helvētīī omnibus Gallīs virtūte praestābant, the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor;
pede claudus, lame in his foot.

1. Note the phrases:—

major nātū, older (lit. greater as to age);
minor nātū, younger.

2. Here belongs the use of the Ablative with dignus, worthy, indignus, unworthy, and dignor, deem worthy of; as,—
dignī honōre, worthy of honor (i.e. in point of honor);
fidē indignī, unworthy of confidence;
mē dignor honōre, I deem myself worthy of honor.

Ablative Absolute.

227. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In its commonest form it consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as,—

urbe captā, Aenēs fūgit, when the city had been captured, Aeneas fled (lit. the city having been captured).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or noun; as,—
vīvō Caesare rēs pūblica salva erat, while Caesar was alive the state was safe (lit. Caesar being alive);
Tarquiniō rēge, Pythagorās in Italian vēnit, in the reign of Tarquin Pythagoras came into Italy (lit. Tarquin being king);

2. The Ablative Absolute is generally used in Latin where in English we employ subordinate clauses. Thus the Ablative Absolute may correspond to a clause denoting—

a) Time, as in the foregoing examples.
b) Condition; as,—
omnēs virtūtēs jacent, voluptāte dominante, all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure is master.
c) Opposition; as,—
perdīris omnibus rēbus, virtūs sē sustentāre potest, though everything else is lost, yet Virtue can maintain herself.
d) Cause; as,—
nūllō adversante rēgnum obtinuit, since no one opposed him, he secured the throne.
e) Attendant circumstance; as,—
passiō palmīs pācem petīvērunt, with hands outstretched, they sued for peace.

3. An Infinitive or clause sometimes occurs in the Ablative Absolute construction, especially in Livy and later writers; as,—
auditō eum fūgisse, when it was heard that he had fled.

4. A noun or pronoun stands in the Ablative Absolute construction only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the clause in which it stands. Exceptions to this principle are extremely rare.

LOCATIVE USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

Ablative of Place.

A. Place where.

228. The place where is regularly denoted by the Ablative with a preposition; as,—

in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; viz.—

a) Names of towns,—except Singulairs of the First and Second Declensions (see § 232, 1); as,—

Carthāgīnī, at Carthage;
Athēnis, at Athens;
Vējīs, at Veii.

b) The general words locō, locīs, parte; also many words modified by tōtus or even by other Adjectives; as,—

hōc locō, at this place;
tōtīs castrīs, in the whole camp.

c) The special words: forīs, out of doors; rūrī, in the country, terrā marīque, on land and sea.

d) The poets freely omit the preposition with any word denoting place; as,—

stant lītore puppēs, the sterns rest on the beach.

B. Place from which.[150]

229. Place from which is regularly denoted by the Ablative with a preposition; as,—

ab Italīa profectus est, he set out from Italy;
ex urbe rediit, he returned from the city.

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; viz.—

a) Names of towns and small islands; as,—

Rōma profectus est, he set out from Rome;
Rhodō revertit, he returned from Rhodes.

b) domō, from home; rūre, from the country.

c) Freely in poetry; as,—

Italīā dēcessit, he withdrew from Italy.

2. With names of towns, ab is used to mean from the vicinity of, or to denote the point whence distance is measured; as,—

ā Gergoviā discessit, he withdrew from the vicinity of Gergovia;
ā Rōmā X milīa aberat, he was ten miles distant from Rome.

Urbe and oppidō, when standing in apposition with a town name, are accompanied by a preposition; as,—

Curibus ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, from Cures, a town of the Sabines
Ablative of Time.

A. Time at which.

230. The Ablative is used to denote the time at which; as,—

quārtā hōrā mortuus est, he died at the fourth hour;
annō septuāgēsimō cōnsul creātus, elected consul in his seventieth year.

1. Any word denoting a period of time may stand in this construction, particularly annus, vēr, aestās, hiems, diēs, nox, hōra, comitīa (Election Day), lūdī (the Games), etc.

2. Words not denoting time require the preposition in, unless accompanied by a modifier. Thus:—

in pāce, in peace; in bellō, in war;
but secundō bellō Pūnicō, in the second Punic War.

3. Expressions like in ēō tempore, in summa senectūte, take the preposition because they denote situation rather than time.

B. Time within which.

231. Time within which is denoted by the Ablative either with or without a preposition; as,—

stella Sāturē trīgintā annīs cursum cōnāvit, the planet Saturn completes its orbit within thirty years;
ter in annō, thrice in the course of the year.

1. Occasionally the Ablative denotes duration of time; as,—

biennīō prōspērās rēs habuit, for two years he had a prosperous administration.

THE LOCATIVE.

232. The Locative case occurs chiefly in the following words:—

1. Regularly in the Singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place in which; as,—

Rōmae, at Rome;
Corinthī, at Corinth;
Rhodī, at Rhodes.

2. In the following special forms:—

domī, at home;
humī, on the ground;
bellī, in war;
militiae, in war;
vesperī, at evening;
erī, yesterday.

3. Note the phrase pendēre animī, lit. to be in suspense in one's mind.

4. For urbs and oppidum in apposition with a Locative, see § 169, 4.

CHAPTER III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

233. 1. The word with which an Adjective agrees is called its Subject.

2. Attributive and Predicate Adjectives. An Attributive Adjective is one that limits its subject directly; as,—
vir sapiens, a wise man.

A Predicate Adjective is one that limits its subject through the medium of a verb (usually esse); as,—

vir est sapiens, the man is wise;

vir vidēbātur sapiens, the man seemed wise;

vir jūdicātus est sapiens, the man was judged wise;

hunc virum sapientem jūdicāvimus, we adjudged this man wise.

3. Participles and Adjective Pronouns have the construction of Adjectives.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

234. Agreement with One Noun. When an Adjective limits one noun it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

1. Two Adjectives in the Singular may limit a noun in the Plural, as; prīma et vīcēsima legiōnēs, the first and twentieth legions.

2. A Predicate Adjective may stand in the Neuter when its Subject is Masculine or Feminine and denotes a thing; as,—

omnia rērum mors est extrēmum, death is the end of all things.

235. Agreement with Two or More Nouns.

A. AGREEMENT AS TO NUMBER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in number with the nearest noun; as,—

pater tuus et māter, your father and mother;

eadem alacritās et studium, the same eagerness and zeal.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative, it is regularly Plural; as,—

pāx et concordia sunt pulchrae, peace and concord are glorious.

B. AGREEMENT AS TO GENDER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in gender with the nearest noun; as,—

rēs operac multae ac labōris, a matter of much effort and labor.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative—

a) If the nouns are of the same gender, the Adjective agrees with them in gender; as,—

pater et filius capīt sunt, father and son were captured.

Yet with feminine abstract nouns, the Adjective is more frequently Neuter; as,—

stultitiae et timiditās fugienda sunt, folly and cowardice must be shunned.

b) If the nouns are of different gender; then,—

a) In case they denote persons, the Adjective is Masculine; as,—

pater et māter mortuī sunt, the father and mother have died.

b) In case they denote things, the Adjective is Neuter; as,—

honōrēs et victoriāe fortuita sunt, honors and victories are accidental.

γ) In case they include both persons and things, the Adjective is,—

(aa) Sometimes Masculine; as,—

domus, uxor, liberī inventī sunt, home, wife, and children are secured.

ββ) Sometimes Neuter; as,—

parentēs, liberōs, domōs vīlia habēre, to hold parents, children, houses cheap.

γγ) Sometimes it agrees with the nearest noun; as,—
populi prōvinciaeque liberātae sunt, nations and provinces were liberated.

c) Construction according to Sense. Sometimes an Adjective does not agree with a noun according to strict grammatical form, but according to sense; as,—

pars bēstiā objectī sunt, part (of the men) were thrown to beasts.

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIvely.

236. 1. PLURAL ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIvely. Adjectives are quite freely used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as,—

doctī, scholars;  parva, small things;
malī, the wicked;  magna, great things;
Graecī, the Greeks;  ūtilia, useful things;
nostri, our men.

2. Neuter Plural Adjectives thus used are confined mainly to the Nominative and Accusative cases. Such forms as magnōrum, omnium; magnīs, omnibus, would ordinarily lead to ambiguity; yet where there is no ambiguity, they sometimes occur; as,—

parvīs compōnere magna, to compare great things with small

Otherwise the Latin says: magnārum rērum, magnīs rēbus, etc.

237. SINGULAR ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIvely. Adjectives are less freely used as Substantives in the Singular than in the Plural.

1. Masculine Adjectives occur only occasionally in this use; as,—

probus invidet nēminī, the honest man envies nobody.

a. Usually vir, homō, or some similar word is employed; as,—

homō doctus, a scholar;
vir Rōmānus, a Roman.

b. But when limited by a pronoun any adjective may be so used; as,—

hīc doctus, this scholar;
doctor quidam, a certain scholar.

2. Neuters are likewise infrequent; as,—

vērum, truth;
jūstum, justice;
honestum, virtue.

a. This substantive use of Neuter Singulairs is commonest in the construction of the Genitive of the Whole, and after Prepositions; as,—

aliquid vērī, something true;
nihil novī, nothing new;
in mediō, in the midst.

238. From Adjectives which, like the above, occasionally admit the substantive use, must be carefully distinguished certain others which have become nouns; as,—

adversārius, opponent;
ahiberna, winter quarters;
aequālis, contemporary;
propinquus, relative;
amīcus, friend;
socius, partner;
cognātus, kinsman;
sodālis, comrade;
vīcīnus, neighbor; etc.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE FORCE OF ADVERBS.

239. The Latin often uses an Adjective where the English idiom employs an Adverb or an adverbial phrase; as,—
senātus frequēns convēnit, the senate assembled in great numbers;
fuit assiduus mēcum, he was constantly with me.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

240. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with 'rather,' 'somewhat,' 'too'; as,—

senectūs est loquācior, old age is rather talkative.

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with 'very'; as,—

vir fortissimus, a very brave man.

3. Strengthening Words. Vel and quam are often used with the Superlative as strengthening particles, vel with the force of 'very,' and quam with the force of 'as possible'; as,—

vel maximus, the very greatest;
quam maximae cópiae, as great forces as possible.

4. Phrases of the type 'more rich than brave' regularly take the Comparative in both members; as,—

exercitus erat dītior quam fortior, the army was more rich than brave.

OTHER PECULIARITIES.

241. 1. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote a part of an object, chiefly prīmus, extrēmus, summus, mediūs, infīmus, imus; as,—

summus mōns, the top of the mountain;
extrēmā hieme, in the last part of the winter.

2. Prior, prīmus, ultimus, and postrēmus are frequently equivalent to a relative clause; as,—

prīmus eam vīdī, I was the first who saw her;
ultimus décessit, he was the last who withdrew.

3. When multus and another adjective both limit the same noun et is generally used; as,—

multae et magnae cōgitātiōnēs, many (and) great thoughts.

CHAPTER IV.—Syntax of Pronouns.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

242. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are, as a rule, not expressed except for the purpose of emphasis, contrast, or clearness. Thus ordinarily:—

videō, I see; amat, he loves.

But ego tē videō, et tū mē vidēs, I see you, and you see me.

2. The Genitives meī, tuī, nostri, vestrī are used only as Objective Genitives; nostrum and vestrum as Genitives of the Whole. Thus:—

memor tuī, mindful of you;
dēsiderium vestrī, longing for you;
nēmō vestrum, no one of you.

a. But nostrum and vestrum are regularly used in the place of the Possessive in the phrases omnium nostrum, omnium vestrum.

3. The First Plural is often used for the First Singular of Pronouns and Verbs. Compare the Eng. editorial 'we.'
4. When two Verbs govern the same object, the Latin does not use a pronoun with the second, as is the rule in English. Thus:—

virtūs amīcitās conciliat et cōnservat, virtue establishes friendships and maintains them (not eās cōnservat).

**POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.**

243. 1. The Possessive Pronouns, as a rule, are not employed except for the purpose of clearness. Thus:

—

patrem amō, I love my father;
dē filī morte flēbās, you wept for the death of your son.

But—
dē morte filī meī flēbās, you wept for the death of my son.

a. When expressed merely for the sake of clearness, the possessive usually stands after its noun; but in order to indicate emphasis or contrast, it precedes; as,—
suā manū libérōs occīdīt, with his own hand he slew his children;
meā quīdem sententiāā, in my opinion at least.

2. Sometimes the Possessive Pronouns are used with the force of an Objective Genitive; as,—

metus vester, fear of you;
dēsīderium tua, longing for you.

3. For special emphasis, the Latin employs ipsīus or ipsōrum, in apposition with the Genitive idea implied in the Possessive; as,—

meā ipsīus operā, by my own help;
nostrā ipsōrum operā, by our own help.

a. So sometimes other Genitives; as,—

meā ūṇīus operā, by the assistance of me alone.

**REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.**

244. 1. The Reflexive Pronoun sē and the Possessive Reflexive suus have a double use:—

I. They may refer to the subject of the clause (either principal or subordinate) in which they stand, —’Direct Reflexives’; as,—

sē amant, they love themselves;
suōs amīcōs adjūvāt, he helps his own friends;
eum ōrāvī, ut sē servāret, I besought him to save himself.

II. They may stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the subject of the principal clause,—’Indirect Reflexives’; as,—

mē ōrāvit ut sē dēfendērem, he besought me to defend him (lit. that I defend myself);
mē ōrāvērunt, ut fortūnārum suārum dēfēnsiōnem suscipērem, they besought me to undertake the defense of their fortunes.

a. The Indirect Reflexive is mainly restricted to those clauses which express the thought, not of the author, but of the subject of the principal clause.

2. The Genitive suī is regularly employed, like meī and tua, as an Objective Genitive, e.g. oblītus suī, forgetful of himself; but it occasionally occurs—particularly in post-Augustan writers—in place of the Possessive suus; as, fruītūr fāmā suī, he enjoys his own fame.

3. Sē and suus are sometimes used in the sense, one’s self, one’s own, where the reference is not to any particular person; as,—
sē amāre, to love one's self;
suum genium propitiāre, to propitiate one's own genius.

4. Suus sometimes occurs in the meaning his own, their own, etc., referring not to the subject but to an oblique case; as,—

Hannibalem suī civēs ē civitāte ējēcērunt, his own fellow-citizens drove out Hannibal.
a. This usage is particularly frequent in combination with quisque; as,—
suus quemque error vexat, his own error troubles each.

5. The Reflexives for the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of ego and tū (§ 85); as,—

vōs dēfenditis, you defend yourselves.

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

245. 1. The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun ('each other'), but expresses the reciprocal notion by the phrases: inter nōs, inter vōs, inter sē; as,—

Belgae obsidēs inter sē dedērunt, the Belgae gave each other hostages (lit. among themselves);
amāmus inter nōs, we love each other;
Gallī inter sē cohortātī sunt, the Gauls exhorted each other.
a. Note that the Object is not expressed in sentences of this type.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Hīc, Ille, Iste.

246. 1. Where hīc and ille are used in contrast, hīc usually refers to the latter of two objects, and ille to the former.

2. Hīc and ille are often used in the sense of 'the following'; as,—

Themistocēs hīs verbīs epistulam mīsit, Themistocles sent a letter (couched) in the following words;
illud intellegō, omnium ōra in mē conversa esse, I understand this, that the faces of all are turned toward me.

3. Ille often means the famous; as, Solōn ille, the famous Solon.

4. Iste frequently involves contempt; as, iste homō, that fellow!

5. The above pronouns, along with is, are usually attracted to the gender of a predicate noun; as, hīc est honor, meminisse officium suum, this is an honor, to be mindful of one's duty.

Is.

247. 1. Is often serves as the antecedent of the relative quī. Thus:—

Maximum, eum quī Tarentum recēpit, dīlēxi, I loved Maximus, the man who retook Tarentum.
a. Closely akin to this usage is is in the sense of such (= tālis); as,—
nōn sum is quī terrēr, I am not such a person as to be frightened.
b. Note the phrase id quod, where id stands in apposition with an entire clause; as,—
nōn suspicābātur (id quod nunc sentiēt) satis multōs testēs nōbīs reliquōs esse, he did not suspect (a thing which he will now perceive) that we had witnesses enough left.

Yet quod alone, without preceding id, sometimes occurs in this use.
2. Is also in all cases serves as the personal pronoun of the third person, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' 'them.'

3. When the English uses 'that of,' 'those of,' to avoid repetition of the noun, the Latin omits the pronoun: as,—

   in exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassī fuerat, he had been in the army of Sulla and afterward in that of Crassus;
   nūllae mē fābulae délectant nisi Plautī, no plays delight me except those of Plautus.

4. Note the phrases et is, et ea, etc., in the sense: and that too; as,—

   vincula, et ea sempiterna, imprisonment, and that too permanently.

   Ídem.

248. 1. Ídem in apposition with the subject or object often has the force of also, likewise; as,—

   quod ídem mihi contigit, which likewise happened to me (lit. which, the same thing);
   bonus vīr, quem eundem sapientem appellāmus, a good man, whom we call also wise.

For ídem atque (ac), the same as, see § 341, 1. c.

Ipse.

249. 1. Ipse, literally self, acquires its special force from the context; as,—

   eō ipsī diē, on that very day;
   ad ipsam rīpam, close to the bank;
   ipsī terrōre, by mere fright;
   valvae sē ipsae aperūrunt, the doors opened of their own accord;
   ipse acerat, he was present in person.

2. The reflexive pronouns are often emphasized by the addition of ipse, but ipse in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject; as,—

   sēcum ipsī loquuntur, they talk with themselves;
   sē ipse contīnēre nōn potest, he cannot contain himself

3. Ipse is also used as an Indirect Reflexive for the purpose of marking a contrast or avoiding an ambiguity; as,—

   Persae pertimuĕrunt nē Alcibiadēs ab ipsīs dēscisceret et cum suīs in grātiām rediret, the Persians feared that Alcibiades would break with them and become reconciled with his countrymen;
   ea molestissimē ferre dēbent hominēs quae ipsōrum culpā contrācta sunt, men ought to chafe most over those things which have been brought about by their own fault (as opposed to the fault of others).

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

250. Agreement. 1. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as,—

   mulier quam vidēbāmus, the woman whom we saw;
   bona quibus fruēmur, the blessings which we enjoy.

2. Where the antecedent is compound, the same principles for number and gender prevail as in case of predicate adjectives under similar conditions (see § 235, B, 2). Thus:—
pater et filius, qui capti sunt, the father and son who were captured;
stultitia et timiditas quae fugienda sunt, folly and cowardice which must be
shunned;
honorés et victoriae quae sunt fortuita, honors and victories, which are accidental.

3. The Relative regularly agrees with a predicate noun (either Nominative or Accusative) instead of its
antecedent; as,—
carcer, quae lautumiae vocantur, the prison, which is called Lautumiae;
Belgae, quae sunt tertia pars, the Belgians, who are the third part.

4. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the meaning of its antecedent; as,—
pars qui bестиis objecti sunt, a part (of the men) who were thrown to beasts.

5. Occasionally the Relative is attracted into the case of its antecedent; as,—

natus eō patre quo dixi, born of the father that I said.

251. Antecedent. 1. The antecedent of the Relative is sometimes omitted; as,—
quī nātūram sequitur sapiens est, he who follows Nature is wise.

2. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive pronoun (or rarely an adjective); as,—
nōstra quī remānsimus caedes, the slaughter of us who remained;
servī tumultū, quōs āsum ac disciplīna sublevārunt, at the uprising of the slaves,
whom experience and discipline assisted (servī = servōrum).

3. Sometimes the antecedent is repeated with the Relative; as,—
erant itineria duo, quibus itineribus, there were two routes, by which (routes).

4. Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause. The antecedent is often incorporated in the relative
clause. Thus:—

a) When the relative clause stands first; as,—
quam quīisque nōvit artem, in hāc sē exercet, let each one practice the branch
which he knows.

b) When the antecedent is an appositive; as,—
nōn longē a Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā, they are not
far from the borders of the Tolosates, a state which is in our province.

c) When the logical antecedent is a superlative; as,—
Themeistocles dē servīs suis, quem habuit fidēlissimum, mīsit, Themistocles sent
the most trusty slave he had.

d) In expressions of the following type—
quā es prūdentia; quae tua est prūdentia, such is your prudence (lit. of which
prudence you are; which is your prudence).

5. The Relative is never omitted in Latin as it is in English. Thus the boy I saw must be puer quem
vīdī.

6. The Relative is used freely in Latin, particularly at the beginning of a sentence, where in English we
employ a demonstrative; as,—
quō factum est, by this it happened;
quae cum ās sint, since this is so;
quibus rēbus cognītis, when these things became known.

7. The Relative introducing a subordinate clause may belong grammatically to a clause which is
subordinate to the one it introduces; as,—
umquām dignē satis laudāri philosophia poterit, cui quī pārecat, omne tempus
aetātis sine molestiā possit dēgere, philosophy can never be praised enough,
since he who obeys her can pass every period of life without annoyance (lit. he who obeys which, etc.).

Here cui introduces the subordinate clause possess and connects it with philosophia; but cui is governed by pārebat, which is subordinate to possess.

**INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.**

252. 1. Quis, any one, is the weakest of the Indefinites, and stands usually in combination with si, nisi, nē, num; as,—

   si quis putat, if any one thinks.

2. Aliquīs (adj. aliqui) is more definite than quis, and corresponds usually to the English some one, somebody, some; as,—

   nunc aliquīs dīcat mīhī, now let somebody tell me;
   utinam modo agātur aliquīd, oh that something may be done.

3. Quīdam, a certain one, is still more definite than aliquīs; as,—

   homō quīdam, a certain man (i.e., one whom I have in mind).
   a. Quīdam (with or without quasi, as if) is sometimes used in the sense: a sort of, kind of; as,—
      cognātīō quaedam, a sort of relationship;
      mors est quasi quaedam migrātīō, death is a kind of transfer as it were.

4. Quisquam, any one, any one whoever (more general than quis), and its corresponding adjective ullus, any, occur mostly in negative and conditional sentences, in interrogative sentences implying a negative, and in clauses of comparison; as,—

   jūstiā numquam nocet cuquam, justice never harms anybody;
   si quisquam, Catō sapiēns fuit, if anybody was ever wise, Cato was;
   potesne quisquam sine perturbātiōne animī īrāsci, can anybody be angry without excitement?
   si ūllo modō poterit, if it can be done in any way;
   tactrior hīc tyrannus fuit quam quisquam superiōrum, he was a viler tyrant than any of his predecessors.

5. Quisque, each one, is used especially under the following circumstances:—

   a) In connection with suus. See § 244, 4, a.
   b) In connection with a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun; as,—
      quod cuique obtigit, id teneat, what falls to each, that let him hold.
   c) In connection with superlatives; as,—
      optimus quisque, all the best (lit. each best one).
   d) With ordinal numerals; as,—
      quīntō quōque annō, every fourth years (lit. each fifth year).

6. Nēmō, no one, in addition to its other uses, stands regularly with adjectives used substantively; as,—

   nēmō mortālis, no mortal;
   nēmō Rōmānus, no Roman.

**PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.**

253. 1. Alius, another, and alter, the other, are often used correlative; as,—

   aliud loquitur, aliud sentit, he says one thing, he thinks another;
   aliī resistunt, aliī fugiunt, some resist, others flee;
   alter exercitum perdit, alter vēndidit, one ruined the army, the other sold it;
alterī sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta sē contulērunt, the one party retreated to the mountain, the others betook themselves to the baggage.

2. Where the English says one does one thing, another another, the Latin uses a more condensed form of statement; as,—

*alius aliud amat,* one likes one thing, another another;

*aliud aliis placet,* one thing pleases some, another others.

a. So sometimes with adverbs; as,—

*aliū aliō fugiunt,* some flee in one direction, others in another.

3. The Latin also expresses the notion 'each other' by means of *alius* repeated; as,—

*Galli alius aliurn cohōrtātī sunt,* the Gauls encouraged each other.

4. Cēterī means the rest, all the others; as,—

*cēterīs praestāre,* to be superior to all the others.

5. Reliquī means the others in the sense of the rest, those remaining,—hence is the regular word with numerals; as,—

*reliquī sex,* the six others.

6. Nescio quis forms a compound indefinite pronoun with the force of some one or other; as,—

*causidicus nescio quis,* some petitfogger or other;

*mīsit nescio quem,* he sent some one or other;

*nescio quō pactō,* somehow or other.

---

**CHAPTER V.**—*Syntax of Verbs.*

**AGREEMENT.**

**With One Subject.**

254. 1. **Agreement in Number and Person.** A Finite Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person; as,—

*vōs vidētis,* you see;

*pater filiōs instituit,* the father trains his sons.

2. **Agreement in Gender.** In the compound forms of the verb the participle regularly agrees with its subject in gender; as,—

*sēditō repressa est,* the mutiny was checked.

3. But when a predicate noun is of different gender or number from its subject, the verb usually agrees with its nearest substantive; as,—

*Tarquinii māterna patria erat,* Tarquinii was his native country on his mother's side;

*nōn omnis error stultitīa est dicenda,* not every error is to be called folly.

a. Less frequently the verb agrees with an appositive; as,—

*Corioli, oppidum Volscorum, captūm est,* Corioli, a town of the Volsci, was captured.

4. **Construction according to Sense.** Sometimes the verb agrees with its subject according to sense instead of strict grammatical form. Thus:—

a) In Number; as,—

*multitudō hominum concūnērant,* a crowd of men had gathered.
b) In Gender; as,—

duo mīlia crucibus adfixī sunt, two thousand (men) were crucified.

With Two or More Subjects.

255. 1. Agreement in Number. With two or more subjects the verb is regularly plural; as,—
pater et filius mortuī sunt, the father and son died.

2. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest subject; viz.,—
a) When the verb precedes both subjects or stands between them; as,—
mortuus est pater et filius;
pater mortuus est et filius.

b) When the subjects are connected by aut; aut ... aut; vel ... vel; neque ... neque; as,—
neque pater neque filius mortuus est, neither father nor son died.

3. When the different subjects are felt together as constituting a whole, the singular is used; as,—
temerītās ignōrātiōque vitiośa est, rashness and ignorance are bad.

a. This is regularly the case in senātus populusque Rōmānus.

4. Agreement in Person. With compound subjects of different persons the verb always takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as,—
sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

5. Agreement in Gender. With subjects of different genders the participle in the compound tenses follows the same principles as laid down for predicate adjectives. See § 235, B, 2.

VOICES.

256. 1. The Passive Voice sometimes retains traces of its original middle or reflexive meaning; as,—

ego nōn patiar eum dēfendī, I shall not allow him to defend himself.

2. In imitation of Greek usage many perfect passive participles are used by the poets as indirect middles, i.e. the subject is viewed as acting not upon itself, but as doing something in his own interest; as,—
vēlātus tempora, having veiled his temples.

a. Occasionally finite forms of the verb are thus used; as,—
tunicā indūcitūr artūs, he covers his limbs with a tunic.

3. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive; as,—
curritur, people run (lit. it is run);
ventum est, he (they, etc.) came (lit. it was come).

TENSES.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

257. 1. The Latin tenses express two distinct notions:—

a) The period of time to which the action belongs: Present, Past, or Future.

b) The kind of action: Undefined, Going on, or Completed.

The Latin with its six tenses is able to express each of the three kinds of action for each of the three periods of time (making practically nine tenses). It does this by employing certain tenses in more than one way, as may be seen by the following table:—
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KIND OF ACTION</th>
<th>PERIOD OF TIME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Historical Perfect: scripsī, <em>I wrote.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOING ON</td>
<td>Present: scribō, <em>I am writing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imperfect: scribēbam, <em>I was writing.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPLETED</td>
<td>Present Perfect: scripsī, <em>I have written.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pluperfect: scripsēram, <em>I had written.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. It will be seen that the Present may express Undefined action or action Going on; so also the Future. The Perfect likewise has a double use, according as it denotes action Completed in present time (Present Perfect) or Undefined action belonging to past time (Historical Perfect).

**Principal and Historical Tenses.**

258. Tenses which denote Present or Future time are called **Principal** (or Primary) Tenses, those which denote Past time are called **Historical** (or Secondary).

The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect.

**Present Indicative.**

259. Besides the two uses indicated in the table, the Present Indicative presents the following peculiarities:—

1. It is used to denote *a general truth, i.e. something true not merely in the present but at all times* ('Gnomic Present'); as,—

   virtūs conciliat amicitiās et cōnservat, *virtue establishes ties of friendship and maintains them* (i.e. always does so).

2. It is used of an attempted action ('Conative Present'); as,—

   dum vītant vitia, in contrāria currunt, *while they try to avoid (vītant) vices, they rush into opposite ones.*

3. In lively narration the Present is often used of a past action ('Historical Present'); as,—

   Caesar imperat magnum numerum obsidum, *Caesar demanded a large number of hostages* (lit. *demands*).

4. In combination with jam, jam dītī, jam prīdem, and similar words, the Present is frequently used of an action originating in the past and continuing in the present; as,—

   jam prīdem cupiō tē visere, *I have long been desiring to visit you* (i.e. I desire and have long desired).

**Imperfect Indicative.**

260. 1. The Imperfect primarily denotes action *going on in past time*; as,—

   librum legēbam, *I was reading a book.*

   a. This force makes the Imperfect especially adapted to serve as the tense of *description* (as opposed to mere *narration*).

2. From the notion of action *going on*, there easily develops the notion of *repeated* or *customary* action; as,—

   légātōs interrogābat, *he kept asking the envoys;*
C. Dutilium vidēbam puer, as a boy I often used to see Gaius Duilius.

3. The Imperfect often denotes an attempted action ('Conative Imperfect') or an action as beginning ('Inceptive Imperfect'); as,—

hostēs nostrōs intrā mūnītōnēs prōgredī prohibēbant, the enemy tried to prevent
(prohibēbant) our men from advancing within the fortifications ('Conative');
ad proelium sē expediēbant, they were beginning to get ready for battle
('Inceptive').

4. The Imperfect, with jam, jam diū, jam dūdum, etc., is sometimes used of an action which had been
continuing some time; as,—
domicilium Rōmae multōs jam annōs habēbat, he had had his residence at Rome
for many years (i.e. he had it at this time and had long had it).

Future Indicative.

261. 1. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future than is the English. We say: 'If he comes, I
shall be glad,' where we really mean: 'If he shall come,' etc. In such cases the Latin rarely admits the
Present, but generally employs the Future.

2. Sometimes the Future has Imperative force; as, dicēs, say!

Perfect Indicative.

262. A. PRESENT PERFECT. Several Present Perfects denote the state resulting from a completed act,
and so seem equivalent to the Present; as,—
nōvī, cognōvī, I know (lit. I have become acquainted with);
cōnsūvī, I am wont (lit. I have become accustomed).

B. HISTORICAL PERFECT. The Historical Perfect is the tense of narration (as opposed to the Imperfect,
the tense of description); as,—

Rēgulus in senātum vēnit, mandāta exposiūit, redēdī captivōs negāvit esse ūtile,
Regulus came into the Senate, set forth his mission, said it was useless for
captives to be returned.

1. Occasionally the Historical Perfect is used of a general truth ('Gnomic Perfect').

Pluperfect Indicative.

263. The Latin Pluperfect, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act completed in the past; as,—

Caesar Rhēnum trānsāre dēcēverat, sed nāvēs deerant, Caesar had decided to
cross the Rhine, but had no boats.

a. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (§ 262, A), the Pluperfect has the force of
an Imperfect; as,—
nōveram, I knew.

Future Perfect Indicative.

264. The Future Perfect denotes an action completed in future time. Thus:—

scribam epistulam, cum redieris, I will write the letter when you have returned (lit.
when you shall have returned).

a. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future Perfect than the English, which
commonly employs the Present Perfect instead of the Future Perfect.

b. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (§ 262, A) the Future Perfect has the force
of a Future; as,—
növerō, I shall know.

Epistolary Tenses.

265. In letters the writer often uses tenses which are not appropriate at the time of writing, but which will be so at the time when his letter is received; he thus employs the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Present Perfect; as,—

nihil habēbam quod scriberem, neque enim novī quidquam audieram et ad tuās omnēs epistulās jam rescirperam, I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news and have already answered all your letters.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

266. A. In Independent sentences. See §§ 272-280.

B. In Dependent Sentences. In dependent sentences the tenses of the subjunctive usually conform to the so-called

Sequence of Tenses.

267. 1. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

2. By the Sequence of Tenses Principal tenses are followed by Principal, Historical by Historical. Thus:—

PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE,—

videō quid faciās, I see what you are doing.
vidēhō quid faciās, I shall see what you are doing.
vīderō quid faciās, I shall have seen what you are doing.
videō quid fēceris, I see what you have done.
vidēhō quid fēceris, I shall see what you have done.
vīderō quid fēceris, I shall have seen what you have done.

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE,—

vidēbam quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.
vidī quid facerēs, I saw what you were doing.
vidēram quid facerēs, I had seen what you were doing.
vidēbam quid fēcissēs, I saw what you had done.
vidī quid fēcissēs, I saw what you had done.
vidēram quid fēcissēs, I had seen what you had done.

3. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action, exactly as in the Indicative.

Peculiarities of Sequence.

268. 1. The Perfect Indicative is usually an historical tense (even when translated in English as a Present Perfect), and so is followed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; as,—

dēmōnstrāvī quārē ad causam accēderem, I have shown why I took the case (lit. I showed why, etc.).

2. A dependent Perfect Infinitive is treated as an historical tense wherever, if resolved into an equivalent Indicative, it would be historical; as,—

videor ostendisse quālēs dē essent, I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are (ostendisse here corresponds to an Indicative, ostendī, I showed).
3. The Historical Present is sometimes regarded as a principal tense, sometimes as historical. Thus:—

   Sulla suōs hortātur ut fortī animō sint, Sulla exhorts his soldiers to be stout-hearted;
   Gallōs hortātur ut arma caperent, he exhorted the Gauls to take arms.

4. Conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type are not affected by the principles for the Sequence of Tenses; as,—

   honestum tāle est ut, vel sī ignōrārent id hominēs, suā tamen pulchritūdine laudāble esset, virtue is such a thing that even if men were ignorant of it, it would still be worthy of praise for its own loveliness.

5. In conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type the Imperfect Subjunctive is usually treated as an Historical tense; as,—

   sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs, quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum quī viverent excepīrēs, if you called only those wretched who must die, you would except no one of those who live.

6. In clauses of Result and some others, the Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as an historical tense. Thus:—

   rēx tantum mōtus est, ut Tissaphernem hostem jūdicārit, the king was so much moved that he adjudged Tissaphernes an enemy.

This construction is rare in Cicero, but frequent in Nepos and subsequent historians. The Perfect Subjunctive in this use represents a result simply as a fact without reference to the continuance of the act, and therefore corresponds to an Historical Perfect Indicative of direct statement. Thus, jūdicārit in the above example corresponds to adjūdicāvit, he adjudged. To denote a result as something continuous, all writers use the Imperfect Subjunctive after historical tenses.

7. Sometimes perspicuity demands that the ordinary principles of Sequence be abandoned altogether. Thus:

   a) We may have the Present or Perfect Subjunctive after an historical tense; as,—

      Verrēs Siciām ita perdidīt ut ea restitūt nōn possīt, Verres so ruined Sicily that it cannot be restored (Direct statement: nōn possit restitūt);
      ārdēbat Hortēnsius dīcendī cupīditāte sēc, ut in nūlō flagrāntius studiō vīderim, Hortensius burned so with eagerness to speak that I have seen in no one a greater desire (Direct statement: in nūlō vīdī, I have seen in no one).

NOTE.—This usage is different from that cited under 6. Here, by neglect of Sequence, the Perfect is used, though a principal tense; there the Perfect was used as an historical tense.

   b) We may have a principal tense followed by the Perfect Subjunctive used historically; as,—

      nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nūlās ad mē litterās darēs, I do not know what reason there was why you did not send me a letter.

      Here fuerit is historical, as is shown by the following Imperfect Subjunctive.

**Method of Expressing Future Time in the Subjunctive.**

269. The Future and Future Perfect, which are lacking to the Latin Subjunctive, are supplied in subordinate clauses as follows:—

1. a) The Future is supplied by the Present after principal tenses, by the Imperfect after historical tenses.

   b) The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect after principal tenses, by the Pluperfect after historical tenses.

   This is especially frequent when the context clearly shows, by the presence of a future tense in the main clause, that the reference is to future time. Thus:—

   Gallōs pollicentur sē factūrōs, quae Caesar imperet, the Gauls promise they will do
what Caesar shall order;

**Galli polećebantur sé factūros, quae Caesar imperāret**, the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should order;

**Galli polećentur sé factūros quae Caesar imperāverit**, the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall have ordered;

**Galli polećebantur sé factūros quae Caesar imperāvisset**, the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should have ordered.

2. Even where the context does not contain a Future tense in the main clause, Future time is often expressed in the subordinate clauses by the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Thus:—

**timeō nē veniat**, I am afraid he will come;

**Caesar exspectābat quid cōnsili hostēs caperent**, Caesar was waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt.

3. Where greater definiteness is necessary, the periphrastic forms in -ūrus sim and -ūrus essem are employed, especially in clauses of Result, Indirect Questions, and after nōn dubitō quīn; as,—

**nōn dubitō quīn pater ventūrus sit**, I do not doubt that my father will come;

**nōn dubitābam quīn pater ventūrus esset**, I did not doubt that my father would come.

4. Where the verb has no Future Active Participle, or where it stands in the passive voice, its Future character may be indicated by the use of the particles mox, brevi, statim, etc., in connection with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; as,—

**nōn dubitō quīn tē mox hūjus reī paenīteat**, I do not doubt that you will soon repent of this thing;

**nōn dubitābam quīn haec rēs brevi cōnficerētur**, I did not doubt that this thing would soon be finished.

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

270. 1. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb on which they depend. Thus:—

a) The Present Infinitive represents an act as contemporaneous with the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

**vidētur honōrēs adsequī**, he seems to be gaining honors;

**vidēbātur honōrēs adsequī**, he seemed to be gaining honors.

b) The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as prior to the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

**vidētur honōrēs adsecūtūs esse**, he seems to have gained honors;

**vīsus est honōrēs adsecūtūs esse**, he seemed to have gained honors.

c) The Future Infinitive represents an act as subsequent to that of the verb on which it depends; as,—

**vidētur honōrēs adsecūtūrus esse**, he seems to be about to gain honors;

**vīsus est honōrēs adsecūtūrus esse**, he seemed to be about to gain honors.

2. Where the English says 'ought to have done;' *might have done,* etc., the Latin uses dēbui, oportuit, potui (dēbēbam, oportēbat, poteram), with the Present Infinitive; as,—

**dēbuit dicere**, he ought to have said (lit. owed it to say);

**opōrtuit venire**, he ought to have come;

**potuit vidēre**, he might have seen.

a. Oportuit, volō, nolō (and in poetry some other verbs), may take a Perfect Infinitive instead of the Present; as,—

**hoc jam pridem factum esse oportuit**, this ought long ago to have been done.

3. PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE INFINITIVE. Verbs that have no Participial Stem, express the Future Infinitive
Active and Passive by *fore ut* or *futūrum esse ut*, with the Subjunctive; as,—

*spērō *fore ut* tē paeniteat levitātis, I hope you will repent of your fickleness (lit.
    hope it will happen that you repent);
*spērō futūrum esse ut hostēs arceantur*, I hope that the enemy will be kept off.

*a*. The Periphrastic Future Infinitive is often used, especially in the Passive, even in case of
verbs which have the Participial Stem; as,—

*spērō fore ut hostēs vincantur*, I hope the enemy will be conquered.

4. Passives and Deponents sometimes form a Future Perfect Infinitive with *fore*; as,—

*spērō epistulam scriptam fore*, I hope the letter will have been written;
*dicō mē satis adeptum fore*, I say that I shall have gained enough.

THE MOODS.

MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

The Indicative in Independent Sentences.

271. The Indicative is used for the *statement of facts, the supposition of facts, or inquiry after facts.*

1. Note the following idiomatic uses:—

   a) With *possunt;* as,—
      
      *possunt multa dicere*, I might say much;
      *poteram multa dicere*, I might have said much (§ 270, 2).
   
   b) In such expressions as *longum est, aequum est, melius est, difficile est, útilius est,* and
      some others; as,—
      
      *longum est ea dicere*, it would be tedious to tell that;
      *difficile est omnia persequī*, it would be difficult to enumerate everything.

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

272. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something—

1. As willed—Volitive Subjunctive;
2. As desired—Optative Subjunctive;
3. Conceived of as possible—Potential Subjunctive.

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

273. The Volitive Subjunctive represents the action *as willed*. It always implies authority on the part of
the speaker, and has the following varieties:—

1. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

274. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses *an exhortation*. This use is confined to the first person plural
of the Present. The negative is *nē*. Thus:—

*eāmus, let us go;*  
*amēmus patriam, let us love our country;*  
*nē déspērēmus, let us not despair.*

2. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

275. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command*. The Jussive stands regularly in the Present Tense,
and is used—

1. Most frequently in the third singular and the third plural; as,—

   dicat, let him tell;
   dicant, let them tell;
   quârē secédant improbi, wherefore let the wicked depart!

2. Less frequently in the second person, often with indefinite force; as,—

   istō bonō útâre, use that advantage;
   modestē vivâs, live temperately.

C. PROHIBITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

276. The Subjunctive is used in the second and third persons singular and plural, with ne, to express a prohibition. Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning; as,—

   ne repugnētis, do not resist!
   tū vérō istam ne reliqueris, don’t leave her!
   impī ne plâcāre audeant deōs, let not the impious dare to appease the gods!

a. Neither of these constructions is frequent in classical prose.

b. A commoner method of expressing a prohibition in the second person is by the use of nōli (nōlite) with a following infinitive, or by cavē or cavē ne with the Subjunctive; as,—

   nōli hōc facere, don’t do this (lit. be unwilling to do);
   nōlite mentīri, do not lie!
   cavē ignōscâs, cavē tē miseret, do not forgive, do not pity!
   cavē ne haec faciâs, do not do this (lit. take care lest you do)!

D. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

277. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in questions and exclamations implying doubt, indignation, the impossibility of an act, obligation, or propriety. The Present is used referring to present time, the Imperfect referring to past. The negative is non. Thus:—

   quid faciam, what shall I do?
   ego redeam, I go back!
   huic cēdâmus! hūjus condicioâs audiâmus! are we to bow to him! are we to listen to his terms!
   quid facerem, what was I to do?
   hunc ego non diligam, should I not cherish this man?

a. These Deliberative Questions are usually purely Rhetorical in character, and do not expect an answer.

E. CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

278. The Subjunctive is used to indicate something as granted or conceded for the sake of argument. The Present is used for present time, the Perfect regularly for past. The negative is ne. Thus:—

   sit hōc vērōm, I grant that this is true (lit. let this be true);
   nē sint in senectūte vīrēs, I grant there is not strength in old age;
   fuerit malus civis aliūs; tibi quandō esse coepit, I grant that he was a bad citizen to others; when did he begin to be so toward you?

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

279. The Optative Subjunctive occurs in expressions of wishing. The negative is regularly ne.
1. The Present Tense, often accompanied by *utinam*, is used where the wish is conceived of *as possible*.

   *dī istaee prohībeant, may the gods prevent that!*
   *falsus utinam vātēs sim, oh that I may be a false prophet!*
   *nē veniant, may they not come!*

2. The Imperfect expresses, in the form of a wish, the *regret that something is not so now*; the Pluperfect that something *was not so in the past*. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by *utinam*; as,—

   *utinam istud ex animō dīcerēs, would that you were saying that in earnest (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest);*
   *Pēlīdēs utinam vītāset Apollīnis arcūs, would that Achilles had escaped the bow of Apollo;*
   *utinam nē nātus essem, would that I had not been born.*

### POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

**280.** The Potential Subjunctive expresses *a possibility*. The negative is *nōn*. The following uses are to be noted;—

1. **The 'May' Potential.**—The Potential Subjunctive may designate *a mere possibility* (English auxiliary *may*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus;—

   *dīcat alīquis, some one may say;*
   *dīxe rēt alīquis, some one may say.*

   *a. This construction is by no means frequent, and is confined mainly to a few phrases like those given as examples.*

2. **'Should'-'Would' Potential.**—The Potential Subjunctive may represent something as *depending upon a condition expressed or understood* (English auxiliary *should, would*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus;—

   *fortūnam citius reperiās quam retīneās, one would more quickly find Fortune than keep it (i.e. if one should make the trial);*
   *crēdiderim, I should believe.*

   *a. Here belongs the use of *velīm, mālim, nōlim*, as softened forms of statement for *volō, mālō, nōlō*. Thus:—*

   *velīm mihi ignōscās, I wish you would forgive me;*
   *nōlim putēs mē jocāri, I don't want you to think I'm joking.*

   *b. When the condition is expressed, we get one of the regular types of Conditional Sentences (see § 303); as,—*

   *diēs dēficētāt, si cōner ēnumērāre causās, time would fail if I should attempt to enumerate the reasons.*

3. **'Can'-'Could' Potential.**—In the Present and Imperfect the Potential occurs in the second person singular (with *indefinite* force; § 356, 3) of a few verbs of *perceiving*, *seeing*, *thinking*, and the like; as, —

   *videās, cernās, one can see, one can perceive;*
   *crēdērēs, one could believe;*
   *vidērēs, cernerēs, one could see, perceive;*
   *putārēs, one could imagine.*

4. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of the contrary-to-fact type (see § 304) are also Potential in character. By omission of the Protasis, such an Apodosis sometimes stands alone, particularly *velīm, nōlēm, mālēm*; as,—

   *velīm id quidem, I should wish that (i.e. were I bold enough).*
The Imperative.

281. The Imperative is used in commands, admonitions and entreaties (negative nē), as,—

ēgredere ex urbe, depart from the city;

mihi ignōsee, pardon me;

valē, farewell.

1. The Present is the tense of the Imperative most commonly used, but the Future is employed—

a) Where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in the apodosis of conditional sentences; as,—

rem vōbis prōpōnam; vōs eam penditōte, I will lay the matter before you; do you (then) consider it;

sī bene disputābit, tribuitō litterīs Graecīs, if he shall speak well, attribute it to Greek literature.

b) In laws, treaties, wills, maxims, etc.; as,—

cōnsulēs summum jūs habentō, the consuls shall have supreme power;

hominem mortuam in urbe nē sepelītō, no one shall bury a dead body in the city;

amicītīa rēgī Antiochō cum populō Rōmānō hīs legibus et condiciōnibus estō, let there be friendship between Antiochus and the Roman people on the following terms and conditions;

quārtae estō partīs Mārcus hērēs, let Marcus be heir to a fourth (of the property);

ignōscitō saepe alterī, numquam tibi, forgive your neighbor often, yourself never.

2. Except with the Future Imperative the negative is not used in classical prose. Prohibitions are regularly expressed in other ways. See § 276, b.

3. Questions in the Indicative introduced by quīn (why not?) are often equivalent to an Imperative or to the Hortatory Subjunctive; as,—

quīn abīs, go away! (lit. why don't you go away?);

quīn vōcem continētis, keep still! (lit. why don't you stop your voices?);

quīn equōs cōnscendimus, let us mount our horses (lit. why do we not mount our horses?)

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Clauses of Purpose.

282. 1. Clauses of Purpose are introduced most commonly by ut (utī), quō (that, in order that), nē (in order that not, lest), and stand in the Subjunctive, as,—

edimus ut vīvāmus, we eat that we may live;

adjūtā mé quō hoc fiat facilius, help me, in order that this may be done more easily;

portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī injūriām acciperent, he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury.

a. Quō, as a rule, is employed only when the purpose clause contains a comparative or a comparative idea. Occasional exceptions occur; as,—

haec faciunt quō Chremētem absterreant, they are doing this in order to frighten Chremes.

b. Ut nē is sometimes found instead of nē. Thus:—

ut nē quid neglegenter agāmus, in order that we may not do anything carelessly.

c. Ut nōn (not nē) is used where the negation belongs to some single word, instead of to the purpose clause as a whole. Thus:—

ut nōn ējectus ad aliēnōs, sed invītātus ad tuōs videāre, that you may seem not
driven out among strangers, but invited to your own friends.

d. To say 'and that not' or 'or that not,' the Latin regularly uses nēve (neu); as,—

\[ \text{ut cārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent, that the violence of these things might be lessened, and that they might not harm the bridge;} \]

\[ \text{profūgit, nē caperētur nēve interficerētur, he fled, that he might not be captured or killed.} \]

e. But neque (for nēve) is sometimes used in a second Purpose Clause when ut stands in the first, and, after the Augustan era, even when the first clause is introduced by nē.

f. Purpose Clauses sometimes stand in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun: as,—

\[ \text{hāc causā, ut pācem habērent, on this account, that they might have peace.} \]

2. A Relative Pronoun (qui) or Adverb (ubi, unde, quō) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as,—

\[ \text{Helvētīī lēgātōs mittunt, quī dicercunt, the Helvetii sent envoys to say (lit. who should say);} \]

\[ \text{haec habuī, dē senectūte quae dicercem, I had these things to say about old age;} \]

\[ \text{nōn habēbant quō sē recipercerent, they had no place to which to flee (lit. whither they might flee).} \]

\[ \text{a. Quī in such clauses is equivalent to ut is, ut ego, etc.; ubi to ut ibi; unde to ut inde; quō to ut eō.} \]

3. Relative Clauses of purpose follow dignus, indignus, and idōneus; as,—

\[ \text{idōneus fuit nēmō quem imitārēre, there was no one suitable for you to imitate (cf. nēmō fuit quem imitārēre, there was no one for you to imitate);} \]

\[ \text{dignus est quī aliquandō imperet, he is worthy to rule sometime.} \]

4. Purpose Clauses often depend upon something to be supplied from the context instead of upon the principal verb of their own sentences; as,—

\[ \text{ut haec omnia omittam, abīmus, to pass over all this, (I will say that) we departed.} \]

**Clauses of Characteristic.**

283. 1. A relative clause used to express a quality or characteristic of a general or indefinite antecedent is called a Clause of Characteristic, and usually stands in the Subjunctive; as,—

\[ \text{multa sunt, quae mentem acuunt, there are many things which sharpen the wits.} \]

Clauses of Characteristic are opposed to those relative clauses which are used merely to state some fact about a definite antecedent, and which therefore take the Indicative; as,—

\[ \text{Catō, senex jūcundus, quī Sapiēns appellātus est, Cato, a delightful old man, who was called 'The Wise.'} \]

The Clause of Characteristic implies 'a person of the sort that does something'; the Indicative relative clause implies 'a particular person who does something.'

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as, est quī; sunt quī; nēmō est quī; nūllus est quī; unus est quī; sōlus est quī; quis est quī; is quī; etc. Thus:—

\[ \text{sunt quī dīcant, there are (some) who say;} \]

\[ \text{nēmō est quī nesciat, there is nobody who is ignorant;} \]

\[ \text{sapientia est ūna quae maestitiam pellat, philosophy is the only thing that drives away sorrow;} \]

\[ \text{quae civitās est quae nōn ēvertī possit, what state is there that cannot be overthrown?} \]

\[ \text{nōn is sum quī improbōs laudem, I am not the sort of man that praises the wicked.} \]

\[ \text{a. Sometimes (very rarely in Cicero and Caesar) the clause of characteristic is used after comparatives; as,—} \]
nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adīgī posset, the enemy were not too far off for a dart to reach them (lit. further off than [a point] to which a dart could be cast).

3. The Clause of Characteristic often conveys an accessory notion of cause (since) or opposition (although). Thus:—

a) Cause. The relative is then frequently accompanied by ut, quīppe, utpote; as,—

ō fortūnāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs, O fortunate man, since you have found a Homer as the herald of your valor;

ut quī optimō jūre eam prōvinciam obtinuerit, since he held that province by excellent right.

b) Opposition:—

egomet quī sērō Graecās litterās attigissem, tamen complūrēs diēs Athēnīs commorātus sum, I, although I had taken up Greek literature late in life, nevertheless tarried several days at Athens.

4. Clauses of Characteristic may also be introduced by quīn = quī (quae, quod) nōn; as,—

nēmō est quīn saepe audierit, there is no one who has not often heard;

nēmō fuit militium quīn vulnerārētur, there was no one of the soldiers who was not wounded.

5. Related to Clauses of Characteristic are also phrases of the type:

quod sciam, so far as I know; quem (quam, quod), audierim, so far as I have heard.

Clauses of Result.

284. 1. Clauses of Result are usually introduced by ut (that, so that), negative ut nōn (so that not), and take the Subjunctive. The main clause often contains tautās, tālis, tot, is (= tālis), tam, ita, sīc, adeō, or some similar word. Thus:—

quīs tam dēmēns est ut suā voluntāte maecrat, who is so senseless as to mourn of his own volition?

Siciliam ita vāstāvit ut restituī in antīquum statum nōn possit, he so ravaged Sicily that it cannot be restored to its former condition;

mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucēs prohibēre possent, a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily stop them;

nōn is ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine ēvocārit, you are not so constituted that shame ever called you back from baseness.

2. A Result Clause is often introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb, quī (= ut is), quō (= ut eō), etc.; as,—

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere, nobody is so old as not to think he can live a year;

habētis eum cōnsulem quī pārēre vestrīs dēcretīs nōn dubitet, you have a consul such as does not hesitate to obey your decrees.

a. These Relative Clauses of Result are closely related to the Clause of Characteristic, and sometimes it is difficult to distinguish the two constructions. It is best to class the relative clause as one of Characteristic, unless the result idea is clear and unmistakable.

3. Result clauses may also be introduced by quīn = ut nōn; as,—

nihil tam difficile est quīn quaeerendō invēstigāri possit, nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered by searching;

nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur, no one is so steadfast as not to be thrown into confusion by a strange occurrence.
4. Note the use of *quam ut* (sometimes *quam* alone) to denote Result after comparatives; as,—

**urbs erat mūnitior quam ut prīmō impētū capī possēt,** the city was too strongly fortified to be taken at the first attack (lit. more strongly fortified than [so] that it could be taken, etc.).

**Causal Clauses.**

285. Causal clauses are introduced chiefly by the following particles:—

1. *Quod,* *quia,* *quiniam.*
2. *Cum.*
3. *Quandō.*

286. The use of moods is as follows:—

1. *Quod,* *quia,* *quiniam* take the Indicative when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker;* they take the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed *as that of another.* Thus:—

**Parthōs timeō quod diffidō cōpis nostrīs,** I fear the Parthians, because I distrust our troops.

**Themistocēs, quia non tūtus erat, Corcyram dēmigrāvit,** Themistocles, since he was not safe, moved to Corcyra.

**neque mē vīxisse paenitēt, quiniam bene vīxi,** I do not regret having lived, since I have lived well.

**Sōcratēs accūsātūs est quod corrumperet juventūtem,** Socrates was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young. (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

**Haedūl Caesarī grātiās ēgérunt quod sē percūlō liberāvissent,** the Haedui thanked Caesar because he had delivered them from danger. (The reason of the Haedui.)

**quīniam Mītiadēs dīcērē nōn possēt, verba prō cō fēcit Tīsagōrās, sīnse Mītiades could not speak, Tisagoras spoke for him.** (The reason of Tisagoras.)

**noctū ambulābāt Themistocēs, quod sumnum capere nōn possēt,** Themistocles used to walk at night because (as he said) he couldn't sleep.

*a.* Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* often stand in the Subjunctive in causal clauses as though the act of thinking or saying, and not the contents of the thought or language, constituted the reason. Thus:—

**Bellovacī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt quod sē suō nōmine cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent,** the Bellovacī did not furnish their complement, because they said they were going to wage war with the Romans on their own account.

*b.* *Nōn quod,* *nōn quō* (by attraction for *nōn eō quod*), *nōn quia,* *not that,* *not because;* and *nōn quod nōn,* *nōn quō nōn,* *nōn quīn,* *not that ... not;* not because *... not;* not but that, are usually employed merely to introduce a hypothetical reason, and hence take the Subjunctive; as,—

**id fēct, nōn quod vōs hanc dēfensīōnem dēsiderārē arbitrārēr, sed ut omnēs intellegērent, this I did, not because I thought you needed this defense, but that all might perceive;**

**Crassō commendātiōnem nōn sum pollicitus, nōn quīn eam valētrūm apud tē arbitrārēr, sed egēre mihi commendātiōne nōn vidēbatur,** I did not promise a recommendation to Crassus, not that I did not think it would have weight with you, but because he did not seem to me to need recommendation.

*c.* But clauses introduced by *nōn quod,* *nōn quīa* take the Indicative if *they state a fact,* even though that fact is denied to be the reason for something; as,—

**hōc ita sentiō, nōn quīa sum ipse augur, sed quīa sīc exāstimāre nōs est necesse, this I think, not because I am myself an augur (which I really am), but because it is necessary for us to think so.**

2. *Cum* causal regularly takes the Subjunctive; as,—
quae cum ita sint, since this is so;
cum sīs mortālis, quae mortālia sunt, cūrā, since you are mortal, care for what is mortal.

a. Note the phrase cum praeertim (praesertim cum), especially since; as,—
Haeduiōs accūsāt, praeertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum susceperit,
he blamed the Haedui, especially since he had undertaken the war at their entreaties.

3. Quando (less frequent than the other causal particles) governs the Indicative; as,—
id omittē, quando vōbīs ita placet, I pass over that, since you so wish.

Temporal Clauses introduced by Postquam, Ut, Ubi, Simul ac, etc.

287. 1. Postquam (posteāquam), after; ut, ubi, when; cum primum, simul, simul ac (simul atque), as soon as, when used to refer to a single past act regularly take the Perfect Indicative; as,—

Epaminondās postquam audivīt vīcisse Boeōtīōs, 'Satis inquit 'vīxi,'
Epaminondas, after he heard that the Boeotians had conquered, said, 'I have lived enough;'
id ut audivīt, Coreycram dēmigrāvit, when he heard this, he moved to Corcyra;
Caesar cum primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, Caesar, as soon as he could,
hurried to the army;
ubi dē Caesari adventū certōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, when they
were informed of Caesar’s arrival, they sent envoys to him.

a. The Historical Present may take the place of the Perfect in this construction.

2. To denote the repeated occurrence of an act, ut, ubi, simul atque, as often as, when following an historical tense, take the Pluperfect Indicative (compare §§ 288, 3; 302, 3); as,—

ut quisque Verris animūm offecerat, in lautumia statim coniciēbatūr,
whenever anybody had offended Verres’s feelings, he was forthwith put in the
stone-quarry;
hostēs, ubi aliōquēs ēgre dentēs conspexerant, adorīebantūr, whenever the enemy
had seen any men disembarking, they attacked them.

a. In Livy and succeeding historians the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to
denote this repeated occurrence of an act (Indefinite Frequency’); as,—
id ubi dixisset hastam mittēbat, whenever he had said that, he hurled a spear.

3. Occasionally the above conjunctions are followed by the Pluperfect Indicative of a single occurrence.
This is regularly the case with postquam in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (days,
months, years, etc.), such as post tertium annum quam, trienniō postquam. Thus:—

quīnque post diēbus quam Lūcā discesserat, ad Sardiniam vēnit five days after
he had departed from Luca he came to Sardinia;
postquam occupātēs Syrācūsae erant, prefectūs est Carthaginem, after Syracuse
had been seized, he set out for Carthage.

4. The Imperfect Indicative also sometimes occurs, to denote a continued state; as,—

postquam Rōmam adventābant, senātūs cōnsultus est, after they were on the
march toward Rome, the Senate was consulted;
postquam strūctī utriēque stābant, after they had been drawn up on both sides
and were in position.

5. Rarely postquam, posteāquam, following the analogy of cum, take the Subjunctive, but only in the
historical tenses; as,—

posteāquam sūmptuōsa fīeri fūnera coepissent, lēge sublāta sunt, after funerals
had begun to be elaborate, they were done away with by law.
Temporal Clauses introduced by Cum.

A. Cum referring to the past.

288. 1. Cum, when referring to the past, takes,—

A. The Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote the point of time at which something occurs.

B. The Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote the situation or circumstances under which something occurs.

Examples:—

**Indicative.**

an tum erās cōnsul, cum in Palātiō mea domus ārdēbat, or were you consul at the time when my house burned up on the Palatine?

crēdō tum cum Sicilia flōrēbat opibus et cōpīs magna artificia fuisse in eā insulā, I believe that at the time when Sicily was powerful in riches and resources there were great crafts in that island;

eō tempore pārūit cum pārēre necesse erat, he obeyed at the time when it was necessary to obey;

illō diē, cum est lāta lēx dē mē, on that day when the law concerning me was passed.

**Subjunctive.**

Lysander cum vellet Lycūrgī lēgēs commūtāre, prohibītus est, when Lysander desired to change the laws of Lycurgus, he was prevented;

Pythagorās cum in gēometriā quiddam novī invēnissent, Mūsīs bovem immolāsse dīcitur, when Pythagoras had discovered something new in geometry, he is said to have sacrificed an ox to the Muses.

a. Note that the Indicative is much less frequent in such clauses than the Subjunctive, and is regularly confined to those cases where the main clause has tum, eō diē, eō annō, eō tempore or some similar correlative of the cum. Sometimes it depends entirely upon the point of view of the writer whether he shall employ the Indicative or Subjunctive.

2. Cum Inversum. When the logical order of the clauses is inverted, we find cum with the Perfect Indicative or Historical Present, in the sense of when, when suddenly. The main clause in such cases often has jam, vix, aegrē, nōndum; as,—

jam Gallī ex oppidō fugere apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente prōcurrērunt, the Gauls were already preparing to flee, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth (logically, the matrons rushed forth as the Gauls were preparing to flee);

Trēvirī Labiēnum adorīri parābant, cum duās legiōnēs vēnisse cognōscunt, the Treviri were preparing to attack, when (suddenly) they learned that two legions had arrived.

3. To denote a recurring action in the past, cum is followed by the Indicative, particularly of the Pluperfect (compare §§ 287, 2; 302, 3); as,—

cum ād aliquod oppidum vēnerat, cādem lectīcā ad cubiculum dēserēbātur, whenever he had arrived at some town, he was (always) carried in the same litter to his room;

cum equītātus noster sē in agrōs ējēcerat, essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat, whenever our cavalry had advanced into the fields, he would send his charioteers out from the woods.

a. Sometimes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is thus used; as,—

saepē cum aliquem vidēret minus bene vestītum, suum amiculum dedit, often, wherever he saw some one more poorly clothed, he gave him his own mantle;

cum prōcucurrisset, Numidae effugiēbant, as often as they had advanced, the
Numidians ran away.
This construction is frequent in Livy and subsequent historians.

B. **Cum** referring to the present or future.

289. When *cum* refers to the present or future it regularly takes the indicative; as,—

*tum tua rés agitur, pariés cum proximus ärdet*, your own interests are at stake when your neighbor’s house is burning;

*cum vidēbis, tum sciešs*, when you see, then you will know.

*a.* The indicative of the present or future may denote also a recurring action; as,—

*stabilitās amicītiae confirmārī potest, cum hominēs cupidīnilibus imperābunt,*

*firm friendship can be established whenever men shall control their desires.*

C. Other uses of **Cum**.

290. 1. **Cum** Explicative. *Cum*, with the indicative, is sometimes used to indicate the identity of one act with another; as,—

*cum tacent clāmant*, their silence is a shout (lit. when they are silent, they shout).

2. **Cum ... tum**. When *cum ... tum* mean both ... and, the *cum*-clause is in the indicative; but when *cum* has the force of *while, though*, it may take the Subjunctive; as,—

*cum tē semper dēlixerim, tum tuīs factīs incēnsus sum*, while I have always loved you, at the same time I am stirred by your conduct.

Clauses introduced by *Antequam* and *Priusquam*.

A. With the Indicative.

291. **Antequam** and *priusquam* (often written *ante ... quam, prius ... quam*) take the indicative to denote an actual fact.

1. Sometimes the present or future perfect; as,—

*prius respondēs quam rogā*, you answer before I ask;

*nihil contrā disputābo priusquam dixerit*, I will say nothing in opposition, before he speaks.

2. Sometimes the perfect, especially after negative clauses; as,—

*nōn prius jugulāndī finīs fuit, quam Sulla omnēs suōs dīvitiās explēvit*, there was no end of murder until Sulla satisfied all his henchmen with wealth.

B. With the Subjunctive.

292. **Antequam** and *priusquam* take the subjunctive to denote an act as anticipated.

1. Thus the subjunctive may denote—

a) An act in preparation for which the main act takes place; as,—

*priusquam dīmīcārent, foedus īctum est*, i.e. in anticipation of the fight, a treaty was struck.

By an extension of this usage, the subjunctive is sometimes used of *general truths*, where the anticipatory notion has faded out; as,—

*tempestās minātur antequam surgat*, the tempest threatens before it rises.

b) An act anticipated and forestalled; as,—

*priusquam tēlum adiē possēt, omnis aciēs terga vertit*, before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.
c) An act anticipated and deprecated; as,—

animum omittunt priusquam locō démigrent, they die rather than quit their post.

2. After historical tenses the Imperfect Subjunctive is used, especially by some writers, where the notion of anticipation has practically vanished; as,—

sōl antequam sē abderet fugientem vīdit Antōnium, the sun before it set saw Antony fleeing.

Clauses introduced by Dum, Dōnec, Quoad.

293. 1. Dum, while, regularly takes the Indicative of the Historical Present; as,—

Alexander, dum inter prīmōrēs pugnat, sagittā ĵctus est. Alexander, while he was fighting in the van, was struck by an arrow;
dum haec geruntur, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit, while these things were being done, he arrived in the territory of the Venelli.

II. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, as long as, take the Indicative; as,—

dum anima est, spēs est, as long as there is life, there is hope;
Lacedaemonīorum gēns fortis fuit, dum Lycūrgō lēgēs vigēbant, the race of the Lacedaemonians was powerful, as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force;
Catō, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit, Cato, at long as he lived, increased in the fame of his virtues.

III. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until, take:—

1. The Indicative, to denote an actual event; as,—

dōnec rediit, fuit silentium, there was silence till he came;
ferrum in corpore reitinuit, quoad renūntiātum est Boeōtīōs vīcissee, he kept the iron in his body until word was brought that the Boeotians had conquered.
a. In Livy and subsequent historians dum and dōnec in this sense often take the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative; as,—
trepidātiōnis aliquantum ēdēbant dōnec tīmor quītēm fēcisset, they showed some trepidation, until fear produced quiet.

2. The Subjunctive, to denote anticipation or expectancy; as,—

exspectāvīt Caesar dum nāvēs convenīrent, Caesar waited for the ships to assemble;
dum litterae veniant, morābor, I shall wait for the letter to come.

Substantive Clauses.

294. A Substantive Clause is one which as a whole serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or stands in some other case relation.

A. Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive.

295. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive are used with the following classes of verbs:—

1. With verbs signifying to admonish, request, command, urge, persuade, induce, etc. (conjunctions ut, nē, or ut nē); as,—

postulō ut fiat, I demand that it be done (dependent form of the Jussive fiat, let it be done!);
ōrat, nē abēās, he begs that you will not go away;
militēs cohortātus est ut hostium impetum sustinērent, he exhorted his soldiers to withstand the attack of the enemy;
Helvētīs persuāsit ut exīrent, he persuaded the Helvetii to march forth.

a. Jubeō, command, order, regularly takes the Infinitive.

2. With verbs signifying to grant, concede, permit, allow, etc. (conjunction ut); as,—

huic concédō ut ea praerēat, I allow him to pass that by (dependent form of the Jussive ea praerēat, let him pass that by!);

cōnsul permīssum est ut duās legiōnēs scriberet, the consul was permitted to enroll two legions.

3. With verbs of hindering, preventing, etc. (conjunctions nē, quōminus, quīn); as,—

nē īūstrum perficeret, mors prohibuit, death prevented him from finishing the lustrum (dependent form after past tense of nē īūstrum perficīat, let him not finish, etc.);

prohibuit quōminus in ūnum coīrent, he prevented them from coming together;

nec quīn ērumpērēt, prohibērī poterat, nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.

a. Quīn is used only when the verb of hindering is accompanied by a negative, or stands in a question implying a negative; it is not necessarily used even then.

4. With verbs of deciding, resolving, etc. (conjunctions ut, nē, or ut nē); as,—

cōnstitueram ut prīdiē Īūs Aquīnī manērem, I had decided to remain at Aquinum on the 12th;

dēcrēvit senātus ut Opīmius vidēret, the Senate decreed that Opimius should see it;

convēnit ut ūnīs castra miscērentur, it was agreed that they should be united in one camp.

5. With verbs of striving, etc. (conjunctions ut, nē, or ut nē); as,—

fac ut eum exērēs, see to it that you prevail upon him!

cūrā ut vir sīs, see to it that you are a man!

labōrābat ut reliquās civitātēs adiungērēt, he was striving to join the remaining states to him.

a. Cōnōr, try, always takes the Infinitive.

NOTE.—Verbs of all the above classes also admit the Infinitive, especially in poetry.

6. With a few other expressions, such as necesse est, reliquus est, sequitur, licet, oportet; as,—

sequitur ut doceam, it remains for me to show;

licet redeās, you may return;

oportet loquāmur, we must speak.

On the absence of ut with licet and oportet, see paragraph 8.

7. Here also belong phrases of the type: nūlla causa est cūr, quīn; nōn est cūr, etc.; nihil est cūr, etc.; as,—

nūlla causa est cūr timeam, there is no reason why I should fear (originally Deliberative: why should I fear? There's no reason);

nihil est quīn dicam, there is no reason why I should not say.

8. Many of the above classes of verbs at times take the simple Subjunctive without ut. In such cases we must not recognize any omission of ut, but simply an earlier form of expression which existed before the ut-clause arose. This is regularly the case with necesse est, licet, and oportet; see 6. Other examples are:—

cōs moneō dēsīnānt, I warn them to stop;

huic imperat adeat civitātēs, he orders him to visit the states.
B. Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative.

296. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Optative occur:—

1. With verbs of wishing, desiring, especially cupiō, optō, volō, mālo (conjunctions ut, nē, ut nē); as,

   optō ut in hōc jūdiciō nēmō improbus reperiātur, I hope that in this court no bad man may be found (here ut reperiātur represents a simple optative of direct statement, viz. reperiātur, may no bad man be found!);

   cupiō nē veniat, I desire that he may not come.

   a. The simple Subjunctive (without ut) sometimes occurs with verbs of this class. (See § 295, 8.) Examples are: velim scribās, I wish you would write; vellem scrispsisset, I wish he had written.

2. With expressions of fearing (timeō, metuō, vereor, etc.). Here nē means that, lest, and ut means that not; as,—

   timeō nē veniat, I fear that he will come (originally: may he not come! I'm afraid [he will]);

   timeō ut veniat, I fear that he will not come (originally: may he come! I'm afraid [he won't]).

   a. Nē nōn sometimes occurs instead of ut, especially where the verb of fearing has a negative, or where the writer desires to emphasize some particular word in the dependent clause; as,—

      nōn vereor ne hōc nōn fiat, I am not afraid that this will not happen;

      vereor nē exercitum firmum habēre nōn possit, I fear that he is unable (nōn possit) to have a strong army.

C. Substantive Clauses of Result.

297. Substantive Clauses of Result (introduced by ut, ut nōn) are a development of pure Result clauses, and occur with the following classes of words:—

1. As object clauses after verbs of doing, accomplishing (especially faciō, efficiō, cōnstruō). Thus:—

   gravitās morīb facit ut medicīnā egeāmus, the severity of disease makes us need medicine.

2. As the subject of several impersonal verbs, particularly fit, efficītur, accidīt, čenīt, contingit, accēdit, fierī potest, fore, sequītur, relinquītur. Thus:—

   ex quō efficītur, ut volupṭās nōn sit summum bonum, from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good;

   ita fit, ut nēmō esse possit beāitus, thus it happens that no one can be happy;

   accēdēbat ut nāves deessent, another thing was the lack of ships (lit. it was added that ships were lacking).

3. As predicate or appositive after expressions like jūs est, mōs est, cōnstruō est; also after neuter pronouns, hōc, illud, etc. Thus:—

   est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus excellere, it is the way of men not to wish the same person to excel in many things.

D. Substantive Clauses introduced by Quīn.

298. Substantive Clauses introduced by quīn (used sometimes as subject, sometimes as object) occur after negative and interrogative expressions of dubt, omission, and the like, particularly after nōn dubitō, I do not doubt; quis dubitat, who doubts?; nōn (hād) dubium est, there is no doubt. The mood is the Subjunctive. Examples:—

   quis dubitat quīn in virtūte divītiae sint, who doubts that in virtue there are
riches?
non dubium erat quin venturus esset, there was no doubt that he was about to come.
a. In Nepos, Livy, and post-Augustan writers an Infinitive sometimes takes the place of the quin-clause after non dubito; as,—
non dubitatum inventos esse, we do not doubt that men were found
b. Non dubito, I do not hesitate, is regularly followed by the Infinitive, though sometimes by a quin-clause.

E. Substantive Clauses Introduced by Quod.

299. 1. Quod, the fact that, that, introduces Substantive Clauses in the Indicative. This construction occurs especially—

a) In apposition with a preceding demonstrative, as hoc, id, illud, illa, ex eo, inde, etc.
Thus:—
illud est admiratione dignum, quod captvam reteniendam censuit, this is especially worthy of admiration, that he thought the prisoners ought to be kept;
hoc uno praestamum vel maximam ferit, quod colloquium inter nos, in this one respect we are especially superior to the beasts, that we talk with each other.
b) After bene fit, bene accidit, male fit, bene facere, miror, etc.; as,—
bene mihi evenit, quod mittor ad mortem, it is well for me that I am sent to death;
bene fecisti quod mansisti, you did well in remaining.

2. Quod at the beginning of the sentence sometimes has the force of as regards the fact that. Thus:—
quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traduci, id mei munendi causa faci, as regards the fact that I am transporting a multitude of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the sake of strengthening myself;
quod me Agammenona emulatur putas, falleres, as regards your thinking that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.

F. Indirect Questions.

300. 1. Indirect Questions are Substantive Clauses used after verbs of asking, inquiring, telling, and the like. They take their verb in the Subjunctive. Like Direct Questions (see § 162) they may be introduced—

a) By Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs; as,—
dic mihi ubi fueris, quid feceris, tell me where you were, what you did;
oculis judicari non potest in utram partem fluat Arar, it cannot be determined by the eye in which direction the Arar flows;
bis bina quot essent, nesciebat, he did not know how many times two were.

NOTE.—Care should be taken to distinguish Indirect Questions from Relative Clauses. The difference between the two appears clearly in the following:—
effugere nemo id potest quod futurum est, no one can escape what is destined to come to pass; but saepe autem ne uile quidem est scire quid futurum sit, but often it is not even useful to know what is coming to pass.
b) By num or -ne, without distinction of meaning; as,—
Epaminondas quaevevit num salus esset clipeus, or salvisne esset clipeus,
Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe;
disputatur num interire virtus in homine possit, the question is raised whether virtue can die in a man;
ex Socrate quaesitum est nonnique Archelau beatum putaret, the question was asked of Socrates whether he did not think Archelaus happy.
NOTE.—Nōnne in Indirect Questions occurs only after quaeřō, as in the last example above.

2. Often the Indirect Question represents a Deliberative Subjunctive of the direct discourse; as,—

nescī quid faciam, I do not know what to do. (Direct: quid faciam, what shall I do?)

3. After verbs of expectation and endeavor (exspectō, cōnor, expeītor, temptō) we sometimes find an Indirect Question introduced by sī; as,—

cōnuntur sī perrumpere possint, they try whether they can break through.

a. Sometimes the governing verb is omitted; as,—

pergit ad proximam spēluncam sī forte ēō vēstigia ferrent, he proceeded to the nearest cave (to see) if the tracks led thither.

4. Indirect Double Questions are introduced in the main by the same particles as direct double questions (§ 162, 4); viz.;—

utrum ... an;
-ne ... an;
—— ... an;
—— ... ne.

Examples:—

quaeřō utrum vērum an falsum sit, I ask whether it
quaeřō vērumne an falsum sit, is true or false?
quaeřō vērum an falsum sit,
quaeřō vērum falsumne sit,

a. ’Or not’ in the second member of the double question is ordinarily expressed by necne, less frequently by an nōn; as,—

dī utrum sint necne, quaeřitur, it is asked whether there are gods or not.

5. Haud scī an, nescī an, by omission of the first member of the double question, occur with the Subjunctive in the sense: I am inclined to think, probably, perhaps; as,—

haud scī an ita sit, I am inclined to think this is so.

6. In early Latin and in poetry the Indicative is sometimes used in indirect Questions.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

301. Conditional Sentences are compound sentences (§ 164) consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or condition), usually introduced by sī, nisi, or sīn, and the Apodosis (or conclusion). There are the following types of Conditional Sentences:—

First Type.—Nothing Implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case.

302. 1. Here we regularly have the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. Any tense may be used; as,—

sī hōc crēdis, errās, if you believe this, you are mistaken;

nātūram sī sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus, if we follow Nature, we shall never go astray;

sī hōc dixisti, errāstī, if you said this, you were in error.

2. Sometimes the Protasis takes the Indefinite Second Person Singular (§ 356, 3) of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with the force of the Indicative; as,—

memoria minuitur, nisi cam exercēas, memory is impaired unless you exercise it.

3. Here belong also those conditional sentences in which the Protasis denotes a repeated action (compare §§ 287, 2; 288, 3); as,—
sū quis equitum dēciderat, peditēs circumsistēbant, if any one of the horsemen fell, the foot-soldiers gathered about him.

a. Instead of the Indicative, Livy and subsequent writers employ the Subjunctive of the Historical tenses in the Protasis to denote repeated action; as,—

sī dicendō quis diem eximeret, if (ever) anybody consumed a day in pleading; sī quandō adsīdēret, if ever he sat by.

4. Where the sense demands it, the Apodosis in conditional sentences of the First Type may be an Imperative or one of the Independent Subjunctives (Hortatory, Deliberative, etc.); as,—

sī hōc crēditis, tacēte, if you believe this, be silent;

sī hōc crēdimus, taceāmus, if we believe this, let us keep silent.

Second Type.—'Should'-'Would' Conditions.

303. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive (of the Present or Perfect tense) in both Protasis and Apodosis; as,—

sī hōc dīcās, errēs, or sī hōc dīxerīs, errāverīs, if you should say this, you would be mistaken;

sī velim Hannibalīs proelia omnia dēscībere, dīēs mē dēficiat, if I should wish to describe all the battles of Hannibal, time would fail me;

mentiar, sī negem. I should lie, if I should deny it;

haec sī tēcum patria loquātur, nōnne impertrāre dēbeat, if your country should plead thus with you, would she not deserve to obtain her request?

a. The Subjunctive in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of this type is of the Potential variety.

b. Sometimes we find the Indicative in the Apodosis of sentences of the Second Type, where the writer wishes to assert the accomplishment of a result more positively; as,—

aliter sī faciat, nūllam habēt auctōritātem, if he should do otherwise, he has no authority.

Third Type.—Supposed Case Represented as Contrary to Fact.

304. 1. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to present time, and the Pluperfect referring to past; as,—

sī amīcī meī adessent, opīs nōn indigērēm, if my friends were here, I should not lack assistance;

sī hōc dixissēs, errāssēs, if you had said this, you would have erred;

sapientiā nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficēret, philosophy would not be desired, if it accomplished nothing;

cōnsiliō, ratiō, sententia nisi essent in senibus, nōn summum cōnsiliō majōrēs nostrī appellāssent senātum, unless deliberation, reason, and wisdom existed in old men, our ancestors would not have called their highest deliberative body a senate.

2. Sometimes the Imperfect Subjunctive is found referring to the past, especially to denote a continued act, or a state of things still existing; as,—

Laelius, Furius, Catō sī nihil litterās adjuvārentur, numquam sē ad ēārum studiōm contulissent. Laelius, Furius, and Cato would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters, unless they had been (constantly) helped by them;

num igitur sī ad centēsimum annum vīxisset, senectūtis eum suae paenitēret, if he had lived to his hundredth year, would he have regretted (and now be regretting) his old age?

3. The Apodosis in conditional sentences of this type sometimes stands in the Indicative (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect), viz.—
a) Frequently in expressions of ability, obligation, or necessity; as,—

*nisi felicitās in sācordiam vertisset, exuere jugum potuērunt*, unless their prosperity had turned to folly, they could have thrown off the yoke;

NOTE.—In sentences of this type, however, it is not the possibility that is represented as-contrary-to-fact, but something to be supplied in thought from the context. Thus in the foregoing sentence the logical apodosis is *et exuissent* understood (and they would have shaken it off). When the possibility itself is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used.

*eum patris locō colere dēbēbās, sī ālla in tē piētās esset*, you ought to revere him as a father, if you had any sense of devotion.

b) With both the Periphrastic Conjunctions; as,—

*sī Sēstius oceāns esset, fuiśtisne ad arma itūrī, if Sestius had been slain, would you have proceeded to arms?

*sī ūnum diem morātī essētis, mōriendum omnibus fuit*, if you had delayed one day, you would all have had to die.

**Protasis expressed without Sī.**

305. 1. The Protasis is not always expressed by a clause with sī, but may be implied in a word, a phrase, or merely by the context; as,—

*aliōqué haec nōn scriberentur*, otherwise (i.e. if matters were otherwise) *these things would not be written*;

*nōn potestis, volupṭāte omnia dirigentēs, retinēre virtūtem*, you cannot retain virtue, if you direct everything with reference to pleasure.

2. Sometimes an Imperative, or a Jussive Subjunctive, serves as Protasis. Thus:—

*crās petitō, dabitur*, if you ask to-morrow, it shall be given you (lit. ask to-morrow, etc.);

*haec reputent, vidēbunt*, if they consider this, they will see (lit. let them consider, etc.);

*rogēs Zēnōnem, respondeat*, if you should ask Zeno, he would answer.

**Use of Nisi, Sī Nōn, Sīn.**

306. 1. Nisi, unless, negatives the entire protasis; sī nōn negatives a single word; as,—

_ferreus essem, nisi tē amārem*, I should be hard-hearted unless I loved you; but—

_ferreus essem, sī tē nōn amārem*, I should be hard-hearted if I did NOT love you.

In the first example, it is the notion of *loving you* that is negativated, in the second, the notion of *loving*.

2. Sī nōn (sī minus) is regularly employed:—

a) When an apodosis with at, tamen, certē follows; as,—

*dolōrem sī nōn potuērō frangere, tamen occultābō*, if I cannot crush my sorrow, yet I will hide it.

b) When an affirmative protasis is repeated in negative form; as,—

*sī feceris, magnam habēbō grātiam; sī nōn feceris, ignōscam*, if you do it, I shall be deeply grateful; if you do not do it, I shall pardon you.

a. But if the verb is omitted in the repetition, only sī minus or sīn minus is admissible; as,—

*hōc sī assecūtus sum, gaudeō; sī minus, mē cōnsōlor*, if I have attained this, I am glad; if not, I console myself.

3. Sīn. Where one protasis is followed by another opposed in meaning, but affirmative in form, the second is introduced by sīn; as,—

_hunc mihī timōrem ēripe; sī vērus est, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsīnam, relieve me of this fear; if it is well founded, that I may not be destroyed;
but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear.

4. Nisi has a fondness for combining with negatives (nōn, nēmō, nihil); as,—

nihil cōgitāvit nisi caedem, he had no thought but murder.

a. Nōn and nisi are always separated in the best Latinity.

5. Nisi forte, nisi vērō, nisi sī, unless perchance, unless indeed (often with ironical force), take the Indicative; as,—

nisi vērō, quia perfecta rēs nōn est, nōn vidētur pūnienda, unless indeed, because
an act is not consummated, it does not seem to merit punishment.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison.

307. 1. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by the particles, ac sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam sī, velut sī, or simply by velut or tamquam. They stand in the Subjunctive mood and regularly involve an ellipsis (see § 374, 1), as indicated in the following examples:—

tantus patrēs metus cēpit, velat sī jam ad portās hostis esset, as great fear seized
the senators as (would have seized them) if the enemy were already at the gates;

sed quid ego hīs testibus ūtōr quasi rēs dubia aut obscrūra sit, but why do I use
these witnesses, as (I should do) if the matter were doubtful or obscure;

serviam tibi tam quasi ēmerīs mē argentō, I will serve you as though you had
bought me for money.

2. Note that in sentences of this kind the Latin observes the regular principles for the Sequence of Tenses. Thus after principal tenses the Latin uses the Present and Perfect (as in the second and third examples), where the English uses the Past and Past Perfect.

Concessive Clauses.

308. The term ‘Concessive’ is best restricted to those clauses developed from the Jussive Subjunctive which have the force of granted that, etc.; (see § 278) as,—

sit fūr, sit sacrilegus, at est bonus imperātor, granted that he is a thief and a
robber, yet he is a good commander;

haec sint falsa, granted that this is false;

nē sit summum malum dolor, malum certē est, granted that pain is not the
greatest evil, yet it is certainly an evil.

Adversative Clauses with Quamvīs, Quamquam, etc.

309. Clauses introduced by quamvīs, quamquam, etśī, tametsī, cum, although, while often classed as
‘Concessive,’ are yet essentially different from genuine Concessive clauses. As a rule, they do not grant
or concede anything, but rather state that something is true in spite of something else. They accordingly
emphasize the adversative idea, and are properly Subordinate Adversative Clauses. The different
particles used to introduce these clauses have different meanings and take different constructions, as
follows:—

1. Quamvīs, however much, although, does not introduce a statement of fact, but represents an act
merely as conceived. It is followed by the Subjunctive, usually of the present tense; as,—

hominēs quamvīs in turbidibus rēbus sint, tamen interdum animās relaxantur, in
however stirring events men may engage, yet at times they relax their energies;

nōn est potestās opitulandī rēi publicae quamvīs ea premātur periculīs, there is
no opportunity to succor the state, though it be beset by dangers.

2. Quamquam, etśī, tametsī, although, introduce a statement of fact, and are followed by the
Indicative (of any tense); as,—

quamquam omnis virtūs nōs allicit, tamen jūstitia id maximē efficit, although all
virtue attracts us, yet justice does so especially;

Caesar, et si nōndum consilium hostium cognōverat, tamen id quod accidit suspicābātur, Caesar, though he did not yet know the plans of the enemy, yet was suspecting what actually occurred.

a. Et si, although, must be distinguished from et si, even if. The latter is a conditional particle and takes any of the constructions admissible for si. (See §§ 302-304.)

3. Cum, although, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—

Atticus honorēs nōn petīt, cum eī patērent, Atticus did not seek honors, though they were open to him.

4. Licet sometimes loses its verbal force (see § 295, 6) and sinks to the level of a conjunction with the force of although. It takes the Subjunctive, Present or Perfect; as,—

licet omnēs terrōrēs impendea, succurram, though all terrors hang over me, (yet) I will lend aid.

5. Quamquam, with the force and yet, is often used to introduce principal clauses; as,—

quamquam quid loquor, and yet why do I speak?

6. In post-Augustan writers quamquam is freely construed with the Subjunctive, while quamvis is often used to introduce statements of fact, and takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Thus:—

quamquam movērētur hīs vōcibus, although he was moved by these words;
quamvis multī opinārentur, though many thought;
quamvis īnflētō animō pervēnerās, though you had come with hostile intent.

Clauses with Dum, Modo, Dummodo, denoting a Wish or a Proviso.

310. These particles are followed by the Subjunctive (negative nē) and have two distinct uses:—

I. They are used to introduce clauses embodying a wish entertained by the subject of the leading verb; as,—

multī honesta neglegunt dummodo potentiam cōnsequantur, many neglect honor in their desire to obtain power (if only they may attain);
omnia postposuī, dum praecepīs patris pārērem, I made everything else secondary, in my desire to obey the injunctions of my father;
nīl obstat tibi, dum nē sit dtōr alter, nothing hinders you in your desire that your neighbor may not be richer than you.

II. They are used to express a proviso (provided that); as,—

ōderint, dum metuant, let them hate, provided they fear;
manent ingēnia senibus, modo permaneant studium et industria, old men retain their faculties, provided only they retain their interest and vigor;
nūbant, dum nē dōs fiat comes, let them marry, provided no dowry goes with it.

Relative Clauses.

311. Relative Clauses are introduced by Relative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

312. 1. Relative clauses usually stand in the Indicative Mood, especially clauses introduced by those General Relatives which are doubled or have the suffix -oumque; as,—

quidquid id est, tīmeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, whatever it is, I fear the Greeks even when they offer gifts;
quidquid oritur, quālecumque est, causam ā nātūrā habet, whatever comes into being, of whatever sort it is, has its primal cause in Nature.

2. Any simple Relative may introduce a conditional sentence of any of the three types mentioned in §§
302-304; as,—

_qui hōc dicit, errāt_‚ he who says this is mistaken (First Type);
_qui hōc dicat, errēt_‚ he would be mistaken who should say this (Second Type);
_qui hōc dīxisset, errāsset_‚ the man who had said this would have been mistaken.

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE (ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA).**

313. When the language or thought of any person is reproduced without change, that is called Direct Discourse (Ōrātiō Recta); as, _Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'_ When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of saying, _thinking, etc._, that is called Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua); as, _Caesar said that the die was cast; Caesar thought that his troops were victorious._

_a._ For the verbs most frequently employed to introduce Indirect Discourse, see § 331.

**MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.**

**Declarative Sentences.**

314. 1. Declarative Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as,—

_Rēgulus dīxit quam diū jūre jūrandō hostium tenērētur nōn esse sē senātōrem._

_Regulus said that as long as he was held by his pledge to the enemy he was not a senator._ (Direct: _quam diū teneor nōn sum senator._)

2. The verb of _saying, thinking, etc._, is sometimes to be inferred from the context; as,—

_tum Rōmus lēgātōs circā vicīnās gentēs mīsit qui societātem cōnūbiumque pērerent: urbēs quoque, ut cētera, ex infīmō nāscī,_ then Romulus sent envoys among the neighboring tribes, to ask for alliance and the right of intermarriage, (saying that) cities, like everything else, start from a modest beginning.

3. Subordinate clauses which contain an explanatory statement of the writer and so are not properly a part of the Indirect Discourse, or which emphasize the fact stated, take the Indicative; as,—

_nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum contendere,_ it was reported that Ariovistus was hastening to seize Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani.

4. Sometimes a subordinate clause is such only in its external form, and in sense is principal. It then takes the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. This occurs especially in case of relative clauses, where _qui_ is equivalent to _et hic, nam hic, etc._; as,—

_dīxit urbem Athēnēniōn prōpugnāculum oppositum esse barbarīs, apud quam jam bis classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium,_ he said the city of the Athenians had been set against the barbarians like a bulwark, near which (= and near it) the fleets of the King had twice met disaster.

5. The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted when it refers to the same person as the subject of the leading verb, or can easily be supplied from the context; as,—

_cum id nescire Māgō dīceret, when Mago said he did not know this (for sē nescire)._

**Interrogative Sentences.**

315. 1. Real questions of the Direct Discourse, upon becoming indirect, are regularly put in the Subjunctive; as,—

_Ariovistus Caesarī respondit: sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Quid sībi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret, Ariovistus replied to Caesar that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did_
he (Caesar) mean? Why did he come into his domain? (Direct: quid tibi vis? cūr in meās possessionēs venīs?)

2. Rhetorical questions, on the other hand, being asked merely for effect, and being equivalent in force to emphatic statements, regularly stand in the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Thus:—

quid est levius (lit. what is more trivial, = nothing is more trivial) of the Direct Discourse becomes quid esse levius in the Indirect.

3. Deliberative Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse remain unchanged in mood in the Indirect: as,—

quid faceret, what was he to do? (Direct: quid faciat?)

Imperative Sentences.

316. All Imperatives or Jussive Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse appear as Subjunctives in the Indirect; as,—

mīlitēs certōrēs fecit paulisper intermedium proelium, he told the soldiers to stop the battle for a little. (Direct: intermittē.)

a. The negative in such sentences is nē; as,—

nē suae virtūtī tribueret, let him not attribute it to his own valor!

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

A. Tenses of the Infinitive.

317. These are used in accordance with the regular principles for the use of the Infinitive as given in § 270.

a. The Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative of Direct Discourse. Thus:—

sciō tē haec ēgisse may mean—

I know you were doing this. (Direct: haec agēbās.)

I know you did this. (Direct: haec ēgīstī.)

I know you had done this. (Direct: haec ēgerās.)

B. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

318. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal if the verb of saying is Principal; Historical if it is Historical. Yet for the sake of vividness, we often find the Present Subjunctive used after an historical tense (Repraesentātiō); as,—

Caesar respondit, sī obsidēs dentur, sēsē pācem esse factūrum, Caesar replied that, if hostages be given, he would make peace.

a. For the sequence after the Perfect Infinitive, see § 268, 2.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Conditional Sentences of the First Type.

319. A. THE APODOSIS. Any tense of the Indicative is changed to the corresponding tense of the Infinitive (§§ 270; 317, a).

B. THE PROTASIS. The protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive which are required by the Sequence of Tenses.

Examples:—

DIRECT.  INDIRECT.
si hoc crēdis, errās,

dicō, si hoc crēdās, tē errāre;
dīxī, si hoc crēderēs, tē errāre.

si hoc crēdēs, errābis,
dicō, si hoc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse;
dīxī, si hoc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.

si hoc crēdideris, errābis,
dicō, si hoc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse;
dīxī, si hoc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.

si hoc crēdēbās, errāvīstī,
dicō, si hoc crēderēs, tē errāvīsse;
dīxī, si hoc crēderēs, tē errāvīsse.

a. Note that a Future Perfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse regularly appears in the Indirect as a Future Subjunctive after a principal tense, and as a Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense.

Conditional Sentences of the Second Type.


B. The Protasis. The Protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive demanded by the sequence of tenses.

Examples:—

si hoc crēdās, errēs,  
dicō, si hoc crēdās, tē errātūrum esse;  
dīxī, si hoc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse;

Conditional Sentences of the Third Type.

321. A. The Apodosis.

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes the Future Infinitive.

a. But this construction is rare, being represented in the classical Latinity by a single example (Caesar, V. 29. 2). Some scholars question the correctness of this passage.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes:—

a) In the Active Voice the Infinitive in -ūrus fuīsse.
b) In the Passive Voice it takes the form futūrum fuīsse ut with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

B. The Protasis. The protasis in Conditional Sentences of this type always remains unchanged.

Examples:—

si hoc crēderēs, errārēs,
dicō (dīxī), si hoc crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse;

si hoc crēdīdissēs, errāvīssēs,
dicō (dīxī), si hoc crēdīdissēs, tē errātūrum fuīsse;

si hoc dixissēs, pūnītus essēs.
dicō (dīxī), si hoc dixissēs, futūrum fuīsse ut pūnīrēris.

322. When an apodosis of a conditional sentence of the Third Type referring to the past is at the same time a Result clause or a quīn-clause (after nōn dubītō, etc.), it stands in the Perfect Subjunctive in the form -ūrus fuerīm; as,—

īta terrītī sunt, ut arma trāditurī fuerint,[57] nisi Caesar subītō advēnisset, they were so frightened that they would have given up their arms, had not Caesar suddenly arrived;

nōn dubītō quīn, si hoc dixissēs, errātūrus fuerīs,[57] I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have made a mistake.

a. This peculiarity is confined to the Active Voice. In the Passive, such sentences, when they become dependent, remain unchanged; as,—

nōn dubītō quīn, si hoc dixissēs, vituperātus essēs, I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have been blamed.
b. When an Indirect Question becomes an apodosis in a conditional sentence of the Third Type, -urus fuerim (rarely -urus fuissem) is used; as,—

quaerō, num, sī hōc dixisses, errātūrus fueris (or fuissēs).

c. Potuī, when it becomes a dependent apodosis in sentences of this Type, usually changes to the Perfect Subjunctive; as,—

concursū tōfius civitātis dēfēnsī sunt, ut frigidissimōs quoque orātōres populi studia excitāre potuerint, they were defended before a gathering of all the citizens, so that the interest of the people would have been enough to excite even the most apathetic orators.

IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

323. The Subjunctive is often used in subordinate clauses whose indirect character is merely implied by
the context; as,—

dēmōnstrābantur mihi praetereā, quae Socratēs dē immortālītāte animōrum disseruisset, there were explained to me besides, the arguments which Socrates had set forth concerning the immortality of the soul (i.e. the arguments which, it was said, Socrates had set forth);

Paetus omnēs librōs quōs pater suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit, Paetus gave me all
the books which (as he said) his father had left.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

324. 1. Subordinate clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive are frequently attracted into the same
mood especially when they do not express a fact, but constitute an essential part of one complex idea; as,—

nēmō avārus adhuc inventus est, cui, quod habēret, esset satis, no miser has yet been found who was satisfied with what he had;

cum diversās causās afferrent, dum fōrmam suī quisque et animī et ingenī redherent, as they brought forward different arguments, while each mirrored his own individual type of mind and natural bent;

quod ego fatear, pudēat? should I be ashamed of a thing which I admit?

2. Similarly a subordinate clause dependent upon an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive when the two
form one closely united whole; as,—

mōs est Athēnēs quotannis in cōntiūne laudārī eōs quī sint in prōeliīs interfēctī, it
is the custom at Athens every year for those to be publicly eulogized who have
been killed in battle. (Here the notion of ‘praising those who fell in battle’ forms an
inseparable whole.)

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

325. These are the Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine. All of these partake of the nature of the
Verb, on the one hand, and of the Noun or Adjective, on the other. Thus:—

As Verbs,—

a) They may be limited by adverbs;

b) They admit an object;

c) They have the properties of voice and tense.

As Nouns or Adjectives,—

a) They are declined;

b) They take Noun or Adjective constructions.
Infinitive without Subject Accusative.

326. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

NOTE.—The Infinitive was originally a Dative, and traces of this are still to be seen in the poetical use of the Infinitive to express purpose; as, nec dulcēs occurrent ocla nātī praeripere, and no sweet children will run to snatch kisses.

A. As Subject.

327. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of esse and various impersonal verbs, particularly opus est, necesse est, oportet, juvat, délectat, placet, libet, licet, praestat, decet, pudet, interest, etc.; as,—

dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī, it is sweet and noble to die for one's country;
virōrum est fortium toleranter dolōrem patī, it is the part of brave men to endure pain with patience;

senātūr placuit légātōs mittere, the Senate decided (lit. it pleased the Senate) to send envoys.

2. Even though the Infinitive itself appears without Subject, it may take a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the Accusative; as,—

aliud est drācundum esse, aliud trātum, it is one thing to be irascible, another to be angry;
impūne quaelibet facere, id est rēgem esse, to do whatever you please with impunity, that is to be a king.

a. But when licet is followed by a Dative of the person, a Predicate Noun or Adjective with esse is attracted into the same case; as, licuit esse otiōsō Themistocli, lit. it was permitted to Themistocles to be at leisure. So sometimes with other Impersonals.

B. As Object.

328. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, to denote another action of the same subject, particularly after

volō, cupiō, mālo, nōlo, débeo, ought;
statuō, cōnstituō, decide;
audeō, dare;
studēo, contendēo, strive;
pārō, prepare (so pārārus);
inciπiō, coeπi, īnstituō, begin;
pergō, continue;
dēsinō, désistō, cease;
possum, can;
cōnors, try;
cōgitō, meditor, purpose, intend;
neglegō, neglect;
verēor, timeō, fear;
mātūrō, festīnō, properō, contendō, hasten;
assuēscō, cōnsuēscō, accustom myself (so assuētus, īnсуētus, assuēfactus);
discō, learn;
sćiō, know how;
soleō, am wont;

as,—

tū hōs intuērī audēs, do you dare to look on these men?

Démosthenēs ad flūctūs maris déclāmāre solēbat, Demosthenes used to declaim by the waves of the sea.

2. A Predicate Noun or Adjective with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative; as,—

beātus esse sine virtūte nēmō potest, no one can be happy without virtue;

Catō esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat, Cato preferred to be good rather than to seem so.
Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

329. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

A. As Subject.

330. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative (like the simple Infinitive) is used as Subject with esse and Impersonal verbs, particularly with aequum est, utile est, turpe est, fāma est, spēs est, fas est, nefās est, opus est, necessēs est, oportet, cōnstat, praestat, licet, etc.; as,—

 nihil in bellō oportet contemnī, nothing ought to be despised in war;
apertum est sibi quemque nātūrā esse cārum, it is manifest that by nature everybody is dear to himself.

B. As Object.

331. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after the following classes of verbs:

I. Most frequently after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like (Verba Sentiendo et Déclarando). This is the regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse. Verbs that take this construction are, among others, the following: sentiō, audiō, videō, cognōscō; putō, jūdicō, spērō, cōnfidō; scio, meminī; dicō, affirmō, negō (say that ... not), trādō, nārrō, fāteor, respondēō, scrībō, prōmittō, glōriō. Also the phrases: certīōrem faciō (inform), memoriā teneō (remember), etc.

Examples:—

Epicūrēi putant cum corporibus simul animōs interīre, the Epicureans think that the soul perishes with the body;
Thalēs dixit aquam esse initium rērum, Thales said that water was the first principle of the universe;
Dēmōcritus negat quicquid esse sempiternum, Democritus says nothing is everlasting;
spērō eum ventūrum esse, I hope that he will come.

II. With jubeō, order, and vetō, forbid; as,—

Caesar militēs pontem facere jussit, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.
a. When the name of the person who is ordered or forbidden to do something is omitted, the Infinitive with jubeō and vetō is put in the Passive; as, Caesar pontem fieri jussit.

III. With patior and sinō, permit, allow; as,—

nullō sē implicāri negōtiō passus est, he did not permit himself to be involved in any difficulty.

IV. With volō, nōlo, mālo, cupiō, when the Subject of the Infinitive is different from that of the governing verb; as,—

nec mihi hunc errorem extorquēri volō, nor do I wish this error to be wrested from me;
cās rēs jactāri nōlēbat, he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed;
tē tuā frūtī virūtū cupimus, we desire that you enjoy your worth.

a. When the Subject of both verbs is the same, the simple Infinitive is regularly used in accordance with § 328, 1. But exceptions occur, especially in case of esse and Passive Infinitives as,—
cupiō mē esse clēmentem, I desire to be lenient;
Timoleōn mālit sē diligī quam metuī, Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than feared.

b. Volō also admits the Subjunctive, with or without ut; nōlo the Subjunctive alone. (See § 296, 1, a.)
V. With Verbs of emotion (joy, sorrow, regret, etc.), especially gaudeō, laetor, doleō; aegřē ferō, molestē ferō, graviter ferō, am annoyed, distressed; mǐrō, queror, indignor; as,—

                                             gaudeō tē salvum advenire, I rejoice that you arrive safely;
                                             nōn molestē ferunt sē libidinum vinculis laxātōs ēsse, they are not troubled at being released from the bonds of passion;
                                             mǐrō tē ad mē nihil scribere, I wonder that you write me nothing.

a. Instead of an Infinitive these verbs also sometimes admit a quod-clause as Object. (See § 299.) Thus:—

                                             mǐrō quod nōn loqueris, I wonder that you do not speak.

VI. Some verbs which take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing (§ 178, 1), may substitute an Infinitive for the second Accusative; as,—

                                             cōgō tē hōc facere, I compel you to do this (cf. tē hōc cōgō);
                                             docuī tē contentum ēsse, I taught you to be content (cf. tē modestiam docuī, I taught you temperance).

 Passive Construction of the Forgoing Verbs.

332. Those verbs which in the Active are followed by the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, usually admit the personal construction of the Passive. This is true of the following and of some others:—

a) jubeor, vetor, sinor; as,—

                                             mīlītēs pontem facere jussī sunt, the soldiers were ordered to build a bridge;
                                             pōns fierī jussus est, a bridge was ordered built;
                                             mīlītēs castrīs extre vetitātī sunt, the troops were forbidden to go out of the camp;
                                             Sēstius Clōdiūm accūsāre nōn est situis, Sestius was not allowed to accuse Clodius.

b) videor, I am seen, I seem; as,—

                                             vidētur compersisse, he seems to have discovered.

c) dīcor, putor, exīstimor, jūdīcor (in all persons); as,—

                                             dīcitur in Italianō vēnisse, he is said to have come into Italy;
                                             Rōmulus prīmus rēx Rōmānōrum ēuisse putātur, Romulus is thought to have been the first king of the Romans.

d) fertur, feruntur, trāditur, trāduntur (only in the third person); as,—

                                             fertur Homērus cæcum ēuisse, Homer is said to have been blind;
                                             carmina Archilochi contumēliis referta esse trāduntur, Archilochus's poems are reported to have been full of abuse.

NOTE.—In compound tenses and periphrastic forms, the last two classes of verbs, c), d), more commonly take the impersonal construction; as—

                                             trādītum est Homērum cæcum ēuisse, the story goes that Homer was blind.

Infinitive with Adjectives.

333. The Infinitive with Adjectives (except parātus, assuētus, etc.; see § 328, 1) occurs only in poetry and post-Augustan prose writers; as,—

                                             contentus dēmōnstrāsse, contented to have proved;
                                             audāx omnia perpetū, bold for enduring everything.

Infinitive in Exclamations.

334. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations implying scorn, indignation, or regret. An intensive -ne is often attached to some word in the clause. Examples:—

                                             huncine sōlem tam nigrum surrēxe mihi, to think that to-day's sun rose with such
evil omen for me!

sedēre tōtōs diēs in villā, to stay whole days at the villa.

Historical Infinitive.

335. The Infinitive is often used in historical narrative instead of the Imperfect Indicative. The Subject stands in the Nominative; as,—

interim cottidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum fāgitāre, meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding grain of the Haeduī.

PARTICIPEs.

Tenses of the Participle.

336. 1. The tenses of the Participle, like those of the infinitive (see § 270), express time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

2. The Present Participle denotes action contemporary with that of the verb. Thus:—

audiō tē loquentem = you ARE speaking and I hear you;

audiēbam tē loquentem = you WERE speaking and I heard you;

audiām tē loquentem = you WILL BE speaking and I shall hear you.

a. The Present Participle is sometimes employed with Conative force; as,—

assurgentem rēgem resupīnat, as the king was trying to rise, he threw him down.

3. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action prior to that of the verb. Thus:—

locūtus taceō = I HAVE spoken and am silent;

locūtus taceui = I HAD spoken and then was silent;

locūtus tacebō = I SHALL speak and then shall be silent.

4. The absolute time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

5. Certain Perfect Passive Participles of Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are used as Presents; viz. arbitrātus, ausus, ratus, gāvisus, solitus, ūsus, cōnfasus, diffīsus, secūtus, verītus.

Use of Participles.

337. As an Adjective the Participle may be used either as an attributive or predicate modifier of a Substantive.

1. Attributive Use. This presents no special peculiarities. Examples are:—

glōria est cōnsentiēns laus bonōrum, glory is the unanimous praise of the good;

Conōn mūrōs ā Lysandrō dirutōs reficit, Conon restored the walls destroyed by Lysander.

2. Predicate Use. Here the Participle is often equivalent to a subordinate clause. Thus the Participle may denote:—

a) Time; as,—

omne malum nāscēns facile opprimitur, every evil is easily crushed at birth.

b) A Condition; as,—

mente ūtā nōn possumus cibō et pōtīōne complētī, if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.

c) Manner; as,—

Solōn senēscere sē dicēbat multa in diēs addiscemtum, Solon said he grew old learning many new things daily.
d) Means; as,—
    sōl oriēns diem cōnācit, the sun, by its rising, makes the day.
e) Opposition (‘though’); as,—
    mendāciī hominē nē vērūm quidem dicēntī crēdimus, we do not believe a liar,
    though he speaks the truth.
f) Cause; as,—
    perfidiam veritus ad suōs recessit, since he feared treachery, he returned to his
    own troops.

3. Videō and audīō, besides the Infinitive, take the Present Participle in the Predicate use; as,—
    videō tē fugientem, I see you fleeing.
    a. So frequently faciō, fingō, indūcō, etc.; as,—
    eīs Catōnem respondentem facimus, we represent Cato replying to them;
    Homērūs Laērtēm colentem agrum facit, Homer represents Laētēs tilling the
    field.

4. The Future Active Participle (except futūrus) is regularly confined to its use in the Periphrastic
Conjugation, but in poets and later writers it is used independently, especially to denote purpose; as,—
    vēnērunt castra oppugnātūrī, they came to assault the camp.

5. The Perfect Passive Participle is often equivalent to a coördinate clause; as,—
    urbem captam dīruit, he captured and destroyed the city (lit. he destroyed the city
    captured).

6. The Perfect Passive Participle in combination with a noun is sometimes equivalent to an abstract
noun with a dependent Genitive; as,—
    post urbem conditam, after the founding of the city;
    Quīncūtiōnēs dēfēnsus, the defense of Quinctius;
    quibus animus occupātus, the preoccupation of the mind with which.

7. Habeō sometimes takes a Perfect Passive Participle in the Predicate construction with a force not far
removed from that of the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative; as,—
    equitātus quem coāctum habēbat, the cavalry which he had collected.

8. The Gerundive denotes obligation, necessity, etc. Like other Participles it may be used either as
Attributive or Predicate.
    a) Less frequently as Attributive. Thus:—
       liber legendus, a book worth reading;
       lēgēs observandae, laws deserving of observance.
    b) More frequently as Predicate.
       1) In the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (amandus est, etc.). In this use
       Intransitive Verbs can be used only impersonally, but admit their ordinary case-
       construction (Gen., Dat., Abl.); as,—
       veniendum est, it is necessary to come;
       oblīvīscendum est offēnsārum, one must forget injuries;
       numquam prōditōrī crēdendum est, you must never trust a traitor;
       suō cuique ūtendum est jūdīciō, every man must use his own judgment.
       2) After cūrō, provide for; dō, trādō, give over; relīnquō, leave; concēdō, hand
       over, and some other verbs, instead of an object clause, or to denote purpose; as,—
       Caesar pontem in Arāri faciendum cūrāvit, Caesar provided for the construction
       of a bridge over the Arar;
       imperātor urbem militibus dūrīpiendam concessit, the general handed over the
       city to the soldiers to plunder.

9. For the Gerundive as the equivalent of the Gerund, see § 339, 1.
THE GERUND.

338. As a verbal noun the Gerund admits noun constructions as follows:—

1. Genitive. The Genitive of the Gerund is used—
   a) With Nouns, as objective or Appositional Genitive (see §§ 200, 202); as,—
      cupiditās dominandī, desire of ruling;
      ars scribendī, the art of writing.
   b) With Adjectives; as,—
      cupidus audiendi, desireous of hearing.
   c) With causā, grātīs; as,—
      discendi causā, for the sake of learning.

2. Dative. The Dative of the Gerund is used—
   a) With Adjectives; as,—
      aqua ūtilis est bibendō, water is useful for drinking.
   b) With Verbs (rarely); as,—
      adfuī scribendō, I was present at the writing.

3. Accusative. The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions, chiefly ad and in to denote purpose; as,—
   homō ad agendum nātus est, man is born for action.

4. Ablative. The Ablative of the Gerund is used—
   a) Without a Preposition, as an Ablative of Means, Cause, etc. (see §§ 218, 219); as,—
      mēns discendō alitūr et cōgitandō, the mind is nourished by learning and reflection.
      Themistocles maritimōs praedōnēs cōnsectandō mare tūtum reddidit, Themistocles made the sea safe by following up the pirates.
   b) After the prepositions ā, dē, ex, in; as,—
      summa voluptās ex discendō capitur, the keenest pleasure is derived from learning;
      multā dē bene beātēque vivendō ā Platōne disputāta sunt, there was much discussion by Plato on the subject of living well and happily.

5. As a rule, only the Genitive of the Gerund and the Ablative (without a preposition) admit a Direct Object.

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

339. 1. Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction may be, and very often is, used. This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund (Gen. or Abl.) and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus:—

GERUND CONSTRUCTION.             GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION.

cupidus urbem videndī, desirous of seeing cupidus urbīs videndae;
the city.
dēlector ērātōrēs legendō, I am charmed with dēlector ērātōribus legendēs
reading the orators.

2. The Gerundive Construction must be used to avoid a Direct Object with the Dative of the Gerund, or with a case dependent upon a Preposition; as,—

   locus castrīs mūniendīs aptus, a place adapted to fortifying a camp;
ad pæcem petendam vénérunt, they came to ask peace;
multum temporis cónsúmō in legendís poétís, I spend much time in reading the poets.

3. In order to avoid ambiguity (see § 236, 2), the Gerundive Construction must not be employed in case of Neuter Adjectives used substantively. Thus regularly—

philosophi cupidi sunt vérum invéstitgandi, philosophers are eager for discovering truth (rarely véri invéstitgandi);

studium plúrum cognóscendi, a desire of knowing more (not plúrium cognóscendórum).

4. From the nature of the case only Transitive Verbs can be used in the Gerundive construction; but útor, fruor, fungor, potior (originally transitive) regularly admit it; as,—

hostês in spem potiundórum castrórum vénérant, the enemy had conceived the hope of gaining possession of the camp.

5. The Genitives mei, tuï, sui, nostrî, vestrî, when used in the Gerundive Construction, are regularly employed without reference to Gender or Number, since they were originally Neuter Singular Adjectives used substantively. Thus:—

mulier sui servandi causâ aüfígít, the woman fled for the sake of saving herself;
légati in castra vénérunt sui púrgandi causâ, the envoys came into camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.

So nostrî servandi causâ, for the sake of saving ourselves.

6. Occasionally the Genitive of the Gerundive Construction is used to denote purpose; as,—

quae ille cêpit légum ac libertátis subvertundae, which he undertook for the purpose of overthrowing the laws and liberty.

7. The Dative of the Gerundive Construction occurs in some expressions which have the character of formulas; as,—

decemvìrî légibus scríbundís, decemvirs for codifying the laws;
quìndecimvìrî sacrís faciundís, quindecimvirs for performing the sacrifices.

THE SUPINE.

340. 1. The Supine in -um is used after Verbs of motion to express purpose; as,—

légati ad Caesarem grátulátem convénerunt, envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.

a. The Supine in -um may take an Object; as,—

pácem petítum órātōrés Rómam mittunt, they send envoys to Rome to ask for peace.

b. Note the phrase:—

dō (collocō) filiam nuptum, I give my daughter in marriage.

2. The Supine in -ũ is used as an Ablative of Specification with facilis, difficultis, incrédibilis, júcundus, optimus, etc.; also with fás est, nefás est, opus est; as,—

haec rēs est facilis cognitū, this thing is easy to learn;

hōc est optimum factū, this is best to do.

a. Only a few Supines in -ũ are in common use, chiefly audītū, cognitū, dictū, factū, vīsū.

b. The Supine in -ũ never takes an Object.

CHAPTER VI.—Particles.
COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

341. Copulative Conjunctions. These join one word, phrase, or clause to another.

1. a) *et* simply connects.
   b) *-que* joins more closely than *et*, and is used especially where the two members have an internal connection with each other; as,—
   
   parentēs liberique, parents and children;
   cum hominis aestū febrīque jactantur, when people are tossed about with heat and fever.
   c) *atque* (*ac*) usually emphasizes the second of the two things connected,—and also, and indeed, and in fact. After words of likeness and difference, *atque* (*ac*) has the force of *as, than*. Thus:—
   
   ego idem sentiō ac tū, I think the same as you;
   haud aliter ac, not otherwise than.
   d) *neque* (*nec*) means and not, neither, nor.

2. a) *-que* is an enclitic, and is appended always to the second of two words connected. Where it connects phrases or clauses, it is appended to the first word of the second clause; but when the first word of the second clause is a Preposition, *-que* is regularly appended to the next following word; as,—
   
   ob eamque rem, and on account of that thing.
   b) *atque* is used before vowels and consonants; *ac* never before vowels, and seldom before *c, g, qu*.
   c) *et nōn* is used for *neque* when the emphasis of the negative rests upon a special word; as, —
   
   vetus et nōn ignōbilis ὥρατορ, an old and not ignoble orator.
   d) For *and nowhere, and never, and none*, the Latin regularly said *necūquam, necumquām, necūllus, etc.*

3. Correlatives. Copulative Conjunctions are frequently used correlatively; as,—
   
   et ... *et*, both ... and;
   neque (*nec*) ... neque (*nec*), neither ... nor;
   cum ... *tum*, while ... at the same time;
   *tum* ... *tum*, not only ... but also.

   Less frequently:—
   
   et ... neque; neque ... *et*.

   a. Note that the Latin, with its tendency to emphasize antithetical relations, often uses correlatives, especially *et ... et, et ... neque, neque ... et*, where the English employs but a single connective.

4. In enumerations—
   
   a) The different members of a series may follow one another without connectives (Asyndeton; see § 346). Thus:—
   
   ex cupiditātibus odiā, discidia, discordiae, sēditiōnēs, bella nāscuntur, from covetous desires spring up hatred, dissension, discord, sedition, wars.
   b) The different members may severally be connected by *et* (Polysyndeton). Thus:—
   
   hōrae cēdunt et diēs et mēnsēs et annī, hours and days and months and years pass away.
   c) The connective may be omitted between the former members, while the last two are connected by *-que* (rarely *et*); as,—
   
   Caesar in Carnutēs, Andēs Turonēisque legionēs dēducit, Caesar leads his legions into the territory of the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones.

342. Disjunctive Conjunctions indicate an alternative.
1.  
a) aut must be used when the alternatives are mutually exclusive; as,—
cita mors venit aut victōria laeta, (either) swift death or glad victory comes.
b) vel, -ve (enclitic) imply a choice between the alternatives; as,—
qui aethēr vel caelum nōminātur, which is called aether or heaven.

2. Correlatives. Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used correlatively; as,—

aut ... aut, either ... or;
vel ... vel, either ... or;
sīve ... sīve, if ... or if.

343. Adversative Conjunctions. These denote opposition.

1.  
a) sed, but, merely denotes opposition.
b) vērum, but, is stronger than sed, but is less frequently used.
c) autem, but on the other hand, however, marks a transition. It is always post-positive.

Definition. A post-positive word is one that cannot begin a sentence, but is placed after one or more words.

d) at, but, is used especially in disputation, to introduce an opposing argument.

e) atqūī means but yet.

f) tamen, yet, usually stands after the emphatic word, but not always.

g) vērō, however, indeed, in truth, is always post-positive.

2. Note the correlative expressions:—

nōn sōlum (nōn modo) ... sed etiam, not only ... but also;
nōn modo nōn ... sed nē ... quidem, not only not, but not even; as,—
nōn modo tibi nōn irāscor, sed nē reprehendō quidem factum tuum, I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even blame your action.

a. But when the sentence has but one verb, and this stands with the second member, nōn modo may be used for nōn modo nōn; as,—

adsentātiō nōn modo amīcō, sed nē līberō quidem digne est, flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.

344. Illative Conjunctions. These represent the statement which they introduce as following from or as in conformity with what has preceded.

1.  
a) itaque = and so, accordingly.
b) ergō = therefore, accordingly.

c) igitur (regularly post-positive[58]) = therefore, accordingly.

2. Igitur is never combined with et, atque, -que, or neque.

345. Causal Conjunctions. These denote cause, or give an explanation. They are nam, namque, enim (post-positive), etenim, for.

346. Asyndeton. The conjunction is sometimes omitted between coördinate members, particularly in lively or impassioned narration. Thus:—

a) A copulative Conjunction is omitted; as,—

avāritiā infinitā, insatiābilis est, avarice is boundless (and) insatiable;


The conjunction is regularly omitted between the names of consuls when the praenomen (Mārcus, Gaius, etc.) is expressed.

b) An Adversative Conjunction may be omitted; as,—

rationēs defequent, ubertās orationis nōn dēfuit, arguments were lacking, (but) abundance of words was not.
ADVERBS.

347. 1. The following particles, sometimes classed as Conjunctions, are more properly Adverbs:—

etiam, also, even.
quoque (always post-positive), also.
quidem (always post-positive) lays stress upon the preceding word. It is sometimes equivalent to the English indeed, in fact, but more frequently cannot be rendered, except by vocal emphasis.
nē ... quidem means not even; the emphatic word or phrase always stands between; as, nē ille quidem, not even he.
tamen and vērō, in addition to their use as Conjunctions, are often employed as Adverbs.

2. Negatives. Two negatives are regularly equivalent to an affirmative as in English, as nōn nūlī, some; but when nōn, nēmō, nihil, numquam, etc., are accompanied by neque ... neque, nōn ... nōn, nōn modo, or nē ... quidem, the latter particles simply take up the negation and emphasize it; as,—

habeō hēc nēminem neque amīcum neque cognātum, I have here no one, neither friend nor relative.
nōn enim praetereundum est nē id quidem, for not even that must be passed by.

a. Haud in Cicero and Caesar occurs almost exclusively as a modifier of Adjectives and Adverbs, and in the phrase haud scīō an. Later writers use it freely with verbs.

CHAPTER VII.—Word-order and Sentence-Structure.

A. WORD-ORDER.

348. In the normal arrangement of the Latin sentence the Subject stands at the beginning of the sentence, the Predicate at the end; as,—

Dārius classem quingentārum nāvium comparāvit, Darius got ready a fleet of five hundred ships.

349. But for the sake of emphasis the normal arrangement is often abandoned, and the emphatic word is put at the beginning, less frequently at the end of the sentence; as,—

magnus in hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit, GREAT was Themistocles in this war;
aliud īter habēmus nūllum, other course we have NONE.

SPECIAL PRINCIPLES.

350. 1. Nouns. A Genitive or other oblique case regularly follows the word upon which it depends. Thus:—

a) Depending upon a Noun:—
tribūnus plēbis, tribune of the plebs;
filius rēgis, son of the king;
vir magnī animī, a man of noble spirit.
Yet always senātūs cōnsultum, plēbis scītum.

b) Depending upon an Adjective:—
ignārus rērum, ignorant of affairs;
dignī amīcitiā, worthy of friendship;
plūs aequō, more than (what is) fair.

2. Appositives. An Appositive regularly follows its Subject; as,—

Philippus, rēx Macedonum, Philip, king of the Macedonians;
adsentātiō, vitiōrum adjūtrix, flattery, promoter of evils.
Yet flūmen Rhēnus, the River Rhine; and always in good prose urbš Rōma, the city Rome.

3. The Vocative usually follows one or more words; as,—

audi, Caesar, hear, Caesar!

4. Adjectives. No general law can be laid down for the position of Adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.

a. Adjectives of quantity (including numerals) regularly precede their noun; as,—

omnēs hominēs, all men;
septingetae nāvēs, seven hundred vessels.

b. Note the force of position in the following:—

media urbš, the middle of the city;
urbš media, the middle city,
extrēmum bellum, the end of the war;
bellum extrēmum, the last war.

c. Rōmānus and Latīnus regularly follow; as,—

senātus populusque Rōmānus, the Roman Senate and People;
lūdī Rōmānī, the Roman games;
feīræae Latīnae, the Latin holidays.

d. When a Noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, a favorite order is: Adjective, Genitive, Noun; as,—

summa omnium rērum abundantia, the greatest abundance of all things.

5. Pronouns.

a. The Demonstrative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns regularly precede the Noun; as,

hic homō, this man;
ille homō, that man;
erant duo itinerā, quibus itineribus, etc., there were two routes, by which, etc.
quī homō? what sort of man?

b. But illē in the sense of 'that well known,' 'that famous,' usually stands after its Noun; as,—
testula illa, that well-known custom of ostracism;
Mēdēa illa, that famous Medea.

c. Possessive and Indefinite Pronouns usually follow their Noun; as,—
pater meus, my father;
homō quidam, a certain man;
mulīr alīqua, some woman.

But for purposes of contrast the Possessive often precedes its Noun; as,—

meus pater, MY father (i.e. as opposed to yours, his, etc.).

d. Where two or more Pronouns occur in the same sentence, the Latin is fond of putting them in close proximity; as,—
nisi forte ego vōbis cessāre videor, unless perchance I seem to you to be doing nothing.

6. Adverbs and Adverbial phrases regularly precede the word they modify; as,—

valdē diligēns, extremely diligent;
saecp dīxī, I have often said;
tē jam diū hortāmur, we have long been urging you;
paulō post, a little after.

7. Prepositions regularly precede the words they govern.

a. But limiting words often intervene between the Preposition and its case; as,—
dē commūnī hominum memorīā, concerning the common memory of men;
ad beātē vīvendum, for living happily.

b. When a noun is modified by an Adjective, the Adjective is often placed before the preposition; as,—
magnō in dolōre, in great grief;
summā cum laude, with the highest credit;
quā dē causā, for which cause;
hanc ob rem, on account of this thing.

c. For Anastrophe, by which a Preposition is put after its case, see § 144, 3.

8. Conjunctions. Autem, enim, and igitur regularly stand in the second place in the sentence, but when combined with est or sunt they often stand third; as,—

ita est enim, for so it is.

9. Words or Phrases referring to the preceding sentence or to some part of it, regularly stand first; as,—

id ut audīvit, Corcyram démigrāvit, when he heard that (referring to the contents of the preceding sentence, he moved to Corcyra;
eō cum Caesar vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, when Caesar had come thither (i.e. to the place just mentioned), he encouraged the timid.

10. The Latin has a fondness for putting side by side words which are etymologically related; as,—

ut ad senem senex dē senectūte, sīc hōc librō ad amīcum amīcissimus dē amīcitīā scripsī, as I, an old man, wrote to an old man, on old age, so in this book, as a fond friend, I have written to a friend, concerning friendship.

11. Special rhetorical devices for indicating emphasis are the following:—

a) Hypērbaton, which consists in the separation of words that regularly stand together; as,

septimus mihi Ōrīginum liber est in manibus, the seventh book of my 'Origines' is under way;
receptō Caesar Ōrīcō proficisciētur, having recovered Oricus, Caesar set out.

b) Anāphora, which consists in the repetition of the same word or the same word-order in successive phrases; as,—
sed plēni omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientīūm vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās, but all books are full of it, the voices of sages are full of it, antiquity is full of examples of it.

b) Chiāsmus, which consists in changing the relative order of words in two antithetical phrases; as,—
multōs dēfendī, laeśī nēminem, many have I defended, I have injured no one;
horribilem illum diem aliis, nōbīs faustum, that day dreadful to others, for us fortunate.

c) Sỳnchysis, or the interlocked arrangement. This is mostly confined to poetry, yet occurs in rhetorical prose, especially that of the Imperial Period; as,—
simulātām Pompejānārum grātīam partium, pretended interest in the Pompeian party.

12. Metrical Close. At the end of a sentence certain cadences were avoided; others were much employed. Thus:—

a) Cadences avoided.
_ _ _ : as, esse vidētur (close of hexameter).
_ _ _ : as, esse potest (close of pentameter).

b) Cadences frequently employed.
_ _ : as, auxerant.
_ _ _ : as, comprobāvit.
351. 1. Unity of Subject.—In complex sentences the Latin regularly holds to unity of Subject in the different members; as,—

Caesar primum suē, deinde omnium ex conspicē remōtōs quaēs, ut aequātō percūltō spēm fugae tollerent, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit, Caesar having first removed his own horse from sight, then the horses of all, in order, by making the danger equal, to take away hope of flight, encouraged his men and joined battle.

2. A word serving as the common Subject or Object of the main clause and a subordinate one, stands before both; as,—

Haeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, since the Haeduī could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar;
ille etsi flagrābat bellandī cupiditāte, tamen pācē serviendum putāvit, although he was burning with a desire to fight, yet he thought he ought to aim at peace.

a. The same is true also

1) When the Subject of the main clause is Object (Direct or Indirect) of a subordinate clause; as,—

Caesar, cum hōc eī nūntiatum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, when this had been reported to Caesar he hastened to set out from the city.

2) When the Subject of a subordinate clause is at the same time the Object (Direct or Indirect) of the main clause; as,—

L. Mānliō, cum dictātor suisset, M. Pompōnius tribūnus pēhis diēm dīxit, M. Pomponius, tribune of the people, instituted proceedings against Lucius Manlius, though he had been dictator.

3. Of subordinate clauses, temporal, conditional, and adversative clauses more commonly precede the main clause; indirect questions and clauses of purpose or result more commonly follow; as,—

postquam haec dīxit, profectus est, after he said this, he set out;
śi quis ita agat, imprūdēns sit, if any one should act so, he would be devoid of foresight;
acciēt ut ānā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicentur, it happened that in a single night all the Hermae were thrown down.

4. Sometimes in Latin the main verb is placed within the subordinate clause; as,—

śi quid est in mē ingenī, quod sentiō quam sit exiguum, if there is any talent in me, and I know how little it is.

5. The Latin Period. The term Period, when strictly used, designates a compound sentence in which the subordinate clauses are inserted within the main clause; as,—

Caesar etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dēicentur, tamen, nē aestātem in Treverīs cōnsūmēre cogetur, Indutiomārum ad sē venire jussit, though Caesar perceived why this was said, yet, lest he should be forced to spend the summer among the Treveri, he ordered Indutiomarus to come to him.

In the Periodic structure the thought is suspended until the end of the sentence is reached. Many Roman writers were extremely fond of this sentence-structure, and it was well adapted to the inflectional character of their language; in English we generally avoid it.

6. When there are several subordinate clauses in one Period, the Latin so arranges them as to avoid a succession of verbs. Thus:—

At hostēs cum mīssissent, quī, quae in castrīs gerentur, cognōscerent, ubi sē
deceptós intellëxérunt, omnibus cópis subsecútī ad flúmer contendunt, but the enemy when they had sent men to learn what was going on in camp, after discovering that they had been outwitted, followed with all their forces and hurried to the river.

CHAPTER VIII.-Hints on Latin Style.

352. In this chapter brief consideration is given to a few features of Latin diction which belong rather to style than to formal grammar.

NOUNS.

353. 1. Where a distinct reference to several persons or things is involved, the Latin is frequently much more exact in the use of the Plural than is the English; as,—

    domós eunt, they go home (i.e. to their homes);
    Germāní corpora cūrant, the Germans care for the body;
    animós militum recreat, he renewes the courage of the soldiers;
    diēs noctēsque timère, to be in a state of fear day and night.

2. In case of Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, the Latin often employs the Plural where the English uses the Singular; as,—

    omnia sunt perdūta, everything is lost;
    quae cum īta sint, since this is so;
    haec omnibus pervulgāta sunt, this is very well known to all.

3. The Latin is usually more concrete than the English, and especially less bold in the personification of abstract qualities. Thus:—

    ā puerō, ā puerīs, from boyhood;
    Sullā dīcātōre, in Sulla's dictatorship;
    mē duce, under my leadership;
    Rōmāní cum Carthāginiēnsibus pācem fēcérunt = Rome made peace with Carthage;
    liber doctrīnāe plēnus = a learned book;
    prūdentīā Themistoclīs Graecia servāta est = Themistocles's foresight saved Greece.

4. The Nouns of Agency in -tor and -sor (see § 147, 1) denote a permanent or characteristic activity; as,—

    accūsātorēs, (professional) accusers;
    ōrātorēs, pleaders;
    cantōrēs, singers;
    Arminius, Germāniae liberātor, Arminius, liberator of Germany.

    a. To denote single instances of an action, other expressions are commonly employed; as,—

    Numā, quī Rōmulō successit, Numa, successor of Romulus;
    quī mea legunt, my readers;
    quī mē audiant, my auditors.

5. The Latin avoids the use of prepositional phrases as modifiers of a Noun. In English we say: 'The war against Carthage'; 'a journey through Gaul'; 'cities on the sea'; 'the book in my hands'; 'the fight at Salamis'; etc. The Latin in such cases usually employs another mode of expression. Thus:—

    a) A Genitive; as,—

    dolor injūriārum, resentment at injuries.
b) An Adjective; as,—
urbēs maritimae, cities on the sea;
pugna Salamīnia, the fight at Salamis.
c) A Participle; as,—
pugna ad Cannās facta, the battle at Cannae.
d) A Relative clause; as,—
liber qui in meis manibus est, the book in my hands.

NOTE.—Yet within certain limits the Latin does employ Prepositional phrases as Noun modifiers. This is particularly frequent when the governing noun is derived from a verb. The following are typical examples:—

trānsitus in Britanniam, the passage to Britain;
excessus ē vitā, departure from life;
odium ergā Rōmānōs, hatred of the Romans;
liber dē senectūtē, the book on old age;
amor in patriam, love for one’s country.

ADJECTIVES.

354. 1. Special Latin Equivalents for English Adjectives are—

a) A Genitive; as,—
virtūtēs animī = moral virtues;
dolōrēs corporis = bodily ills.
b) An Abstract Noun; as,—
novitās ref = the strange circumstance;
asperitās viārum = rough roads.
c) Hendiadys (see § 374, 4); as,—
ratīō et őrdō = systematic order;
ārdor et impectus = eager onset.
d) Sometimes an Adverb; as,—
ōmnēs circā populi, all the surrounding tribes;
suōs semper hostēs, their perpetual foes.

2. Often a Latin Noun is equivalent to an English Noun modified by an Adjective; as,—
doctrīna, theoretical knowledge;
prūdentia, practical knowledge;
oppidum, walled town;
libellus, little book.

3. Adjectives are not used in immediate agreement with proper names; but an Adjective may limit vir, homō, ille, or some other word used as an Appositive of a proper name; as,—
Sōcratēs, homō sapiēns = the wise Socrates;
Scēpīō, vir fortissimus = the doughty Scipio;
Śyrācūsae, urbs praeclarissima = famous Syracuse.

4. An Adjective may be equivalent to a Possessive or Subjective Genitive; as,—
pāstor rēgius, the shepherd of the king;
tumultus servīlis, the uprising of the slaves.

PRONOMINS.

355. 1. In Compound Sentences the Relative Pronoun has a fondness for connecting itself with the
subordinate clause rather than the main one; as,—

ā quō cum quaererētur, quid maximē expedīret, respondit, when it was asked of him what was best, he replied. (Less commonly, quī, cum ab eō quaererētur, respondit.)

2. Uterque, ambō. Uterque means each of two; ambō means both; as,—

uterque frāter abīvit, each of the two brothers departed (i.e. separately);
ambō frātres abīrunt, i.e. the two brothers departed together.

a. The Plural of uterque occurs—

1) With Nouns used only in the Plural (see § 56); as,—
in utrīisque castrīs, in each camp.
2) Where there is a distinct reference to two groups of persons or things; as,—
uterque ducēs clārī fuērunt, the generals on each side (several in number) were famous.

VERBS.

356. 1. In case of Defective and Deponent Verbs, a Passive is supplied;—

a) By the corresponding verbal Nouns in combination with esse, etc.; as,—
in odiō sumus, we are hated;
in invidiā sum, I am envied;
admīrātiōnēs est, he is admired;
oblivīōne obrūitur, he is forgotten (lit. is overwhelmed by oblivion);
in ūsū esse, to be used.

b) By the Passive of Verbs of related meaning. Thus:—
agītārī as Passive of persequī;
temptārī as Passive of adorīrī.

2. The lack of the Perfect Active Participle in Latin is supplied—

a) Sometimes by the Perfect Passive Participle of the Deponent; as,—
adhortātus, having exhorted;
veritus, having feared.

b) By the Ablative Absolute; as,—
hostium agrīs vāstātīs Caesar exercitum redūxit, having ravaged the country of the enemy, Caesar led back his army.

c) By subordinate clauses; as,—
eō cum advēnisset, castra posuit, having arrived there, he pitched a camp;
hostes quī in urbēm irrūperant, the enemy having burst into the city.

3. The Latin agrees with English in the stylistic employment of the Second Person Singular in an indefinite sense (=‘one’). Cf. the English ‘You can drive a horse to water, but you can’t make him drink.’ But in Latin this use is mainly confined to certain varieties of the Subjunctive, especially the Potential (§ 280), Jussive (§ 275), Deliberative (§ 277), and the Subjunctive in conditional sentences of the sort included under § 302, 2, and 303. Examples:—

vidērēs, you could see;
ūtāre viribus, use your strength,
quid hōc hominē faciās, what are you to do with this man?
mēns quoque et animus, nisi tamquam lūminī oleum īnflammēs, exstinguuntur senectūtēs, the intellect and mind too are extinguished by old age, unless, so to speak, you keep pouring oil into the lamp;
tantō amōre possessiōnēs suās amplexīrī tenēbant, ut ab eīs membra dīvēlī citius posse dīcerēs, they clung to their possessions with such an affectionate embrace, that you would have said their limbs could sooner be torn from their bodies.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm 173/244
PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

357. 1. To denote 'so many years, etc., afterwards or before' the Latin employs not merely the Ablative of Degree of Difference with post and ante (see § 223), but has other forms of expression. Thus:—

post quinque annós, five years afterward;
apaucós ante dies, a few days before;
ante quadriennium, four years before;
post diem quârtum quam ab urbe discesseramus, four days after we had left the city;
ante tertium annum quam dècesserat, three years before he had died.

2. The Latin seldom combines both Subject and Object with the same Infinitive; as,—

Rómanós Hannibalem vícisse cónstat.

Such a sentence would be ambiguous, and might mean either that the Romans had conquered Hannibal, or that Hannibal had conquered the Romans. Perspicuity was gained by the use of the Passive Infinitive; as,—

Rómanós ab Hannibale victós esse cónstat, it is well established that the Romans were defeated by Hannibal.

PECULIARITIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF THE DATIVE.

358. 1. The English for does not always correspond to a Dative notion in Latin, but is often the equivalent of pró with the Ablative, viz. in the senses—

a) In defense of; as,—

pró patriâ mori, to die for one's country.

b) Instead of, in behalf of; as,—

únus pró omnibus dixit, one spoke for all;
haec pró lege dicta sunt, these things were said for the law.

c) In proportion to; as,—

pró multifüdine hominum eórum finês erant angusti, for the population, their territory was small.

2. Similarly, English to when it indicates motion is rendered in Latin by ad.

a. Note, however, that the Latin may say either scribere ad aliquem, or scribere alicui, according as the idea of motion is or is not predominant. So in several similar expressions.

3. In the poets, verbs of mingling with, contending with, joining, clinging to, etc., sometimes take the Dative. This construction is a Grecism. Thus:—

sé miscet viris, he mingles with the men;
contendis Homêrō, you contend with Homer;
dextræ dextram jungere, to clasp hand with hand.

PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE GENITIVE.

359. 1. The Possessive Genitive gives emphasis to the possessor, the Dative of Possessor emphasizes the fact of possession; as,—

hortus patris est, the garden is my father's;
mihi hortus est, I possess a garden.

2. The Latin can say either stultî or stultum est dicere, it is foolish to say; but Adjectives of one ending permit only the Genitive; as,—
sapientis est haec sēcum reputāre, it is the part of a wise man to consider this.

PART VI.

PROSODY.

360. Prosody treats of metres and versification.

361. Latin Verse. Latin Poetry was essentially different in character from English. In our own language, poetry is based upon accent, and poetical form consists essentially in a certain succession of accented and unaccented syllables. Latin poetry, on the other hand, was based not upon accent, but upon quantity, so that with the Romans poetical form consisted in a certain succession of long and short syllables, i.e. of long and short intervals of time.

This fundamental difference in the character of English and Latin poetry is a natural result of the difference in character of the two languages. English is a strongly accented language, in which quantity is relatively subordinate. Latin, on the other hand, was a quantitative language, in which accent was relatively subordinate.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

362. The general principles for the quantity of vowels and syllables have been given above in § 5. The following peculiarities are to be noted here:—

1. A vowel is usually short when followed by another vowel (§ 5, A, 2), but the following exceptions occur:—

   a) In the Genitive termination -us (except alterius); as, illius, tōtius. Yet the i may be short in poetry; as, illius, tōtius.

   b) In the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, diē, acīē. But fidēr, rēs, spēs (§ 52, 1).

   c) In ãō, excepting ãt and forms where i is followed by er. Thus: ãēbam, ãiat, ãiunt; but fierī, fierem.

   d) In a few other words, especially words derived from the Greek; as, diōs, Aenēōs, Dārīōs, hērōes, etc.

2. A diphthong is usually long (§ 5, B, 2), but the preposition prae in composition is often shortened before a vowel; as, prācūtus.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (§ 5, B, 2) is long, even when one of the consonants is in the following word; as, terret populum. Occasionally the syllable is long when both consonants are in the following word; as, prō segete spēs.

4. Compounds of jacio, though written inīcit, adīcit, etc., have the first syllable long, as though written in-, adj-.

5. Before ū, ā and ē made a long syllable, e.g. in major, pejor, ejus, ejusdem, Pompeius, rejēcit, etc. These were pronounced, mai-jor, pei-jor, ei-jus, Pompei-jus, rei-jēcit, etc. So also sometimes before i, e.g. Pompe-i, pronounced Pompei-i; re-iciō, pronounced rei-iciō.

Quantity of Final Syllables.

A. Final Syllables ending in a Vowel.

363. 1. Final a is mostly short, but is long:—

   a) In the Ablative Singular of the First Declension; as, portā.
2. Final e is usually short, but is long:—

   a) In the Ablative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, diē, rē; hence hodiē, quārē. Here belongs also famē (§ 59, 2, b).
   b) In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation; as, monē, habē, etc.; yet occasionally cavē, valē.
   c) In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension, along with ferē and ferme. Benē, malē, temerē, saepē have ē.
   d) In ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē (not, lest), nē (verily).

3. Final i is usually long, but is short in nisi and quasi. Mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi, have regularly Ĩ, but sometimes Ĩ; yet always ibidem, ibique, ubique.

4. Final o is regularly long, but is short:—

   a) In egō, duō, modō (only), citō.
   b) Rarely in the First Person Singular of the Verb, and in Nominatives of the Third Declension; as, amō, leō.
   c) In a few compounds beginning with the Preposition pro, especially before f; as prōfundere, prōficiscē, prōfugere.

5. Final u is always long.

B. Final Syllables ending in a Consonant.

364. 1. Final syllables ending in any other consonant than s are short. The following words, however, have a long vowel: sāl, sōl, Lār, pār, vēr, fūr, dūc, dūc, ēn, nōn, quīn, sīn, sīc, cūr. Also the adverbs hīc, illic, istīc. 60

2. Final syllables in -as are long; as, terrās, amās.

3. Final syllables in -es are regularly long, but are short:—

   a) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of dental stems (§ 33) of the Third Declension which have a short penultimate in the Genitive; as, segēs (segetis), obsēs (obsidis), mīlēs, dīvēs. But a few have -ēs; viz. pēs, ariēs, abiēs, pariēs.
   b) In ēs (thou art), penēs.

4. Final -os is usually long, but short in ōs (ossis), compōs, impōs.

5. Final -is is usually short, but is long:—

   a) In Plurals; as, portīs, horīs, nōbīs, vōbīs, nūbīs (Acc.).
   b) In the Second Person Singular Perfect Subjunctive Active; as, amāverīs, monuerīs, audīverīs, etc. Yet occasional exceptions occur.
   c) In the Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation; as, audīs.
   d) In vīs, force; īs, thou goest; fīs; sīs; vēlīs; nōlīs; vīs, thou wilt (māvīs, quamvīs, quīvīs, etc.).

6. Final -us is usually short, but is long:—

   a) In the Genitive Singular and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of the Fourth Declension; as, frūctūs.
   b) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of those nouns of the Third Declension in which the u belongs to the stem; as, palūs (-ūdis), servītūs (-ūtīs), tellūs (-ūris).

365. Greek Nouns retain in Latin their original quantity; as, Aenēa, epitomē, Dēlos, Pallas, Sīmois, Salamīs, Didūs, Parīdī, āër, aethēr, crātēr, hērōās. Yet Greek nouns in -oīp (-ōr) regularly shorten the vowel of the final syllable; as, rhētōr, Hectōr.
VERSE-STRUCTURE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

366. 1. The metrical unit in versification is a short syllable, technically called a mora ( ). A long syllable ( ) is regarded as equivalent to two morae.

2. A Foot is a group of syllables. The following are the most important kinds of fundamental feet:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FEET OF THREE</th>
<th>FEET OF FOUR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MORAE.</td>
<td>MORAE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— Trochee.</td>
<td>— Trochee.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— — Dactyl.</td>
<td>— — Dactyl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— — Iambus.</td>
<td>— — Anapae.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. A Verse is a succession of feet.

4. The different kinds of verses are named Trochaic, Iambic, Dactylic, Anapaestic, according to the foot which forms the basis of their structure.

5. Ictus. In every fundamental foot the long syllable naturally receives the greater prominence. This prominence is called ictus.[61] It is denoted thus: .

6. Thesis and Arsis. The syllable which receives the ictus is called the thesis; the rest of the foot is called the arsis.

7. Elision. Final syllables ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or -m are regularly elided before a word beginning with a vowel or h. In reading, we omit the elided syllable entirely. This may be indicated as follows: corpora in uno; multum illa et; monstrum horrendum; causa erat.

   a. Omission of elision is called Hiatus. It occurs especially before and after monosyllabic interjections; as, O et praeidium.

8. The ending of a word within a foot is called a Caesura (cutting) Every verse usually has one prominent caesura. The ending of a word and foot together within the verse is called a diaeresis.

9. Verses are distinguished as Catalectic or Acatalectic. A Catalectic verse is one in which the last foot is not complete, but lacks one or more syllables; an Acatalectic verse has its last foot complete.

10. At the end of a verse a slight pause occurred. Hence the final syllable may be either long or short (syllaba anceps), and may terminate in a vowel or m, even though the next verse begins with a vowel.

11. Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verses are further designated as dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, according to the number of dipodies (pairs of feet) which they contain. Dactylic verses are measured by single feet, and are designated as tetramer, pentameter, hexameter, accordingly.

SPECIAL PECULIARITIES.

367. 1. Synizesis (synaeresis). Two successive vowels in the interior of a word are often united into a long syllable; as,—

   **aur[i]s, d[i]nde, ant[i]re, d[i]sse.**

2. Diaestole. A syllable usually short is sometimes long; as,—

   **videt, audit.**

3. Syntole. A syllable usually long is sometimes short; as,—

   **steterein.**

   a. Diastole and Syntole are not mere arbitrary processes. They usually represent an earlier pronunciation which had passed out of vogue in the ordinary speech.

4. After a consonant, i and u sometimes become j and v. The preceding syllable then becomes long; as,
abjete for abiete; genua for genua.

5. Sometimes v becomes u; as,—

silua for silica; dissipulo for dissolvō.

6. Sometimes a verse has an extra syllable. Such a verse is called an Hypérmetre. The extra syllable ends in a vowel or -m, and is united with the initial vowel or h of the next verse by Synphélia. Thus:—

... ignarī hominumque locorumque errāmus.

7. Tmesis (cutting). Compound words are occasionally separated into their elements; as,—

quō mē cumque rapit tempestās, for quōcumque, etc.

8. Sýncope. A short vowel is sometimes dropped between two consonants; as,—

repostus for repositus

THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

368. 1. The Dactylic Hexameter, or Heroic Verse, consists theoretically of six dactyls. But in all the feet except the fifth, a spondee ( _ _ ) may take the place of the dactyl. The sixth foot may be either a spondee or a trochee, since the final syllable of a verse may be either long or short (syllaba aniceps). The following represents the scheme of the verse:—

\[ L L L L L L \]

2. Sometimes we find a spondee in the fifth foot. Such verses are called Spondaic. A dactyl usually stands in the fourth place, and the fifth and sixth feet are generally made up of a quadrisyllable; as,—

armātumque aurō circumpicit Ōrīōna.
cāra deum subolēs, magnum Jovis incrēmentum.

3. Caesura.

a) The favorite position of the caesura in the Dactylic Hexameter is after the thesis of the third foot; as,—

arma virumque canō || Trōjae quī prīmus ab őris.

b) Less frequently the caesura occurs after the thesis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by another in the second foot; as,—

inde torō || pater Aenēās || sic őrsus ab altō est.

c) Sometimes the caesura occurs between the two short syllables of the third foot; as,—

Ō passī graviōra || dabit deus hīs quoque finem.

This caesura is called Feminine, as opposed to the caesura after a long syllable, which is called Masculine (as under a and b)

d) A pause sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot. This is called the Bucolic Diaeresis, as it was borrowed by the Romans from the Bucolic poetry of the Greeks. Thus:—

sōlstitium pecorī dēfendite; || jam venit aestās.

DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

369. 1. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts, each of which contains two dactyls, followed by a long syllable. Spondees may take the place of the dactyls in the first part, but not in the second. The long syllable at the close of the first half of the verse always ends a word. The scheme is the following:—

| Long | Long | Long | Long | Long |

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
2. The Pentameter is never used alone, but only in connection with the Hexameter. The two arranged alternately form the so-called Elegiae Distich. Thus:—

Vergilium vídī tantum, neo amārā Tibulló
Tempus amīcitiae fāta dedēre meae.

IAMBIC MEASURES.

370. 1. The most important Iambic verse is the Iambic Trimeter (§ 366, 11), called also Senarius. This is an acatalectic verse. It consists of six Iambi. Its pure form is:—

Beātus ille qui procul negótiis.

The Caesura usually occurs in the third foot; less frequently in the fourth.

2. In place of the Iambus, a Tribrach (☉☉☉) may stand in any foot but the last. In the odd feet (first, third, and fifth) may stand a Spondee, Dactyl, or Anapaest, though the last two are less frequent. Sometimes a Proceleusmatic (☉☉☉☉☉) occurs.

3. In the Latin comic writers, Plautus and Terence, great freedom is permitted, and the various equivalents of the Iambus, viz. the Dactyl, Anapaest, Spondee, Tribrach, Proceleusmatic, are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.

I. JULIAN CALENDAR.

371. 1. The names of the Roman months are: Jānuārius, Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis, Majus, Jūnius, Jūlius (Quintīlis[62] prior to 46 B.C.), Augustus (Sextīlis[62] before the Empire), Septembris, Octōber, November, December. These words are properly Adjectives in agreement with mēnsis understood.

2. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month:—

   a) The Calends, the first of the month.
   b) The Nones, usually the fifth of the month, but the seventh in March, May, July, and October.
   c) The Ides, usually the thirteenth of the month, but the fifteenth in March, May, July, and October.

3. From these points dates were reckoned backward; consequently all days after the Ides of any month were reckoned as so many days before the Calends of the month next following.

4. The day before the Calends, Nones, or Ides of any month is designated as pridē Kalendās, Nōnās, Īdūs. The second day before was designated as dīē tertīo ante Kalendās, Nōnās, etc. Similarly the third day before was designated as dīē quārto, and so on. These designations are arithmetically inaccurate, but the Romans reckoned both ends of the series. The Roman numeral indicating the date is therefore always larger by one than the actual number of days before Nones, Ides, or Calends.

5. In indicating dates, the name of the month is added in the form of an Adjective agreeing with Kalendās, Nōnās, Īdūs. Various forms of expression occur, of which that given under b) is most common:—

   a) dīē quīntō ante Īdūs Mārtiās;
   b) quīntō ante Īdūs Mārtiās;
   c) quīntō (V) Īdūs Mārtiās;
   d) ante diem quīntum Īdūs Mārtiās.
6. These designations may be treated as nouns and combined with the prepositions in, ad, ex; as,—

ad ante diem IV Kalendās Octōbrēs, up to the 28th of September.
ex ante diem quintum Īdūs Octōbrēs, from the 11th of October.

7. In leap-year the 25th was reckoned as the extra day in February. The 24th was designated as ante diem VI Kalendās Mārtiās, and the 25th as ante diem bis VI Kal Mārt.

372. CALENDAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Days</th>
<th>March, May, July</th>
<th>January, August</th>
<th>April, June,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>of the</td>
<td>October.</td>
<td>December</td>
<td>September,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 1 | KALENDĪS | KALENDĪS | KALENDĪS |
| 2 | VI Nōnās | IV Nōnās | IV Nōnās |
| 3 | V | III | III |
| 4 | IV | Prīdiē Nōnās | Prīdiē Nōnās |
| 5 | III | NŌNĪS | NŌNĪS |
| 6 | Prīdiē Nōnās | VIII Īdūs | VIII Īdūs |
| 7 | NŌNĪS | VII | VII |
| 8 | VIII Īdūs | VI | VI |
| 9 | VII | V | V |
| 10 | VI | IV | IV |
| 11 | V | III | III |
| 12 | IV | Pr. Īdūs | Pr. Īdūs |
| 13 | III | IDIBUS | IDIBUS |
| 14 | Pr. Īdūs | XIX Kalend. | XVIII Kalend. |
| 15 | IDIBUS | XVIII | XVII |
| 16 | XVI Kalend. | XVIII | XIX |
| 17 | XVI | XV | X |
| 18 | XV | XIV | III |
| 19 | XIV | XIII | X |
| 20 | XIII | XII | IX |
| 21 | XII | XI | VIII |
| 22 | XI | X | VII |
| 23 | X | IX | VI |
| 24 | IX | VIII | V |
| 25 | VIII | VII | V (bis VI) |
| 26 | VII | VI | IV (V) |
| 27 | VI | V | III (IV) |
| 28 | V | IV | Pr. Kal. (III K.) |
| 29 | IV | III | (Prīdi. Kal.) |
| 30 | III | Pr. Kalend. | (Enclosed forms are |
| 31 | Pr. Kalend. | Pr. Kalend. | for leap-year.) |

II. PROPER NAMES.

373. 1. The name of a Roman citizen regularly consisted of three parts: the praenōmen (or given name), the nōmen (name of the gens or clan), and the cognōmen (family name). Such a typical name is exemplified by Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, in which Mārcus is the praenōmen, Tullius the nōmen, and Cicerō the cognōmen. Sometimes a second cognōmen (in later Latin called an agnōmen) is added—especially in honor of military achievements; as,—

Gāius Cornēlius Scipiō Africānus.

2. ABBREVIATIONS OF PROPER NAMES.
C. = Gāius. P. = Pūblius.
Cn. = Gnæus. Q. = Quintus.
D. = Decimus. Sex. = Sextus.
M. = Mārcus. T. = Titus.
M'. = Mānius. Ti. = Tiberius.

III. FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

A. Figures of Syntax.

374. 1. Ellípsis is the omission of one or more words; as,—

quid multa, why (should I say) much?

2. Brachýlogy is a brief or condensed form of expression; as,—

ut ager sine cultūra fructuōsus esse nōn potest, sīc sine doctrīnā animus, as a
field cannot be productive without cultivation, so the mind (cannot be productive)
without learning.

Special varieties of Brachylogy are—

a) Zeugma, in which one verb is made to stand for two; as,—

minīs aut blandimentis corrupta = (terrified) by threats or corrupted by flattery.

b) Compendiary Comparison, by which a modifier of an object is mentioned instead of the
object itself; as,—

dissimilis erat Charēs eōrum et factīs et mōribus, lit. Chares was different from
their conduct and character i.e. Chares's conduct and character were different, etc.

3. Pléonasmi is an unnecessary fullness of expression; as,—

priors praedicam, lit. I will first say in advance.

4. Hendíady is (*āv δια δύον, one through two) is the use of two nouns joined by a conjunction, in
the sense of a noun modified by a Genitive or an Adjective; as,—

febris et aestus, the heat of fever;

celeritāte cursūque, by swift running.

5. Prolépsis, or Anticipation, is the introduction of an epithet in advance of the action which makes it
appropriate; as,—

submersās obrue puppēs, lit. overwhelm their submerged ships, i.e. overwhelm and
sink their ships.

a. The name Prolepsis is also applied to the introduction of a noun or pronoun as object of
the main clause where we should expect it to stand as subject of a subordinate clause.

Thus:—

nōstī Mārcellum quam tardus sit, you know how slow Marcellus is (lit. you know
Marcellus, how slow he is).

Both varieties of Prolepsis are chiefly confined to poetry.

6. Anacolūthon is a lack of grammatical consistency in the construction of the sentence; as,—

tum Ancī filī ... impēnusīs eīs indignitās crēscere, then the sons of Ancus ... their
indignation increased all the more.
7. Hýsteron Próteron consists in the inversion of the natural order of two words or phrases; as,—

moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus = *let us rush into the midst of arms and die.*

**B. Figures of Rhetoric.**

375. 1. Lítotes (literally *softening*) is the expression of an idea by the denial of its opposite; as,—

haud parum labōris, *no little toil* (*i.e.* much toil);

nón ignóro, *I am not ignorant* (*i.e.* I am well aware).

2. Oxy nóron is the combination of contradictory conceptions; as,—

sapiēns īnsānia, *wise folly.*

3. Alliteration is the employment of a succession of words presenting frequent repetition of the same letter (mostly initial); as,—

sēnsim sine sēnsū actās senēscit.

4. Onomatopoeia is the suiting of sound to sense; as,—

quadrupedante putrem sonitū quätit ungula campum, *'And shake with horny hoofs the solid ground.'*

---

**INDEX OF THE SOURCES OF THE ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES CITED IN THE SYNTAX.**[^1]


§ 166. decorum est, *Hor.* *Od.* iii, 2, 13. opportune accidit *Att.* i, 17, 2.


§ 174. rumor est, *Ter.* *And.* 185.


§ 179. milites, *B.C.* i, 54.


§ 181. hic locus, *B.G.* i, 49.


§ 188. mihi ante, *Verr.* v, 123. illi, *Tac.* *Ag.* 9. intercludere, *Pl.* *M.G.* 223. oppidum, *B.C.* iii, 80 tu mihi,

§ 189. disputatio, Tusc. Disp. ii, 2. honesta, Off. iii, 38.


§ 192. it clamor, Aen. v, 451.

§ 193. dum Latio, Aen. i, 6.

§ 203. magni, Nep. Cat. 1, 2. tantae molis, Aen. i, 33.

§ 204. viri, Tusc. Disp. ii, 43. memoria, Or. 54.


§ 207. te veteris, ad Her. iv, 24, 33. me admones, ad Att. v, 1, 3.

§ 208. pecuniae, Flacc. 43.

§ 209. miseremini, Verr. 1, 72.

§ 212. desine, Hor. Od. ii, 9, 17. operum, Hor. Od. iii, 17, 16.


§ 215. ab Ullxe, Liv. i, 49, 9.

§ 216. a fortuna, B.G. v, 34, 2. a multitudine, B.G. iii, 2, 1.


§ 219. victoria, B.G. i, 14, 4. natura loci, B.G. iii, 9, 3.

§ 221. nulla est, Brut. 164. extinguitur, Tac. A. ii, 72. longo, Aen. v, 320.

§ 222A. cum febri, de. Or. iii, 6. improbitas, de Or. ii, 237. aer calore, N.D. ii, 27. assuetus, de Or. iii, 58.

§ 224. puella, Pl. Merc. 13. vir singulares, Pl. Vid. 41. sunt specie, B.G. vi, 28, 1. scopolis, Aen. i, 166.

§ 226. Helvetii, B.G. i, 2, 2. me dignor, Aen. i, 335.


§ 228. stant litore, Aen. vi, 901.

§ 229. a Gergovia, B.G. vii, 59, 1.


§ 234. prima et, Tac. A. i, 37. omnium rerum, Fam. vi, 21, 1.


§ 240. senectus, de Sen. 55. exercitus, Livy, xxxix, 1.

§ 242. virtus, Lael. 100.

§ 244. me oravit, Phil. ii, 45. me oraverunt, Div. Caec. 2. suum genium, Tac. Dial. 9. Hannibalem, Sest.


§ 262. Regulus, *Off.* iii, 100.


§ 265. nihil habebam, *Att.* ix, 10, 1.


§ 270. hoc jam, *Cat.* i, 5. dico me, *Sull.* 27.

§ 275. quare, *Cat.* 1, 32. isto bono, *de Sen.* 33.


§ 278. ne sint, *de Sen.* 34. fuerit, *Verr.* i, 37.


egomet, de Or. i. 82. nemo est, Verr. iv. 115. nemo fuit, B.C. iii, 53. quem audierim, Nep. Ar. 1, 2.


§ 289. tum tua, Hor. Epp. i, 18, 84. cum videbis, Pl. Bacch. 145. stabilitas, Lael. 82.

§ 290. cum tacent, Cat. i, 21. cum te, Att. xiv, 17 A, 4.


§ 296. opto, Verr. Act. Pr. 50. vereor ne, Att. vii, 12, 2.

§ 297. ex quo, F. ii, 24. ita fit, Tusc. Disp. ii, 16. est mos, Brut. 84.

§ 298. quis, Par. 48.

§ 299. illud, Off. iii, 111. hoc uno, de Or. i, 32. bene mihi, Tusc. Disp. i, 97. quod, B.G. i, 44, 6. quod me, Nep. Ep. 5, 6.


§ 302. naturam, Off. i, 100. memoria, de Sen. 21. si quis, B.G. i, 48, 6. si dicendo, Tac. Dial. 19.

§ 303. mentiar, Lael. 10. haec si, Cat. i, 19.


§ 306. ferreus, Fam. xv, 21. 3. dolorem, Phil. 12, 21. si feceris, Fam. v, 19. 2. hoc si, Fam. vii, 1, 6. hunc mihi, Cat. i, 18. nihil, Cat. ii, 10. nisi, Mil. 19.


§ 310. multi, Off. iii, 82. omnia postposui, Fam. xvi, 21, 6. nil obstat, Hor. Sat. i, 1, 40. oderint, Acc. 204. manent, de Sen. 22. nubant, Pl. Aul. 491.

§ 312. quidquid, Aen. ii, 49. quidquid oritur, Div. ii, 60.

§ 314. Regulus, Off. iii, 100. tum Romulus, Liv. i, 9, 2. nuntiatum, B.G. i, 38, 1. dixit, Nep. Them. 7, 5.

§ 315. Ariovistus, B.G. i, 44, 7.

§ 316. milites, B.G. iii, 5, 3.

§ 318. Caesar, B.G. i, 14, 6.

§ 322. concursu, Tac. Dial. 39.

§ 323. demonstrabantur, de Sen. 78. Paetus, Att. ii, 1, 12.

§ 324. nemo, Par. 52. cum diversas, Tac. Dial. 1, 4. mos est, Orat. 151. quod ego, Pl. Capt. 961.


§ 330. apertum est, F. v, 34.


§ 332. Sestius, Sest. 95. traditum, Tusc. Disp. v, 114.

§ 333. audax, Hor. Od. i, 3, 25.

§ 334. huncinc, Hor. Sat. i, 9, 72.

§ 335. interim, B.G. i, 16, 1.

§ 336. assurgentem, Liv. iv, 19.


§ 339. ad pacem, Liv. xxi, 13. hostes, B.G. iii, 6, 2. legati, B.G. iv, 13, 5. quae ille, Sall. Fr. i, 77, 11.

§ 340. legati, B.G. i, 30, 1. do (colloclo), Pl. Tr. 735. hoc est, Att. vii, 22, 2.

§ 341. cum homines, Cat. i, 31. discidia, F. i, 44. horae, de Sen. 69. Caesar, B.G. ii, 35, 3.

§ 342. cita, Hor. Sat. i, 1, 8. qui aether, N.D. ii, 41.

§ 343. adsentatio, Lael. 89.


§ 349. magnus, Nep. Them. 6, 1.

§ 350. erant duo, B.G. i, 6, 1. nisi forte, de Sen. 18. id ut, Nep. Them. 8, 3. co cum, B.G. vii, 7, 4. ut ad, Lael. 5. septimus, de Sen. 38. recepto, B.C. iii, 12, 1. sed pleni, Arch. 14. horribilem, Tusc. Disp. i, 118. simulatam, Tac. A. i, 10.


§ 356. hostium, B.G. iii, 29, 3. mens quoque, de Sen. 36. tanto, Sull. 59.
$358$. pro multitudine, *B.G.* i, 2, 5.


ABBREVIATIONS USED IN INDEX TO THE ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

Ac., Cicero, *Academica.*  
Acc., Accius.  
ad Her., ad Herennium.  
Arch., Cicero, *pro Archia.*  
Att., Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticus.*  
B.C., Caesar, *de Bello Civili.*  
B.G., Caesar, *de Bello Gallico.*  
Brut., Cicero, *Brutus.*  
Caec., Cicero, *pro Caecina.*  
Cat., Cicero, *in Catilinam.*  
Cluent., Cicero, *pro Cluentio.*  
Curt., Quintus Curtius  
de Dom., Cicero, *de Domo Sua.*  
de Or., Cicero, *de Oratore.*  
de Sen., Cicero, *de Senectute.*  
D., Cicero, *de Divinatione.*  
Ecl., Virgil, *Eclogues.*  
Eut., Eutropius.  
F., Cicero, *de Finibus.*  
Fam., Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares.*  
Flac., Cicero, *pro Flacco.*  
Gell, Aulus Gellius.  
Hor., Horace.  
— Epp., *Epistles.*  
— Od., *Odes.*  
— Sat., *Satires.*  
Inv., Cicero, *de Inventione.*  
Juv., Juvenal.  
Lael., Cicero, *Laelius, de Amicitia.*  
Leg., Cicero, *de Legibus.*  
Lig., Cicero, *pro Ligario.*  
Liv., Livy.  
Lucr., Lucretius.  
Marc., Cicero, *pro Marcello.*  
Mil., Cicero, *pro Milone.*  
N.D., Cicero, *de Natura Deorum.*  
Nep., Nepos.  
— Alc., *Alcibiades.*  
— Ar., *Aristides.*  
— Att., *Atticus.*  
— Cat., *Cato.*  
— Chab. *Chabrias.*  
— Cim., *Cimon.*  
— Con., *Conon.*  
— Dat., *Datames.*  
— Ep., *Epaminondas.*  
— Milt., *Miltiades.*  
— Paus., *Pausanias.*
— Them., Themistocles.
— Thras., Thrasybulus.
— Tim., Timoleon.
Off., Cicero, de Officiis.
Or., Cicero, Orator.
Ov., Ovid.
— Am., Amores.
— Met., Metamorphoses.
Par., Cicero, Paradoxa.
Phil., Cicero, Philippics.
Pis., Cicero, in Pisonem.
Planc., Cicero, pro Plancio.
Pl., Plautus.
— Amph., Amphitruo.
— Aul., Aulularia.
— Bacch., Bacchides.
— Capt., Captivi.
— Curc., Curculio.
— Men., Menaechmi.
— Merc., Mercator.
— M.G., Miles Gloriosus.
— Pers., Persa.
— Poen., Poenulus.
— Rud., Rudens.
— Tr., Trinummus.
— Vid., Vidularia.
Q.F., Cicero, ad Quintum Fratrem.
Rosc. Am., Cicero, pro Roscio Amerino.
Sall., Sallust.
— C., Catiline.
— Fr., Fragments.
— Jug., Jugurtha.
Sen., Seneca.
— Ep., Epistles.
— N.Q., Naturales Quaestiones.
Sest., Cicero, pro Sestio.
Sex. Rosc., Cicero, pro Sexto Roscio.
Sil., Silius Italicus.
Stat., Caecilius Statius.
Sull., Cicero, pro Sulla.
Tac., Tacitus.
— A., Annals.
— Agr., Agricola.
— Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus.
— Ger., Germania.
— H., Histories.
Ter., Terence.
— Ad., Adelphoi.
— And., Andria.
— Eun., Eunuchus.
— Hec., Hecyra.
— H.T., Hautontimoroumenos.
— Phor., Phormio.
Tusc. Disp., Cicero, Tusculan Disputations.
Twelve Tables, Laws of the Twelve Tables.
Vatin., Cicero, in Vatiniun.
Verr., Cicero, in Verrem.
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS

NOTE.—Compounds are not given unless they present some special irregularity. The references are to sections.

A.


C.


D.


E.


F.

G.
gemō, 122, I, 5. gerō, 122, I, 1. a. gignō, 122, I, 5. gradior, 122, V.

H.
habeō, 121, II, a. haereō, 121, III. hauriō, 123, III. horreō, 121, II, a. N. 1.

I.

J.
jaceō, 121, II, a. jaciō, 122, III. jubeō, 121, III. jungō, 122, I, I, a. juvō, 120, III.

L.

M.
maereō, 121, II, a. N. 2. mālō, 130. maneō, 121, III. mātūreōscō, 122, IV, 3. medeōr, 121, VII. meminī, 133. mercō, 121, II, a. mercur, 121, VII. mergō, 122, I, I, b. mētior, 123, VII. metuō, 122, II. micō, 120, II. minuō, 122, II. miscēō, 121, II, b. miseret, 138, II. misereor, 121, VII. mittō, 122, I, I, b. molō, 122, I, 5. moveō, 121, II, a. mordeō, 121, IV. morior, 122, V. moveō, 121, V.

N.

O.
obdūreōscō, 122, IV, 3. oblū, 122, I, 6. oblīvīscor, 122, V. obmūtēscō, 122, IV, 3. obrū, 122, II. obstūscō, 122, IV, 1. obsum, 125. obtineō, 121, II, b. ōdī, 133. offerō, 129. oleō, 121, II, a. N. 1. operiō, 123, II. oportet, 138, II. opperior, 123, VII. oder, 123, VII. orior, 123, VII.

P.
Q.


R.


S.

saepiō, 123, III. saliō, 123, II. sanciō, 123, III. sapiō, 122, III. saciō, 123, III. scindō, 122, II, 2. n. scīscō, 122, IV, 2. scribō, 122, I, 1, a. sculpō, 122, I, 1. a. secō, 120, II. sēdeō, 121, V. sentiō, 123, III. sepelīō, 123, I. sequor, 122, V. serō, 122, II, 1. n. serpō, 122, I, 1. a. sileō, 121, II, a, n. sīnō, 122, I, 6. solvō, 122, I, 4. sōnō, 120, II. spargō, 122, I, 1, b. spernō, 122, II, I, 6. splendēō, 121, II, a, n. spondeō, 121, IV. statuō, 122, II. sternō, 122, I, 6. stīnguō, 122, I, 1, a. stō, 120, IV. strepō, 122, II, 5. strīdēō, 121, VI. stringō, 122, I, 1, a. struō, 122, II. stūdeō, 121, II, a, n. 1. suādeo, 121, III. subigō, 122, I, 3. subsum, 125. sum, 100. sūmō, 122, I, 3. suō, 122, II. supersum, 125. sustincō, 121, II, b.

T.


U.

ulcīscor, 122, V. unguō, 122, I, 1. a. urgeō, 121, III. ūrō, 122, I, 1. a. ūtor, 122, V.

V.


GENERAL INDEX.

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

ABBREVIATIONS.—Abl., ablative; acc., accusative; adj., adjective; adv., adverb, adverbia, or adverbially; cf., compare; comp., comparison or comparative; conj., conjunction or conjugation; const., constr., construction; dat., dative; decl., declension; gen., genitive; ind., indicative; indir. disc., indirect discourse; loc., locative; N., note; nom., nominative; plu., plural; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun or pronunciation; sing., singular; subj., subject; subjv., subjunctive; voc., vocative; w., with.
A.

ā, vowel, 2, 1;
—— pronunciation, 3, 1;
—— development of ā before a single consonant, 7, 1, a;
—— before two consonants, 7, 1, b;
—— ā as ending of nom. sing. of 1st decl., 20;
—— in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -ēs of 1st decl., 22;
—— in nom. sing. of Greek nouns in -ē of 1st decl., 22, 3;
—— termination of nom. and acc. plu. of neuters, 23; 35; 48;
—— termination of nom. sing. of nouns of 3d decl., 28;
—— gender of nouns in -ā of 3d decl., 43, 3;
—— ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 1;
—— regular quantity of final a, 363, 1;
—— exceptions to quantity of final a, 363, 1, a-c.

ā, pronunciation, 3, 1;
—— arising by contraction, 7, 2;
—— as ending of stem in 1st decl., 18;
—— ā-stems inflected, 20;
—— in voc. sing. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22;
—— in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -ās of 3d decl., 47, 4;
—— distinguishing vowel of 1st conjugation, 98;
—— ending of imperative act. of 1st conj., 101;
—— final a long by exception, 363, 1, a-c.

ā, ab, abs, use, 142, 1;
—— with town names, 229, 2.

ā to denote agency, 216.
—— to denote separation, 214.
—— place from which, 229.
—— with town names, 229, 2.
—— with abl. of gerund, 338, 4, b.

ā-stems, 20; 98; 101.
Abbreviations of proper names, 373.
Ablative case, 17; 213 f.
—— in -ābus, 21, 2, e.
—— in -d in prons., 84, 3; 85, 3.
—— formation of sing. of adjs. of 3d decl., 67, a; 70, 1-5.
—— of ā-stems, 37; 38.
—— genuine abl. uses, 214 f.
—— absolute, 227.
—— of agent, 216.
—— of accompaniment, 222.
—— of accordance, 220, 3.
—— of association, 222A.
—— of attendant circumstance, 221; 227, 2, e).
—— of cause, 219.
—— of comparison, 217.
—— of degree of difference, 223.
—— of fine or penalty, 208, 2, b.
—— of manner, 220.
—— of material, 224, 3.
—— of means, 218.
—— of penalty, 208, 2, b.
—— of place where, 228.
—— of place whence, 229.
—— of price, 225.
—— of quality, 224.
—— of separation, 214;
—— with compounds of dis- and sē-, 214, 3.
—— of source, 215.
—— of specification, 226.
of time at which, 230.
of time during which, 231, 1.
of time within which, 231.
of way by which, 213, 9.
with continēri, cōnīstīre, cōnīstāre, 218, 4.
with special phrases, 218, 7.
with jungere,miscère, mūlāre, etc., 222A.
with faciō,fīō, 218, 6
with prepositions, 142; 213 f.
with verbs of filling, 218, 8.
with verbs and adj.s. of freeing, 214, I, a, and N. 1.
with adj.s. of plenty, 218, 8.
with ĭōr, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, 218, 1.
with opus and ĭūsus, 218, 2
with nītor, innīxus, and frētus, 218, 3.

abs., 142, 1.
absēns, 125.

Absolute, ablative, 227.
—— time, of participles, 336, 4.
—— use of verbs, 174, a.
Abstract nouns, 12, 2, b);
—— plural of, 55, 4, c).
-ābus, 21, 2, e).
ac, 341, 2, b);
—— = as, than, 341, 1, c).
Acatalectic verses, 366, 9.
accēdit ut, 297, 2.
Accent, 6;
—— in gen. of nouns in -īus and -ium, 25, 1 and 2.
accedit ut, 297, 2.
accidit quod, 299, 1, b.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 222.
Accordance, abl. of, 220, 3.
Accusative case, 17;
—— in -ān and -ēn of Greek nouns, 22;
—— in -om in 2d decl., 24;
—— in -on and -ōn in Greek nouns, 27;
—— in -ā in sing. of Greek nouns, 47, 1;
—— in -ās in plu., 47, 3;
—— in -im and -is in i-stems, 37; 38;
—— acc. sing. neut. as adv., 77, 3; 176, 3; 172 f.
—— of duration of time, 181.
—— of result produced, 173, B; 176.
—— of extent of space, 181.
—— of limit of motion, 182 f.
—— of neut. prons. or adj.s., 176, 2.
—— of person or thing affected, 173, A; 175.
in exclamations, 183.
in subj. of inf., 184.
with admoneō, commoneō, etc., 207.
with adv. force, 176, 3.
with compounds, 175, 2.
with impersonal verbs, 175, 2, c.
with intransitive verbs, 175, 2, a.
with passive used as middle, 175, 2, d).
with verbs of remembering and forgetting (meminī, oblīvīscor, reminīscor), 206, 1; 2.
with verbs expressing emotion, 175, 2, b.
with verbs of tasting and smelling, 176, 5.
with verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, etc., 177.
with verbs of asking, requesting, demanding, teaching, concealing, 178, 1-5.
— with adj. (proprius, proximus), 141, 3.
— with adverbs (propius, proximē), 141, 3; 
— clam, pridiē, 144, 2.
— Genavam ad oppidum, 182, 2, a.
— cognate acc., 176, 4.
— Greek acc., 180.
— synecdochical acc., 180.
— two accs., direct obj. and pred. acc., 177;
— person affected and result produced, 178;
— with compounds of trāns, 179;
— with other compounds, 179, 2.
— with prepositions, 141; 179 f.
— retained in pass., 178, 2.
Accusing, verbs of, constr., 208 f.
accūsō, constr., 178, 1, d).
ācer, decl., 68;
— compared, 71, 3.
Acquitting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.
ac sī with subjv., 307, 1.
ad, 'toward,' 'in vicinity of,' 182, 3;
— with acc. alternating with dat., 358, 2.
— compounds of ad governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, d.
— with gerund denoting purpose, 338, 3.
-adēs, patronymic ending, 148, 6, a.
adg- = agg-, 9, 2.
Adjectives, 62 f; 354;
— derivation of, 150 f.
— of 1st and 2d decl., 63 ff.
— in -ius, gen. sing., 63, a.
— of 3d decl., 67, ff;
— in abl., 70, 5.
— comparison of adj., 71 f.;
— in -er, 71, 3;
— in -ilis, 71, 4;
— comparative lacking, 73, 3;
— defective comparison, 73;
— not admitting comparison, 75;
— comparison by magis and maximē, 74.
— numerals, 78 f.
syntax, 233 ff.;
— attributive and predicate adj., 233, 2.
— agreement, 234, f.
— used substantively, 236 f.
— denoting part of an object, 241, 1.
— with force of adverbs, 239.
— force of comp. and superl., 240, 1.
— not followed by infinitive, 333.
— not used with proper names, 354, 3.
— equivalent to a poss. gen., 354, 4.
— special Latin equivalents of Eng. adj., 354, 1.
— equiv. to rel. clause, 241, 2.
— as pred. acc., 177, 2.
— position of adj., 350, 4.
— pronominal adj., 92.
— governing gen., 204.
— governing dat., 192.
— governing acc., 141, 3.
— construed with abl., 214, 1, d; 217, 1; 218, 8; 223; 226, 2; 227, 1.
— with supine in -ū, 340, 2.
adl- = all-, 9, 2.
admoneō, constr., 207.
Admonishing, const. of verbs of, 207.
ad- = arr-, 9, 2.
ads- = ass-, 9, 2.
ad sensum, constr., 235, B, 2, c; 254, 4.
adulēcēns, spelling, 9, 2.
adulter, decl., 23, 2.
adultus, force, 114, 2.
Adverbs, defined, 140;
—— formation and comparison, 76 f.; 140; 157.
—— in -iter from adjjs. in -us, 77, 4.
—— in -tus and -tim, 77, 5.
—— in ē and -o, 77, 2.
—— numeral, 79.
—— as preps., 144, 2.
—— derivation of, 157.
—— with gen., 201, 2; 3; and a.
—— special meanings, 347.
—— position, 350, 6.
Adversative clauses, 309.
—— conjunctions, 343.
adversus, prep. with acc., 141.
ae, how pronounced, 3, 2;
—— phonetic changes, 7, 1, d.
aedēs, plu., 61.
aequālis, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, a;
—— as subst., 238.
aequor, decl., 34.
aequum est = aequum sit, 271, 1, b).
aes, in plu., 55, 4, b;
—— lacks gen. plu., 57, 7.
aetās, decl., 40, 1, e);
—— id aetāsis, 185, 2.
-aeus, suffix, 152, 3.
aevom, decl., 24.
Affected, acc. of person or thing, 175.
Agency, dat. of, 189;
—— abl., 216.
Agent, abl., 216;
—— with names of animals, 216, 2.
ager, decl., 23.
Agreement, nouns, 166; 168; 169, 2; 3; 4.
—— adjjs., 234;
———— in gender, 235, B;
———— in number, 235, A;
—— pronjs., 250;
—— verbs, with one subj., 254, 1;
———— with two or more subjjs., 255, 1.
-āī, case-ending, gen. sing., 1st decl., poet., 21, 2, b).
aīn, 135, N.
ajō, 135;
—— quantity of first syllable, 362, 5.
al, declension of nouns in, 39.
alacer, decl., 68, 1;
—— comp., 73, 4.
aliqua, 91, 2.
aliquē, 91; 91, 2.
aliquis, 91; 252, 2;
—— aliquis dīcat, dīcerit, 280, 1.
alīs, suffix, 151, 2.
aliter ac, 341, 1, c.
alius, 66; 92, 1;
— used correlative, 253, 1.
_alius ac_, 'other than,' 341, 1, c).
_Allia_, gender of, 15, 3, N.
_allicio_, conj., 109, 2, b).
Alliteration, 375, 3.
Alphabet, 1.
_alter_, decl., 66; 92, 1;
— used correlative, 253, 1.
Alternative questions, 162, 4;
— indirect, 300, 4.
_alterus_, decl., 92, 2.
alvus, gender of, 26, 1, b.
amandus, conj., 115.
amatiurus, conj., 115.
ambo (ambi), 159, 3, N.
ambo, 80, 2, a;
— usage, 355, 2.
amo, conj., 101.
amplius = amplius quam, 217, 3.
amussis, -im, 38, 1.
an, 162, 4, and a; 300, 4;
— _haud scio an, nescio an_, 300, 5.
Anacoluthon, 374, 6.
Anapaest, 366, 2.
Anaphora, 350, 11, b).
Anastrophe of prep., 141, 2; 142, 3; 144, 3.
anceps (syllaba anceps), defined, 366, 10.
Androgos, decl., 27.
animal, decl., 39.
Animals, as agents, 216, 2.
_aniel_, locative, 232, 3.
amon, in double questions, 162, 4.
Answers, 162, 5.
_ante_, prep. w. acc., 141;
— as adv., 144, 1;
— dat. w. verbs compounded w. _ante_, 187, 11;
— in expressions of time, 357, 1; 371, 5;
— _ante diem_, 371, 5; 6.
Antecedent of rel., 251.
— attraction of, 251, 4.
— incorporated with rel., 251, 4.
Antecedent omitted, 251, 1.
— repeated with rel., 251, 3.
Antepenult, 6, 2.
antepo, with dat., 187, 111, 2.
antequam, with ind., 291;
— with subjv., 292.
Anticipation, denoted by subjv., w. _antequam_ and _priusquam_, 292;
— by subjv. with _dum_, _donec_, _quoad_, 293, 111, 2; 374, 5.
 anus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 3.
Aorist tense, see Historical perfect.
Apodosis, 301 ff.
— in conditional sent. of 1st type, 302, 4;
— result clauses as apodoses, 322;
— quin clauses as apodoses, 322;
— ind. questions as apodoses, 322, b;
— _potuerim_ in apodosis, 322, c;
— apodosis in indir. disc., 319-321;
— in expressions of obligation, ability, etc., 304, 3, a;
— with periphrastic conjugations, 304, 3, b.
Apposition, 169;
--- agreement, 169, 2;
--- partitive, 169, 5;
--- with voc. in nom., 171, 2;
--- genitive w. force of appositive, 202;
--- id as appositive of clause, 247, 1, b;
--- inf. as appositive, 326; 329;
--- subst. clauses as appositives, 282, 1, f; 294; 297, 3.
Appositive of locative, 169, 4;
--- with acc. of limit of motion, 182, 2, a;
--- with town names, in abl. of place whence, 229, 2.
--- position of, 350, 2.
aprus, w. dat., 192, 2.
apud, prep. w. acc., 141.
Archiās; declension of, 22.
-ar, declension of nouns in, 39.
arguō, constr., 178, 1, d).
-āris, suffix, 151, 2.
-ārium, suffix, 148, 3.
-ārius, suffix, 151, 2.
armiger, decl., 23, 2.
Arrangement of words, 348-350;
--- of clauses, 351.
Arsis, defined, 366, 6.
artus, dat. and abl. plu. of, 49, 3.
ars, decl., 40.
-ās, acc. plu. in Greek nouns, 47, 3.
-ās, old gen. sing., 1st decl., case-ending, 21, 2, a).
--- ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22.
--- gender of nouns in -ās, 43, 2; 45, 1.
--- voc. of Greek nouns in -ās, antis, 47, 4.
--- -ātis, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, c).
Asking, case const, with verbs of, 178, 1, c;
--- subst. clauses w., 295, 1;
--- ind. questions, 300, 1.
Aspirates, 2, 3, c.
Assimilation of consonants, 8, 4 f.; 9, 2.
Association, abl. of, 222A.
Asyndeton, 341, 4, a); 346.
at, 343, 1, d).
-ātim, suffix, 157, 2.
Atlās, decl., 47, 4.
atomus, gender of, 26, 1, c).
atque, 341, 2, b);
--- = as, 341, 1, c).
atqui, 343, 1, e).
Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 221: 227, 2, e).
Attraction of demonstratives, 246, 5;
--- of relatives, 250, 5;
--- subjunctive by attraction, 324;
--- of adjectives, 327, 2, a; 328, 2.
Attributive adjns., 233, 2.
-ātus, its force as suffix, 151, 4.
audacter, formation and comparison, 76, 2.
audo, conj., 114, 1.
audiō, conj., 107;
--- with pres. partic., 337, 3.
aulai, archaic gen., 21, 2, b.
ausus, force as participle, 336, 5.
aut, 342, 1, a).
autem, 343, 1, c); 350, 8.
Auxiliary omitted in infin., 116, 5:
— in finite forms, 166, 3.
*auxilium, auxilia*, 61.
-āx, suffix, 150, 2.

**B.**

*balneum, balneae*, 60, 2.
*barbitos*, decl., 27.
Believing, verbs of, with dat., 187, II.
*bēlī*, locative, 232, 2.
*bēllum*, decl., 23.
*bene*, comparison, 77, 1.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
*benevolus*, comparison, 71, 5, a).
-ber, declension of month names in, 68, 1.
-bilis, suffix, 150, 4.
*bonus*, decl., 63; comparison, 72.
*bōs*, decl., 41.
Brachylogy, 374, 2.
Bucolic diaeresis, 368, 3, d
-bulūm, suffix, 147, 4.
-bundus, suffix, 150, 1.
*būris*, decl., 38, 1

**C.**

C., for G. as abbreviation of *Gāius*, 373.
*caedes*, decl., 40.
Caesura, 366, 8:
— in dactylic hexameter 368, 3.
*calcar*, decl., 39.
Calendar, 371; 372.
Calends, 371, 2, a).
*campester*, decl., 68, 1
*canis*, decl., 38, 2.
*capiō*, conj., 110
*carbasus*, gender of, 26, 1 b).
*carcer, carcerēs*, 61.
Cardinals, defined. 78, 1;
— list of, 79;
— decl., 80;
— with and without *et*, 81, 1; 3;
— expressed by subtraction, 81, 2;
— replaced by attributives in poetry, 81, 4, d.
*cārē*, comparison, 76, 2.
*carrō*, decl., 42.
*carrus, carrum*, 60, 1.
Cases, 17;
— alike in form, 19; 170 ff.
Case-endings, 17, 3.
*castrum, castra*, 61.
Catalectic verses, 366, 9.
*causā*, with gen., 198, 1;
— *nulla causa est cūr*, with subjv., 295, 7.
Causal clauses, 285; 286;
— clause of characteristic with accessory notion of cause, 283, 3.
— conjunctions, 345.
Cause, abl. of, 219; 227, 2, d)
cāvē, cāvē nē in prohibitions, 276, b.
-ce, 6, 3 f.; 87, footnote 23.
cedo, cētē, 137, 3.
cēdō, with dat. 187, II.
cēler, decl., 68, 1.
cēler, decl., 68, 2.
cēlō, constr., 178, 1, e).
cēnātus, force, 114, 2.
cētera, adverbial acc., 185, 2.
ceteri, use, 253, 4.

Characteristic, clauses of, 283;
—— denoting cause or opposition (‘although’), 283, 3;
—— gen. of, 208, 1;
—— abl., 224.

Charge, gen. of, 208, 1; 2.
Chiasmus, 350, 11, c).
Choosing, const. w. verbs of, 177, 1-3.
circā, circiter, circum, preps. w. acc., 141.
circum, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.
circumdō, const., 187, 1, a.

Circumstance, abl. of attendant, 221.
cis, prep. w. acc., 141.
citerior, comparison, 73, 1.
cito, 77, 2, a.
citrā, prep. w. acc., 141.
civitās decl., 40, 1, e.
clam, with acc., 144, 2.
Clauses, coïnd. and subord., 164, 165.
Clauses of characteristic, 283;
—— purpose, 282;
—— result, 284;
—— causal, 285;
—— temporal with postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, etc., 287;
—— with cum, 288;
—— substantive clauses, 294 f.;
—— condition, 301 f.;
—— conditional comparison, 307;
—— concessive, 308;
—— adversative, 309;
—— wish or proviso, 310;
—— relative, 311 f.; 283 f.
clāvis, decl., 38, 1.
Clinging, construction of verbs of, 258, 3.
clipeus, clipeum, 60, 1.
Close of sentences, cadences used, 350, 12.
coepī, conj., 133;
—— coeptus est, 133, 1.
Cognate acc., 176, 4.
cognōmen, 373.
cōgō, w. acc., 178, 1, d);
—— w. infin., 331, VI.
Collective nouns, 12, 2, a);
—— w. plu. verb, 254, 4.
colus, gender of, 26, 1, b).
com-, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.
comēdō, conj., 128, 2.
comētēs, decl., 22.
comitia, as time expression, 230, 1.
Commanding, dat. w. verbs of, 187, II;
—— subst. clause w. verbs of, 295, 1;
—— commands expressed by jussive subjv., 275;
—— by imperative, 281.
Common gender, 15, B, n. 1.
—— nouns, 12, 1.
— syllables, 5, B, 3.
*commonefaciō*, w. gen. and acc., 207.
*commoneō*, w. gen. and acc., 207.
*commūnis*, w. gen., 204, 2;
— with dat., 204, 2, a.
*commūtō*, w. abl., 222A.
Comparatives, decl., 69;
— w. abl., 217;
— w. *quam*, 217, 2;
— occasional meaning, 240.
— two required in Latin, 240, 4.
Comparison of adj., 71 ff.;
— of adverbs, 76; 77.
— participles as adj., 71, 2.
— adj. in *-dicus, -ficus, -volus*, 71, 5.
— defective, 73.
— abl. of, 217.
Comparison, conditional, 307.
Compendiary comparison, 374, 2, b);
— w. result clauses, 284, 4;
— w. clauses of characteristic, 283, 2, a.
Completed action, tenses expressing, 262-4; 267, 3.
Compounds, 158 ff.;
— spelling of, 9, 2.
Compound sentences, 164.
— verbs governing acc., 175, 2, a;
— governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, d.
Conative uses of pres., 259, 2;
— of imperf., 260, 3;
— of pres. partic., 336, 2, a.
Concessive clauses, 308;
— *although* as accessory idea to clause of characteristic, 283, 3.
— subjunctive, 278.
Conclusion, see Apodosis.
Concrete nouns, 12, 2, a).
Condemning, verbs of, constr., 208, f.
Conditional clauses of comparison, 307.
— sentences, 1st type (nothing implied), 302;
— in indir. disc., 319;
— 2d type (*should*-*would*), 303;
— in indir. disc., 320;
— 3d type (contrary to fact), 304;
— in indir. disc., 321;
— abl. abs. equivalent to, 227, 2, b);
— introduced by relative pronouns, 312;
— general conditions, 302, 2; 3;
— indicative in contrary-to-fact apodeses, 304, 3;
— protasis omitted or implied, 305, 1;
— protasis contained in imperative, or jussive subj., 305, 2;
— employment of *nisi, sī nōn, sī minus*, 306;
— conditional relative sentences, 312, 2.
*cōnfidō*, w. abl., 219, 1, a.
Conjugation, 11; 93 ff.;
— the four conjugations, 98;
— periphrastic, 115;
— peculiarities of conj., 116.
Conjunctions, 145, 1; 341 f.
*cōnor*, with inf., 295, 5, a.
Consecutive clauses, see Result clauses.
*cōnsistere*, with abl., 218, 4.
Consonant stems, nouns, 29 ff.;
— adjs., 70, 1.
— partially adapted to i-stems, 40.
Consonants, 2, 2 f.;
— pronunciation, 3, 3.
— double, 2, 9.
— combinations of, in division into syllables, 4, 2 f.
Consonant changes, 8;
— omission of finals 8, 3;
— assimilation of, 8, 4 f.
— stems, 29;
— following analogy of i-stems, 40.
cōnspicū, conj., 109, 2, b).
cōnsūtūr, w. abl., 218, 4.
Construction acc. to sense, 254, 4; 235, B, 2, c).
cōnsūtūrūdō est, with subjv. substantive clause, 297, 3.
cōnsūvē = pres., 262, A.
cōnsulāris, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, a.
Contending, verbs of, with dat., 358, 3.
contentus, w. abl., 219, 1.
continerē, with abl., 218, 4.
contingit ut, 297, 2.
Continued action, tenses for, 257, 1, b.
contrā, prep. w. acc., 141;
— as adv., 144, 1.
Contraction, 7, 2.
— length of vowel as result of, 5, A, 1, b).
Contrary-to-fact conditions, 304.
Convicting, verbs of, constr., 208 f.
Coördinate clauses, 165.
— conjunctions, 341 f.
cōpia, cōpiae, 61.
Copulative conjunctions, 341.
cor, lacks gen. plu., 57, 7.
cornū, decl., 48.
Correlative conjunctions, 341, 3; 342, 2.
— adverbs, 140.
cottūdīē, spelling, 9, 2.
Countries, gender of, 26, 1, a.
Crime, gen. of, 208, 1; 2.
-crum, suffix, 147, 4.
-culum, suffix, 147, 4.
-culūs (a, um), suffix, 148, 1.
cum, appended, 142, 4.
cum (conj.), 'when,' 288-290;
— 'whenever,' 288, 3.
— adversative, 309, 3.
— causal, 286, 2.
— explicative, 290.
— to denote a recurring action, 288, 3; 289, a.
— inversum, 288, 2.
cōm... tum, 290, 2.
cum prīmūm, 287, 1.
cum, spelling of, 9, 1.
cum (prep.), with abl. of manner, 220;
— with abl. of accompaniment, 222;
— appended to prons., 142, 4.
-cundus, suffix, 150, 1.
cupiō, conj, 109, 2, a);
— with subst. clause developed from optative, 296;
— w. inf., 331, IV, and a.
cūr, nūlā causa est cūr, w. subjv., 295, 7.
cūrō, with gerundive const as obj., 337, 8, b, 2.
Customary action, 259, 1; 260, 2.

D.

D, changed to s, 8, 2;
— d final omitted, 8, 3;
— assimilated, 8, 4.
Dactyl, 366, 2.
Dactylic hexameter, 368.
— pentameter, 369.
dapis, defective, 57, 6.
Daring, verbs of, with obj. inf., 328, 1.
Dates 371, 2-5;
— as indeclinable nouns, 371, 6;
— in leap year, 371, 7.
Dative 17;
— irregular, 1st decl., 21, 2, c);
— 3d decl., 47, 5;
— 4th decl., 49, 2, 3;
— 5th decl., 52, 1 and 3; 186 ff.
— in the gerundive const., 339, 7.
— of agency, 189.
— of direction and limit of motion, 193.
— of indir. obj., 187.
— of advantage or disadvantage, so called, 188, 1.
— of local standpoint, 188, 2, a).
— of person judging, 188, 2, c).
— of possession, 190; 359, 1.
— of purpose or tendency, 191; 339, 7.
— of reference, 188.
— of separation, 188, 2, d).
— of the gerund, 338, 2.
— with adj.s., 192;
— with proprius, commune, 204, 2;
— with similitis, 204, 3.
— with compound verbs, 187, III.
— with intrans. verbs, 187, III.
— with nōmen est, 190, 1.
— with impersonal pass. verbs, 187, II, b.
— with trans. verbs, 187, I.
— with verbs of mingling, 358, 3.
— ethical dat., 188, 2, b).
dē, prep. w. abl., 142;
— with abl. instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, a;
— with verbs of reminding, 207, a;
— compounds of dē governing dat., 188, 2, d;
— dē vī, with verbs of accusing and convicting, 208, 3;
— with gerund and gerundive, 338, 4, b.
dea, deābus, 21, 2, c).
dēbēbām, dēbūi in apodosis, 304, 3, a).
dēbēo, governing obj. inf., 328, 1.
dēbūi, with pres inf., 270, 2.
decemvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).
dēcernē, w. subst. clause developed from volitive, 295, 4.
decet, w. acc., 175, 2, c).
Declarative sentences, defined, 161, 1;
— in indir. disc., 314.
Declension, 11;
— heteroclites, 59.
— stems and gen. terminations, 18.
1st decl., 20-22;
2d decl., 23-27;
3d decl., 28-47;
4th decl., 48-50;
5th decl., 51-53;
of Greek nouns, 22; 27; 47;
of adj., 62-69;
of prns., 84-90.
Decreeing, verbs of, w. subj., 295, 4.
dédece, 175, 2, c).
Defective verbs, 133 f.
—— nouns, 54 f.; 52, 4; 57;
—— comparison, 73.
Definite perfect, see Present perfect.
Degree of difference, abl. of, 223.
Degrees of comparison, 71 ff.
délecté, w. inf. as subj., 327, 1.
délecor, w. abl. of cause, 219.
Deliberate subj., 277;
—— in indir. questions, 300, 2;
—— in indir. disc., 315, 3.
Demanding, verbs of, w. two accs., 178, 1;
—— w. subst. clause, 295, 1.
Demonstrative pronouns, 87; 246;
—— of 1st, 2d, and 3d persons, 87;
—— position of demonstratives, 350, 5, a.
Denominative verbs, 156.
Dental mutes, 2, 4;
—— stems, 33.
Dependent clauses, 282 ff.
Deponent verbs, 112;
—— forms with passive meanings, 112, b);
—— semi-deponents, 114.
Depriving, verbs of, w. abl, 214, 1, b.
Derivatives, 147 f.
- dés, patronymics in, 148, 6.
Description, imperfect as tense of, 260, 1, a.
Desideratives, 155, 3.
Desire, adj. of, w. gen., 204, 1;
—— verbs of, w. subst. clauses, 296, 1.
déterior, 73, 1.
deus, decl., 25, 4.
dévertor, 114, 3.
dextor, decl, 65, 1.
dé, 159, 3, N.
Diacritic, 366, 8;
—— bucolic d., 368, 3, d).
Diastole, 367, 2.
dic, 116, 3.
dictor, dictum est, w. inf., 332, note.
díc, accent of compounds of, in imperative, 116, 3.
-dicus, comparison of adj. in, 71, 5.
Dó, decl, 47, 8.
dé, decl., 51;
—— gender, 53.
Difference, abl of degree of, 223.
difficile est = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b).
dificilis, comp., 71, 4.
dignor, with abl., 226, 2.
dignus, 226, 2;
—— in rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 3.
Dimeter, verses, 366, 11.
Diminutives, 148, 1.
Diphthongs, 2, 1; 3, 2;
—— diphthong stems, 41;
—— diphthongs shortened, 362, 2.
diphthongus, gender of, 26, 1. c).
Dipodies, 366, 11.
Direct reflexives, 244, 1.
—— object, 172.
—— quotation, 313.
—— discourse, 313.
—— questions, 162.
dis-, in compounds, 159, 3, N.
Disjunctive conjunctions, 342.
dissimilis, comp., 71, 4.
Distributives, 63, 2; 78, 1; 79; 81, 4.
diū, compared, 77, 1.
dīves, decl., 70, 1;
—— compared, 71, 6.
dīxī, 116, 4, c.
dō, conj., 127.
doceā, with acc., 178, 1, b);
—— with inf., 331, VI.
domī, locative, 232, 2.
domō, 229, 1, b).
domōs, 182, 1, b.
domum, 182, 1, b);
—— 'house,' in acc., 182, N.
domus, decl., 49, 4;
—— gender, 50.
dōne, with ind., 293;
—— with subjv., 293, III, 2.
dōnō, constr., 187, 1, a.
dōs, gender, 44, 3.
Double consonants, 2, 9.
—— questions, 162, 4;
—— indirect, 300, 4.
Doubting, verbs of, w. quīn, 298.
Dubitativo subjunctive, see Deliberative.
dubitō, dubium est, nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, with quīn, 298;
—— nōn dubitō w. inf., 298, a.
dūc, 116, 3.
dūcō, accent of compounds of, in imper., 116, 3.
duīm, duīnt, 127, 2.
-duīm, 6, 3.
dūm, temporal with ind., 293;
—— with subjv., 293, III, 2;
—— in wishes and provisos, 310.
dummodo, 310.
duo, decl, 80, 2.
Duration of time, 181, 2.
Duty, expressed by gerundive, 189, 337, 8;
—— verbs of duty in conclusion of cond. sentences contrary-to-fact, 304, 3, a;
—— subst. clauses dependent on verbs of, 295, 6;
—— inf. w. verbs of duty, 327, 1; 328, 1; 330;
—— 'it is the duty of,' 198, 3;
—— 'I perform a duty, 218, 1.
duumvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).
dux, decl, 32.

E.
č, as vowel, 2, 1;
—— as second member of diphthongs, 2, 1;
—— sound of, 3, 1;
—— change, to į, 7, 1, a;
—— for ā, 7, 1, c;
—— in voc. sing. of 2d decl., 23;
—— in abl. sing. of 3d decl., 31;
—— dropped in nom. of neuters of 3d decl., 39;
—— -ē for -ī in abl. of mare, 39;
—— alternating w. ī in abl. sing. of ī-stems, 37, 38;
—— for ē in gen. sing. of 5th decl., 52, 1;
—— in abl. sing. of adj. of 3d decl., 70, 1;
—— in benē and malē, 77, 1;
—— distinguishing vowel of 3d conj., 98;
—— before j, 362, 5;
—— for -ē in imperatives, 363, 2, b;
—— in temerē and saepē, 363, 2, c.
ĕ, pronunciation, 3, 1;
—— by contraction, 7, 2;
—— as ending of Greek nouns, 22;
—— ĕ-stems, 51;
—— ending of dat. of 5th decl., 52, 3;
—— distinguishing vowel of 2d conj., 98;
—— -ē in famē 363, 2, a;
—— — in adverbs, 363, 2, c
ē, ex, use, 142; see ex.
ecquis, 91, 6.
edic, 116, 3.
Editorial 'we,' 242, 3.
edō, 128.
edūc, 116, 3.
efficiō ut, 297, 1.
efficitur ut, 297, 2.
Effort, subj. w. verbs of, 295, 5.
egēō, w. abl., 214, 1, c.
egō, 84.
егомет, 84, 2.
ei, diphthong, 2, 1; 3, 2.
e-ēi, gen. of 5th decl., 52, 1.
e-ēis, 148, 6, b).
ējus, as poss., 86, 1;
—— quantity, 362, 5.
Elegiac distich, 369, 2.
Elision, 266, 7.
Ellipsis, 374, 1.
e-līus (a, um), 148, 1.
Emphasis, 349.
Enclitics, accent of preceding syllable, 6, 3.
—— -met, 84, 2;
—— -pte, 86, 3;
—— cum as enclitic, 142, 4
End of motion, see Limit.
Endings, case endings, 17, 3;
—— personal, of verb, 96;
—— in formation of words, 147 f.
enim, 345.
-eńsimus (-ęnsumus), 79, N.
e-ęnis, 151, 2; 152, 3.
Envy, verbs of, with dat., 187, II
eō, 132;
—— cpds., 132, 1.
Epexegetical genitive, 202.
Epistolary tenses, 265.
epistula, spelling, 9, 2.
epitomē, decl., 22.
epulum, epulae, 60, 2.
equābus, 21, 2, e).
equester, decl., 68, 1.
equos, decl., 24.
-er, decl., of nouns in, 23;  
—— adj.s., 63; 64; 65;  
—— adj.s. in -er compared, 71, 3.
ergā, prep. w. acc., 141.
ergō, 344, 1, b).
-erius, suffix, 154.
-ēs, gender of nouns in, 43, 1;  
—— —— exception, 44, 5;  
—— in nom. plu. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 2.
-ēs, ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22.  
—— gen. -is, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, a).
esse, conjugation of, 100;  
—— compounds of, 125; 126;  
—— esse omitted, 116, 5.
est quī, with subj., 283, 2.
et, 341, 1, a;  
—— in enumerations, 341, 4, c).
et is, 247, 4.
et ... neque, 341, 3.
Ethical dative, 188, 2, b).
etiam, in answers, 162, 5.
et nōn, 341, 2, c).
etī, 'although,' 309, 2;  
—— etī, 'even if,' 309, 2, a.
etum, suffix, 148, 3.
etus, inflection of Greek nouns in, 47, 6;  
—— adj. suffix, 151, 1.
ēvenit ut, 297, 2.
ex, 142, 2;  
—— with abl., instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, a;  
—— compounds of, with dat., 188, 2, d;  
—— with abl. of source, 215, 1.
Exchanging, verbs of, with abl. of association, 222A.
Exclamation, acc. of, 183.
Exclamatory sentences, 161, 3.
Expectancy, clauses denoting, in subjv., 292, 1; 293, III, 2.
expostō, constr., 178, 1, a).
exsistō, spelling, 9, 2.
exspectā, spelling, 9, 2.
exterī, xterior, 73, 2.
extremeus, use, 241, 1.
exuō, w. abl., 214, 1, b.

F.

f, pronunciation, 3, 3;  
—— nf, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a.
fac, 116, 3;  
—— with subjv., 295, 5.
facile, 77, 3.
facitis, comp., 71, 4.
faciō, 109, 2, a);  
—— pass. of, 131.
—— in imper., 116, 3.
\textit{falsus}, comparison, 73, 3.
\textit{fame}, 59, 2, b).
Familiarity, adj. of, w. gen., 204, 1.
\textit{familias}, 21, 2, a.
\textit{fari}, 136.
\textit{fas}, indeclinable, 58.
\textit{faucis}, decl., 40, 1, d.
Favor, verbs signifying, with dat., 187, II.
Fearing, verbs of, constr. 296, 2.
\textit{febris}, decl. 38, 1.
\textit{fellx}, 70.
Feminine, see Gender.
Feminine caesura, 368, 3, c.
\textit{femur}, decl. 42, 4.
\textit{-fer}, decl. of nouns in; adjs., 23, 2;
—— adjs. 65, 1.
\textit{fero}, and its compounds, 129.
\textit{-ficus}, comparison of adj. in, 71, 5.
\textit{fidei}, 52, 1.
\textit{fido}, 114, 1;
—— with abl., 219, 1, a.
\textit{fidus}, compared, 73, 3.
\textit{fierem, fieri} 362, 1, c;
—— \textit{fieri potest ut}, 298, 2.
Fifth decl., 51 f.
Figures of rhetoric, 375.
—— of syntax, 374.
\textit{filii}, 25, 3.
\textit{filia, filiabus}, 21, 2, e
Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 218, 8.
Final clauses, see Purpose clauses.
Final consonant omitted, 8, 3.
Final syllables, quantity, 363, 364.
\textit{finis, finis}, 61.
Finite verb, 95.
\textit{fia}, conj., 131.
\textit{fia}, with abl., 218, 6.
First conj., 101;
—— principal parts of verbs of, 120;
—— deponents of 1st conj., 113.
First decl., 20 f.;
—— peculiarities, 21;
—— Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22.
\textit{fit ut}, 297, 2.
\textit{flagiio}, constr., 178, 1, a.
\textit{fodiio}, conj., 109, 2, a.
Foot, in verse, 366, 2.
'For,' its Latin equivalents, 358, 1.
\textit{fore}, 100, footnote 32.
\textit{fore ut}, 270, 3;
—— 297, 2.
\textit{forem, foris}, etc., 100, footnote 31.
\textit{fortis}, 228, 1, c.
Formation of words, 146 f.
\textit{fors, forte}, 57, 2, a.
\textit{fortior}, decl., 69.
\textit{fortis}, 69.
\textit{fortuna, fortuinae}, 61.
Fourth conj., 107.
Fourth decl., 48;
dat. in -ā, 49, 2;  
gen. in -ī, 49, 1;  
adbl. plu. in -ubus, 49, 3.
fraude, abl. of manner, 220, 2.
Free, abl. w. adjs. signifying, 214, 1, d.
Freeding, abl. w. verbs of, 214, 1, a.
frēnum, plu. of, 60, 2.
Frequentatives, 155, 2.
frītus w. abl., 218, 3.
Fricatives, 2, 7.
Friendly, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 192, 1.
früctus, decl., 48.
frūgi, compared, 72; 70, 6.
frūgis, 57, 6.
fruor, with abl., 218, 1;  
in gerundive constr., 339, 4.
fugīō, conj., 109, 2, a).
frī, frūst, etc., for sum, es, etc., in compound tenses, 102, footnotes 36, 37.
Fullness, adjs. of, w. abl., 218, 8;  
gen., 204, 1.
fiungor, w. abl., 218, 1;  
in gerundive constr., 339, 4.
furt, decl., 40, 1, d.
furtīō, abl. of manner, 220, 2.
Future tense, 161;  
imp. force, 261, 3.  
time in subjv., 269.
perfect, 264;  
with fut. meaning, 133, 2;  
inf., 270, 4.
imperative, 281, 1.
ininitive, 270;
perihrastic fut. inf., 270, 3, and a.
participle, 337, 4.
futūrum esse ut, with subjv., 270, 3.

G.

gaudeō, semi-deponent, 114, 1.
gemō, w. acc., 175, 2, b.
Gender 13-15;  
in 1st decl., 20; 21;  
in 2d decl., 23;  
exceptions, 26;  
in 3d decl., 43 f.;  
in 4th decl., 50;  
in 5th decl., 53;  
determined by endings, 14;  
by signification, 15, A;  
heterogeneous nouns, 60.
gener, decl., 23, 2.
General relatives, 312, 1;  
general truths, 259, 1; 262, B, 1;  
‘general’ conditions, 302, 2; 3.
Genitive, 17;  
in -ī for -iī, 25, 1 and 2;  
of 4th decl., in -ī, 52, 1;  
of 5th decl. in -ī, 52, 2;  
of 5th decl. in -ēr, 52, 1;  
in -ē, 52, 3;  
of 1st decl. in -āī, 21, 2, b;
of 1st decl. in -ās, 21, 2, a;
gen. plu. -um for -ārum, 21, 2 d);
— um for ōrum, 25, 6; 63, 2;
— um for -ium, 70, 7;
gen. plu. lacking, 57, 7;
syntax of, 194 f.
of characteristic, 203, 1.
of charge with judicial verbs, 208.
of indefinite price, 203, 4.
of indefinite value, 203, 3.
of material, 197.
of measure, 203, 2.
of origin, 196.
of possession, 198.
of quality, 203.
of the whole, 201.
appositional, 202.
objective, 200.
of separation, 212, 3.
subjective, 199.
with adjs., 204;
— with participles, 204, 1, a.
with causā, grātiā, 198, 1.
with verbs, 205 f.
— of plenty and want, 212;
— with impers. verbs, 209.
— position of gen., 350, 1.
genus, decl. 36;
— id genus, 185, 1.
-ger, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2;
— adjs., 65, 1.

Gerund, 95, 1;
— 1st conj., 101;
— 2d conj., 103;
— 3d conj., 105;
— 4th conj., 107;
syntax, 338;
— with object, 338, 5.

Gerundive, 95, 1;
— 1st conj., 102;
— 2d conj., 104;
— 3d conj., 106;
— 4th conj., 108;
in periphrastic conj., 115; 337, 8.

Gerundive, const., 339, 1-6;
in passive periphrastic conj., 337, 8 f.;
gen. denoting purpose, 339, 6;
— with dat. of purpose, 191, 3; 339, 7.

grāerus, not compared, 75, 2.

Gnomonic present, 259, 1;
— perfect, 262, 1.
gradiōr, conj., 109, 2, c.
Grammatical gender, 15.
grātiā, with gen., 198, 1;
grātia, grātiae, 61.

Greek nouns, 1st decl., 22;
— 2d decl., 27;
— exceptions in gender, 26, 1, c);
— 3d decl., 47;
— Greek acc., 180;
— Greek nouns in verse, 365.
grūs, decl., 41, 2.
gu = gv, 3, 3.
Guttural mutes, 2, 4.
    stems, 32.

II.

h, pron., 3, 3;
    ph, ch, th, 2, 4; 3, 3.
habeō, with perf. pass. partic., 337, 6.
Hadria, gender, 21, 1.
Happening, verbs of, w. ind., 299, 1, 2;
    w. subjv., 297, 2.
Hard consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 4.
Hardening, 367, 4.
haud, use, 347, 2, a;
    haud sciō an, 300, 5.
havē, 137, 5.
Help, verbs signifying, w. dat. 187, II.
Hendiadys, 374, 4.
herī, locative, 232, 2.
Heteroclites, 59.
Heterogeneous nouns, 60.
Hexameter, dactylic, 368.
Hiatus, 366, 7, a.
hīc, 87; 246, 1; 246, 2;
    hic, 364, footnote 60.
hiems, 35, footnote 13.
Hindering, verbs of, with subjv., 295, 3.
Historical tenses, 258;
    historical present, 259, 3; 268, 3;
    historical perfect, 262, B;
    historical infinitive, 335.
honor, decl., 36.
Hoping, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I.
Hortatory subjv., 274.
hortus, decl., 23.
hōscine, 87, footnote 23
hostis, decl., 38.
hājusce, 87, footnote 23
humī, locative, 232, 2.
humilis, comp., 71, 4.
humus, gender of, 26, 1, b.
huncine, 87, footnote 23
Hyperbaton, 350, 11, a.
Hypermeter, 367, 6.
Hysteron proteron, 374, 7.

I.

ī, 1, 1;
    in diphthongs, 2, 1;
    pron., 3, 1;
    from ē, 7, 1, a;
    from ā, 7, 1, b;
    dropped by syncope, 7, 4;
    for ū in some words, 9, 1;
    changes to ē, 39;
    dropped, 39;
    final i short, 363, 3;
    becomes j, 367, 4.
i-stems, 37; 39;
—— not always ending in -is, 38, 3.
i̯, gen. and voc. of 2d decl. nouns in -ius and -ium in, 25, 1 and 2.
—— gen. of 4th decl. nouns in -us, 49, 1.
—— gen. of 5th decl. nouns, 52, 2.
i-stem, vēs, 41.
i, in abl., 3d decl., 38, 1; 39;
—— in adjs., 67, 3, a; 70, 5;
—— participles, 70, 3;
—— patrials, 70, 5, c);
—— nom. plu., of is, 87;
—— as characteristic of 4th conj., 98.
i-a, 149.
Lambus, 366, 2.
lambic measures, 370.
—— trimeter, 370.
i̯nus, suffix, 152, 1.
i̯as, suffix, 148, 6, b).
i̯am, in imperf., 116, 4, b).
i̯ō, in future, 116, 4, b).
Lctus, 366, 5.
i̯eus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 2.
Id aetātis, 185, 2.
id genus, 185, 1.
id quod 247, 1, b.
id temporis, 185, 2.
Ideal 'you'; see Indefinite second person.
īdem, 87; 248.
īdem ac, 248, 2.
Ides, 371, 2, c).
—— īdēs, suffix, 148, 6, a).
—— īdēs, suffix, 148, 6, a).
—— īdō, suffix, 147, 3, c).
i̯oneus, not compared, 74, 2;
—— w. dat., 192, 2.;
—— w. ad and acc., 192, 2 and N.
—— with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.
i̯us, suffix, 150, 3.
Īdīs, fem. by exception, 50.
i̯e, in voc. sing. of adjs. in -ius, 63, 1.
i̯ēns, pres. partic. from ēō, 132.
i̯ēns, as ending of numeral adverbs, 97 and N.
i̯er, inf. ending, 116, 4, a.
i̯ēs, nouns in, 51.
igitur, 344, 1, c).
Īgnis, decl., 38.
i̯i, in gen, sing. of īō-stems, 25, 2.
i̯s, in dat. and abl. plu. of is, 87.
i̯le, suffix, 148, 3.
Īlon, decl., 27.
i̯lis, suffix, 152, 2.
i̯lis, suffix, 150, 4.
Illative conjunctions, 344.
ille, 87;
—— 'the following,' 246, 2;
—— 'the former,' 246, 1;
—— 'the well-known,' 246, 3;
—— position, 350, 5, b.
ilc, 87, footnote 25.
i̯llus (a, um), diminutive suffix, 148, 1.
i̯m, in acc., 3d decl., 38, 1.
-im, -īs in subjv., 116, 4, d.
impedimentum, impedimenta, 61.
Imperative, 281;
—— tenses in, 94, 3; 281, 1;
—— future indic. with force of, 261, 3;
—— as protasis of a conditional sent., 305, 2;
—— —— as apodosis, 302, 4.
—— sent. in indir disc., 316.
Imperfect tense, 260;
—— conative, 260, 3;
—— inceptive, 260, 3;
—— with jam, etc., 260, 4;
—— epistolary imp., 265.
Imperfect subjv. in conditional sent. referring to the past, 304, 2.
Impersonal verbs, 138;
—— gen. with, 209;
—— dat. with, 187, II, b;
—— in passive, 256, 3;
—— with substantive clauses developed from volitive, 295, 6;
—— of result, 297, 2;
—— with infin., 327, 1; 330.
imetus, defective, 57, 4.
Implied indir. disc., 323.
imus, 'bottom of,' 241, 1.
in, prep., 143;
—— verbs compounded w. in governing acc., 175, 2, a, 2;
—— verbs compounded w. in governing dat., 187, III.
in with abl. of place, 228;
—— with abl. of time, 230, 2; 231.
inā, suffix, 148, 5.
Inceptives, 155, 1.
Inchoatives, 155, 1.
Incomplete action, 257, 1, b; 267, 3.
Indeclinable adj.s., 70, 6; 80, 6.
—— nouns, 58;
—— —— gender of, 15, 3.
Indefinite price, 225, 1; 203, 4.
Indefinite pronouns, 91, 252;
—— in conditions, 302, 3.
Indefinite second person, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.
Indefinite value, 203, 3.
Indicative, equivalent to Eng. subjv., 271.
—— in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, a) and b).
indigēō, constr., 214, 1, N. 2.
indignus, with abl., 226, 2;
—— with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3.
Indirect discourse, defined, 313 ff.;
—— mood in, 313 ff.;
—— tenses in 317-18;
—— declarative sentences in, 314;
—— interrog. sentences in, 315;
—— imperative sentences in, 316;
—— conditional sentences in, 319-22;
—— verbs introducing, 331, 1;
—— verb of saying, etc., implied, 314, 2;
—— ind. in subord. clauses of indir. disc., 314, 3;
—— inf. for subjv. in indir. disc., 314, 3;
—— subj. acc. omitted, 314, 5;
—— implied indir. disc., 323.
—— questions, 300;
—— —— particles introducing, 300, 1, a;
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--- delibertive subj. in indir. quest., 300, 2;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- indir. quest. w. ści, 300, 3;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- double indir. questions, 300, 4;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in indir. quest., 300, 6;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in conditional sents. of 3d type, 322, b.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- reflexives, 244, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- object, 187.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infemum, inferior, 73, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infimus, 241, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive, gender of, 15, A 3;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in -ier, 116, 4, a;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- force of tenses in, 270; 326 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- fut. perf. inf., 270, 4;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- periphrastic future, 270, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- without subj. acc., 326-328; 314, 5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- with subj. acc., 329-331.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- as obj., 328; 331,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- as subj., 327; 330.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- with adj., 333.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- denoting purpose, 326, N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in abl. abs., 227, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in exclamations, 334.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- historical inf., 335.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infitiōs, constr., 182, 5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflection, 11.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflections, 11 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infre, prep. w. acc., 141.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingēs, comp., 73, 4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injūriā, abl. of manner, 220, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injussū, defective, 57, 1;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- the abl., 219, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inl- = ill-, 9, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>innēxus, w. abl., 218, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inops, decl., 70, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquam, conj., 134.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insidiae, plu. only, 56, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instar, 58.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental uses of abl., 213; 218 ff.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensive pron., 88.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intensives (verbs), 155, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter, prep. w. acc., 141;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- compounded w. verbs, governing dat. 187, III;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- to express reciprocal relation, 245.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interdēcō, const., 188, 1, a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest, constr., 210; 211.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interior, comp., 73, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjections, 145.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interlocked order, 350, 11, d.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative pronouns, 90.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- sentences, 162;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- particles, 162, 2;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- omitted, 162, 2, d);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in indir. disc., 315.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrā, prep. w. acc., 141.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intransitive verbs, with cognate acc., 176, 4;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- in passive, 256, 3; 187, II, b;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--- impersonal intransitives, 138, IV.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īnus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 152, 3.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iō, verbs of 3d conj., 109.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ior, ius, comparative ending, 71.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ipse, 88; 249;
—— as indir. reflexive, 249, 3.
_ipsius_ and _ipsōrum_, with possessive pronouns, 243, 3.
-ir, decl. of nouns in, 23.
Irregular comparison, 72 ff.:
—— nouns, 42;
—— verbs, 124 f.
is, 87; 247;
—— as personal pron., 247, 2.
-is, as patronymic ending, 148, 6, b);
—— nouns in -is of 3d decl., 37 f.;
—— adj. in -is, 69.
-is, acc. plu., 3d decl., 37; 40.
—— -itis, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, c).
istaec, 87, footnote 24.
iste, 87; 246, 4.
istic, 6, 4.
istic, 6, 4; 87, footnote 24.
ita, in answers, 162, 5.
itaque, 344, 1, a).
iter, 42, 1.
-itia, 149.
-itō, frequentatives in, 155, 2, a.
-iun, gen. of nouns in, 25, 2;
—— ending of gen. plu., 3d decl., 37 f.; 39; 40; 147, 3, b); 148, 2.
-ius, gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 25, 1 and 2;
—— of adj., 63, 1; 151, 2; 152, 2; 152, 3;
—— -ius for -iūs, 362, 1, a).
-ius, suffix, 151, 2.

J.

j, 1, 2.
jacō, conj., 109, 2, a);
—— compounds of, 9, 3; 362, 5.
jam, etc., with present tense, 259, 4;
—— with imperfect, 260, 4.
jecur, decl., 42, 3.
jocō, abl. of manner, 220, 2.
jocus, plu. of, 60, 2.
Joining, verbs of, construction, 358, 3.
jubeō, constr., 295, 1, a: 331, II.
jūdicor, w. inf., 332, 1.
jūgerum, 59, 1.
Julian calendar, 371.
jungō, w. abl., 222A.
Juppiter, decl., 41.
jūrātus, 114, 2.
jūre, abl. of manner, 220, 2.
jūs est, with substantive clause, 297, 3.
jussū, 57, 1;
—— the abl., 219, 2.
Jussive subjv., 275;
—— equiv. to a protasis, 305, 2.
juvat, w. acc., 172, 2, c);
—— with inf., 327, 1.
Juvenāle, abl., 70, 5, b.
juvenis, a cons. stem, 38, 2;
—— comparison, 73, 4.
juvō, with acc., 187, II, N.
jūxtā, prep. w. acc., 141.

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
K.

k, 1, 1.
Knowing, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I.
Knowledge, adj. of, w. gen., 204.

L.

l, pron., 3, 3.
Labial mutes, 2, 4.
—— stems, 31;
———— gender of, 43, 3; 46, 1.
lacer, decl., 65, 1.
lacus, decl., 49, 3.
lædō, w. acc., 187, II, N.
lætus, w. adverbial force, 239.
lapis, decl., 33.
lægtor, 113.
Latin period, 351, 5.
Length of syllables, 5, B.
Length of vowels, 5, A.
-lentus, suffix, 151, 3.
leō, decl., 35.
Liber, decl., 23, 2.
līber, adj., decl., 65, 1.
līberō, constr., 214, 1, N. 1.
lībera, lībertābus, 21, 2, e).
līberum, gen. plu., 25, 6, c).
licet, with subjv., 295, 6 and 8; 308, a;
—— with inf., 327, 1; 330.
licet, adversative, 309, 4.
Likeness, adj. of, w. dat., 192, 1.
Limit of motion, acc. of., 182.
Linguial mutes, 2, 4.
līnter, decl., 40.
Liquids, 2, 5.
—— stems, 34.
līs, decl., 40, 1, d).
Litotes, 375, 1.
littera, litterae, 61.
Locative, 17, 1;
—— in -ae, 21, 2, c);
—— in -i, 25, 5;
—— syntax, 232;
—— apposition with, 169, 4;
—— loc. uses of abl., 213; 228 f.
lōcō, lōcis, the abl., 228, 1, b.
lōcus, plurals of, 60, 2.
Long syllables, 5, B, 1.
—— vowels, 5, A, 1.
longius = longius quam, 271, 3.
longum est = Eng. potential, 217, 1, b.
lubet, lubīdō, spelling, 9, 1.
lūdīs, the abl., 230, 1.
-lus, -la, -lum, diminutives in, 148, 1.
lūx, 57, 7.

M.

m, pron., 3, 3;
—— changed to n before d, c, 8, 5, c;
m-stem, 35, footnote 13;
m-final in poetry, 366, 10.
maereō, w. acc., 175, 2, b.
magis, comparison, 77, 1;
comparison with, 74.
magnī, gen. of value, 203, 3.
magnopere, compared, 77, 1.
magnus, compared, 72.
Making, verbs of, w. two accusatives, 177.
male, comparison, 77, 1.
maledicēns, comparison, 71, 5, a).
mālim, potential subjv., 280, 2, a.
māllem, potential subjv., 280, 4.
mālō, 130;
with inf., 331, IV, and a;
with subjv., 296, 1, a.
malus, comparison, 72.
māne, indeclinable, 58.
Manner, abl. of, 200.
mare, decl., 39, 2;
marī, 228, 1, c).
mās, decl., 40, 1, d).
Masculine, see Gender.
Masculine cæsura, 368, 3, c.
Material, abl. of, 224, 3.
māteriēs, māteria, 59, 2, a).
mātūrē, compared, 77, 1.
mātūrus, compared, 71, 3.
maximē, adj. compared with, 74.
maximī, as gen. of value, 203, 3.
maximus, 9, 1.
Means, abl. of, 218;
abl. abs. denoting, 227, 2;
denoted by partic., 337, 2, d.
mēd, for mē, 84, 3.
Mediae (consonants), 2, 3, b), footnote 5.
medius, 'middle of', 241, 1.
meī, as objective gen., 242, 2.
melior, comparison, 72.
melius est = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b).
memini, 133;
constr., 206, 1, a; 2, a.
memor, decl., 70, 2.
-men, -mentum, suffixes, 147, 4.
mēnsis, 38, 2, footnote 14.
mentem (in mentem venire), 206, 3.
-met, enclitic, 6, 3; 84, 2.
Metrical close of sent., 350, 12.
metuō, w. subjv., 296, 2.
mī, dat., 84, 1.
mī, voc. of meus, 86, 2.
Middle voice, verbs in, 175, 2, d).
mīles, decl., 33.
mīlitiae, locative, 232, 2.
mīlē, mīlia, decl., 80, 5.
minimē, comparison, 77, 1;
in answers, 162, 5, b).
minimum, comparison, 72.
minor, comparison, 72.
minōris, gen. of value, 203, 3;
of price, 203, 4.
minus, comparison 77, 1;
—— = minus quam, 217, 3;
—— quō minus, 295, 3;
—— sī minus, 306, 2 and a.
mīrōr, conj., 113.
mīrus, comparison, 75, 2.
miscère, with abl., 222A;
—— with dat., 358, 3.
miserērōr, with gen., 209, 2.
miserēscō, with gen., 209, 2.
miserēt, constr., 209.
Mixed stems, 40.
modium, gen. plu., 25, 6, a).
modo, in wishes and provisos, 310.
moneō, 103;
—— constr., 178, 1, d).
months, gender of names of, 15, 1;
—— decl. 68, 1;
—— abl., of month names, 70, 5, a);
—— names, 371, 1.
Moods, 94, 2.
—— in independent sentences, 271 f.
—— in dependent clauses, 282 f.
Mora, 366, 1.
mōrior, conj. 109, 2, c);
mōs, decl., 36;
—— mōrēs, 61.
mōs est, with subjv. clause, 297, 3.
mulībre secus, constr., 185, 1.
Multiplication, distributives used to indicate, 81, 4, c.
multum, 77, 3;
—— compared, 77, 1.
multus, compared, 72;
—— with another adj., 241, 3.
mūs decl., 40, 1, d).
mūtāre, with abl., 222A.
Mutes, 2, 3.
Mute stems, 30.

N.

n, pronunciation, 3, 3;
—— n-stems, 35.
n adulterīnum, 2, 6.
-nam, appended to quis, 90, 2, d.
Names, Roman, 373.
Naming, verbs of, w. two accusatives, 117, 1.
Nasals, 2, 6.
Nasal stems, 35.
nātū, 57, 1;
—— maximus nātū, minimus nātū, 73, 4, footnotes 20, 21; 226, 1.
Natural gender, 14.
nātus, constr., 215.
nāvis, decl., 41, 4.
nd, vowel short before, 5, 2, a.
-ne, 6, 3 f; 162, 2, c); 300, 1, b);
—— -ne ... an, 162, 4;
—— — in indir. double questions, 300, 4.
nē, in prohibitions, 276;
—— with hortatory subjv., 274;
—— with concessive, 278;
— with optative, 279;
— in purpose clauses, 282;
— in substantive clauses, 295 f., 296;
— in provisos, 310.
nē, 'lest,' 282, 1; 296, 2.
nē nōn for ut after verbs of fearing, 296, 2, a.
nē ... quidem, 347, 1; 2.
Nearness, adjs. of, w. dat., 192, 1.
 nec, 341, 1, d);
— nec úsquam, 341, 2, d).
necesse est, w. subjv., 295, 8.
necne, in double questions, 162, 4.
 nefās, indeclinable, 58.
Negatives, 347, 2;
— two negatives strengthening the negation, 347, 2.
nēmō, defective, 57, 3;
— use, 252, 6.
nēquam, indeclinable, 70, 6;
— compared, 72.
neque, 341, 1, d);
— neque in purpose clauses, 282, 1, e.
nequeō, conj., 137, 1.
ne quis, use, 91, 5.
nēquiter, compared, 77, 1.
neclō an, 300, 5.
nesciō quis, as indef. pron., 253, 6.
Neuter, see Gender.
neuter, decl., 66;
— use, 92, 1.
nēve (neu), in purpose clauses, 282, 1, d.
nf, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a.
nihil, indeclinable, 58.
nihil est cūr, quīn, 295, 7.
ningit, 'it snows,' 138, 1.
nisi, 306, 1 and 4.
nitor, constr., 218, 3.
nix, decl., 40, 1, d).
No, in answers, 162, 5, b.
-nō, class of verbs, 117, 4.
nōli, with inf., in prohibitions, 276, b.
nōlim, potential subjv., 280, 2, a.
nōllem, potential subjv., 280, 4.
nōlō, 130;
— with inf., 331, IV and a; 276, 2, a;
— with subjv., 296, 1, a.
nōmen, decl., 35;
— nōmen est, constr., 190, 1;
— nōmen, as part of Roman name, 373.
Nominative, 17; 170;
— used for voc., 171, 1;
— nom. sing. lacking, 57, 6;
— pred. nom., 168.
Nones, 371, 2, b).
nōn, in answers, 162, 5, b);
— with poten. subjv., 280;
— with deliberative, 277.
nōn dubitō quīn, with subjv., 298;
— nōn dubitō, w. inf., 298, a; b.
nōn modo for nōn modo nōn, 343, 2, a.
nōnne, 162, 2, a; 300, 1, b), N.
nōn quia, with ind., 286, 1, c;
—— with subjv., 286, 1, b.
nōn quīn, with subjv., 286, 1, b.
nōn quod, with ind., 286, 1, c;
—— with subjv., 286, 1, b.
nōs = ego, 242, 3.
nostri, as objective gen., 242, 2.
nostrum, as gen. of whole, 242, 2;
—— as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.
Nouns, 12 ff.; 353;
—— derivation of, 147 f.
—— in -is not always i-stems, 38, 1.
—— of agency, force, 353, 4.
—— used in plu. only, 56.
—— used in sing. only, 55.
—— used only in certain cases, 57.
—— indeclinable, 58.
—— with change of meaning in plural, 61.
—— syntax, 166 f.
—— predicate, agreement of, etc., 167 f.
—— appositives, agreement of, etc., 169 f.
Noun and adj. forms of the verb, 95, 2.
nōvō, as pres., 262, A.
novus, compared, 73, 3.
ns, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a.
-ns, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c).
nt, quantity of vowel before, 5, 2, a.
nūbēs, decl., 40, 1, a
nūlla causa est cūr, quīn, 295, 7.
nūllus, decl., 66; 57, 3;
—— use, 92, 1.
num, 162, 2, b; 300, 1, b).
Number, 16; 94, 4.
Numerals, 78 f.;
—— peculiarities in use of, 81.
numquis, decl., 91, 5.
nūper, compared, 77, 1.
-nus, suffix, 151, 2.

O.

ō, vowel, 2, 1;
—— as element in diphthong ae, 2, 1;
—— pron., 3, 1;
—— alternating w. ū in certain classes of words, 9, 1; 2; 4;
—— ō-stems; 23; 24;
—— in citō, 77, 2, a;
—— in duō, 80, 2;
—— in egō, 84; 363, 4, a;
—— in modō, 363, 4, a;
—— in compounds of pro-, 363, 4, c;
—— in amō, leā, etc., 363, 4, b.
ō, pron. 3, 1;
—— for au, 7, 1, e;
—— by contraction, 7, 2;
—— in abl. sing. of 2d decl., 23;
—— in nom. sing. of 3d decl., 35;
—— in Greek nouns, 47, 8;
—— in adverbs, 77, 2;
in ambō, 80, 2, a;
in personal endings, 96.
ob, prep. w. acc., 141;
verbs compounded w. governing dat., 187, III.
Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
Object, direct, 172 f.;
two objects w. same verb, 177; 178;
indirect, 187 f.;
inf. as obj., 326; 328; 329; 331.
Objective gen., 200.
Obligation, verb in expression of, 304, 3, a;
see also Duty.
Oblique cases, 71, 2.
obliviscor, constr., 206, 1, b; 2.
octōdecim (for duodēviginti), 81, 2.
ōdi, 133.
œ, 2, 1;
pron., 3, 2.
Old forms, familiās, 21, 2, a;
aulāi, 21, 2, b;
servos, aevom, equos, etc., 24;
mēd, tēd, 84, 3;
sēd, 85, 3.
olle, archaic for ille, 87.
-olus (a, um), 148, 1.
-on, later -um in 2d decl., 23.
-on, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27.
Onomatopæia, 375, 4.
opera, operae, 61.
Operations of nature, impersonal verbs expressing, 138, 1.
opiniōne with comparatives, 217, 4.
opis, 57, 6;
opēs, 61.
oporet, 138;
w. subjv., 295, 6; 8;
w. inf., 327, 330.
oportuit, with pres. inf. 'ought to have', 270, 2;
with perf. inf., 270, 2, a.
oppidum (Genavam ad oppidum), 182, 2, a.
Optative subjv., 272; 279;
tative clauses developed from, 296.
opiatēs, decl., 40, 1, d.
opusum, comp., 72.
opē, w. subst. cl. developed from optative, 296, 1.
opusum, spelling, 9, 1.
opus est, w. abl., 218, 2;
w. partic., 218, 2, c.
or, nouns in, 34;
or for -os, 36;
gender of nouns in, 43, 1;
exceptions in gender, 44, 2;
as suffix, 147, 2.
Oration Obliqua, 313 f.
Order of words, 348 f.
Ordinals, 78, 1; 79.
orior, conjugation, 123, VII.
oriundus, constr., 215, 2.
ōrō, with acc., 178, 1, a
Orpheus, decl., 47, 6.
Orthography, peculiarities, 9.
ortus, constr., 215.
ōs, decl., 57, 7.
os, decl., 42.
-os, later -us in 2d decl., 23.
-ōs, later -or in 3d decl., 36, 1.
——-ōs, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27.
-ōsus, form of suffix, 151, 3.
ōvis, decl., 38, 1.
Oxymoron, 375, 2.

P.
p, pron., 3, 3;
—— by assimilation, 8, 4;
—— by partial assimilation, 8, 5.
paenitet, 138, II;
—— with gen., 209
palam, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2.
Palatal mutes, 2, 4.
palûster, decl., 68, 1.
Parasitic vowels, 7, 3.
parâus, with infin., 333.
Pardon, verbs signifying, w. dat., 187, II.
pariô, 109, 2, a).
paris, partés, 61.
parte, abl. of place, 228, 1, b.
partem, adverbially used, 185, 1.
Participation, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1.
Participial stem, 97, III;
—— formation, 119.
Participles, in -âns and -êns, 70, 3;
—— gen. plu. of in -um, 70, 7;
—— pres. act. partic., 97, I, 5; 101; 103; 105; 107; 110; 113;
—— fut. act. partic., 97, III;
—— as one of the principal parts of the verb, 99, footnote 28; 100; 101; 103; 105;
107; 110; 113;
—— perf. pass. partic., 97, III; 102; 104; 106; 108; 111; 113;;
—— gerundive, see Gerundive;
—— fut. act., peculiar formation of, 119, 4;
—— perf. pass., w. act. or neuter meaning, 114, 2;
—— of deponents, 112, b;
—— syntax, 336 ff.
Participles, fut. act., 119, 4;
—— denoting purpose, 337, 4.
—— perf. act., how supplied, 356, 2.
—— perf. pass. 336, 3;
—— as pres., 336, 5.
—— pres. partic., 336, 2;
—— with conative force, 336, 2, a.
—— perf. pass., with active meaning, 114, 2;
—— pred. use of partic., 337, 2;
—— participles equivalent to subordinate clauses, 337, 2;
—— to coordinate clauses, 337, 5;
—— w. opus est, 218, 2, c;
—— with noun, equivalent to abstract noun, 337, 6;
—— with habeô, 337, 7.
—— with videô, audiô, faciô, etc., 337, 3.
Particles, 139 f.; 341 f.
Partitive apposition, 169, 5.
Partitive gen., so called, 201.
Parts of speech, 10.
parum, comparison, 77, 1.
parvī, gen. of value, 203, 3.
parvus, comparison, 72.
Passive, verbs in, with middle meaning, 175, 2, d; 256;
—— verbs governing dat. used in pass. only impersonally, 187, II, b;
—— constr. of passive verbs of saying, etc., 332 and note;
—— how supplied when missing, 356, 1.
patior, conj., 109, 2, c; 113;
—— with inf., 331, III.
Patrial adjs., 70, 5, c.
Patronymics, 148, 6.
paulum, formation, 77, 3.
paulus, spelling, 9, 2.
pauper, decl., 70, 1.
pedester, decl., 68, 1.
pejor, quantity of first syllable, 362, 5.
pelagus, gender of, 26, 2.
Penalty, abl. of, 208, 2, b.
penētēs, decl., 40, 1, d).
penes, prep. w. acc., 141.
Pentameter, dactylic, 369.
Penult, 6, 2.
per, prep. w. acc., 141;
—— with acc. of time and space, 181, 2.
Perceiving, verbs of, w. inf., 351, I.
Perfect active ptc., how supplied in Latin, 356, 2.
Perfect pass. partic., force of w. deponent verbs, 112, b;
—— dat. of agency sometimes used w., 189, 2;
—— opus, 218, 2, c.
Perfect stem, 97, II;
—— formation, 118.
—— in -āvī, -ēvī, -īvī contracted, 116, 1.
—— historical perf., 262.
—— with force of pres. 262; 133, 2;
—— pres. perf. and hist. perf. distinguished, 237, 1 and 2;
—— gnomic perf., 262, 1;
—— perf. subjv. as historical tense, 268, 6 and 7, b;
—— perf. inf. w. oportuit, 270, 2;
—— perf. prohibitive, 279, a;
—— perf. potential, 280, 1 and 2;
—— perf. concessive, 278;
—— sequence of tenses after perf. inf., 268, 2.
Periodic structure, 351, 5.
Periphrastic conj., 115; 269, 3;
—— in conditional sentences of the 3d type, 304, 3, b);
—— in indir. disc., 322;
—— in passive, 337, 8, b, 1.
—— fut. inf., 270, 3.
Persons, 95, 4;
—— 2d sing. of indefinite subject, 356, 3.
Personal pronouns 84; 242;
———— as subject, omission of, 166, 2;
———— as objective genitives, 242, 2.
—— endings, 96.
persuādeō, with dat., 187, II, a;
—— with subjv., 295, 1.
Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
ph, 2, 3, c; 2, 4; 3, 3.
pigēt, with gen., 209.
Pity, verbs of, w. gen., 209, 1 and 2.
Place to which, 182;
—— whence, 229;
place where, 228.
placitus, force, 114, 2.
Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II, a;
— w. acc., 187, II, a, N.
plēbēs, heteroclite, 59, 2, d).
plēbi, gen., 52, 2.
Plenty and Want, verbs of, constr., 212; cf. 218, 8.
plēnis, w. gen., 218, 8, a.
Pleonasm, 374, 3.
plēráque, 6, 5.
pluit, 138, I.
Pluperfect tense, formation, 100;
— syntax, 263; 265; 287, 2; 288, 3;
— with imperfect meaning, 133, 2.
Plural, 16;
— in 5th decl., 52, 4;
— of proper names, 55, 4, a);
— of abstract nouns, 5, 4, c);
— nouns used in, only, 56;
— with change of meaning, 61;
— stylistic use, 353, 1, 2.
Pluralia tantum, 56; 81, 4, b).
plūris, gen. of value, 203, 3;
— of price, 203, 4.
plūs, decl., 70; 70, 4;
— = plūs quam, 217, 3.
poēma, decl., 47, 5.
Polyhydron, 341, 4, b).
por-, inseparable prep., 159, 3, e.
porticus, gender, 50.
portus, decl., 49, 3.
pōscō, constr., 178, 1, a).
Position of clauses, 351, 3.
— of words, 348; 350; 351.
Possessive dat., 190;
— gen., 198;
— contrasted with dat. of poss., 359, 1.
Possessive pronouns, 86, 243;
— = objective gen., 243, 2;
— position of, 243, 1, a.
Possibility, verbs of, put in indic. in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a.
possim, 126;
— with present infin., 'I might,' 271, 1, a;
— in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a.
post, prep. w. acc., 144, 1;
— in expressions of time, 357, 1.
Post-positive words, 343, 1, c).
posteāquam, 287;
— separated, 287, 3;
— with imperfect. ind., 287, 4;
— w. pluperf. ind., 287, 3;
— with subjv., 287, 5.
posterus, posterior, comp., 73, 2.
postrēmus, use, 241, 2.
potratē, with gen., 201, 3, a.
potulō, constr., 178, 1, a.
Potential subjv., 272; 280.
potior, with gen., 212, 2;
— with abl., 218, 1;
— in gerundive constr., 339, 4.
— adj., 73, 1.
potius, compared, 77, 1.

potū, poteram, in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, a;

—— in indir. disc., 322, c.

potū, with pres. inf. = 'could have,' 270, 2.

potuerim, in dependent apodosis, 322, c.

pōitus, force, 114, 2.

praev, prep. w. abl., 142;

—— verbs compounded with governing dat., 187, III;

—— short in praecātus, etc., 362, 2.

Praenomen, 373.

praesēns, 125.

praesum, w. dat., 187, III.

prēnsus, force, 114, 2.

precī, -em, -e, 57, 5, a.

Predicate, 163.

—— gen., 198, 3; 203, 5.

Predicate nouns, 167; 168;

—— in acc., 177;

—— predicate nouns or adjx. attracted to dat., 327, 2, a;

—— to nom., 328, 2.

—— adjectives, 232, 2; 177, 2.

Prepositions, assimilation of, in compounds, 8, 4; 9, 2;

—— with acc., 141;

—— with abl., 142;

—— as adverbs, 144;

—— inseparable prepositions, 159, 3; n.;

—— position, 350, 7;

—— prepositional phrases as attributive modifiers, 353, 5;

—— anastrophe of, 144, 3; 141, 2; 142, 3;

—— usage with abl. of sep., 214 f;

—— with abl. of source, 215.

Present tense, 259;

—— gnomic, 259, 1;

—— conative, 259, 2;

—— historical, 259, 3;

—— with jam pridesm, jam diū, etc., 259, 4;

—— with dum, 'while,' 293, 2;

—— in Repraesentātiō, 318;

—— pres. subjv., in -im, 127, 2;

—— pres. partic., see Participle.

—— stem, 97, 1;

—— formation, 117.

—— perf., 257, 1 and 2.

Preventing, verbs of, w. subjv. clause, 295, 3.

Price, indefinite, special words in gen. 203, 4; also 225, 1.

—— abl. of, 225.

pridiē, with gen., 201, 3, a;

—— with acc., 144, 2.

Primary tenses, see Principal tenses.

prīmus, 'first who,' 241, 2.

prīnceps, decl., 31.

Principal parts, 99;

—— list.

—— tenses, 258 f.

prior, compared, 73, 1.

prius, compared, 77, 1.

priusquam, with ind., 291;

—— with subjv., 292;

—— separated, 292.

Privation, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 1, b and c.

prò, prep. w. abl., 142.
procul, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2.
prohibēō, w. abl., 214, 2;
—— w. subjv. clause, 295, 3.
Prohibitions, method of expressing, 276.
Prohibitive subjv., 276.
Prolepsis, 374, 5.
Pronominal adjts., 253.
Pronouns, defined, 82;
—— classes, 83;
—— personal, 84;
—— reflexive, 85;
—— possessive, 86;
—— demonstrative, 87;
—— intensive, 88;
—— relative, 89;
—— interrogative, 90;
—— indefinite, 91;
—— pronominal adjts., 92;
—— personal, omission of, as subject, 166, 2;
—— syntax, 242 f.;
—— personal, 242 f.;
—— possess., 243 f.;
—— reflex., 244 f.;
—— reciprocal, 245 f.;
—— demonstrative, 246 f.;
—— relative, 250 f.;
—— indef., 252 f.;
—— position, 350, 5; 355.
Pronunciation, Roman, 3.
prope, compared, 77, 1.
Proper names, abbreviated, 373.
—— nouns, 12, 1.
propior, compared, 73, 1;
—— with acc., 141, 3.
proprius, with dat., 204, 2, a;
—— with gen., 204, 2.
propter, prep. w. acc., 141.
Prosody, 360 f.
prōsper, decl., 65, 1.
prōsum, conj., 125, N.
Protasis, 301;
—— denoting repeated action, 302, 3;
—— without sī, 305;
—— of indef. 2d sing., 302, 2;
—— see Conditions.
Provisos, 310.
proximē -us, comp., 73, 1; 77, 1;
—— with acc., 141, 3.
prūdens, decl., 70.
-pste, 86, 3.
pudet, with gen., 209;
—— w. inf., 327, 1.
puer, decl., 23.
pulcher, comp., 71, 3.
puppis, decl., 38, 1.
Purpose, dat. of purpose, 191;
—— with dat. and gerundive, 191, 3;
—— w. ad and acc., 192, 2;
—— subjv. of purp., 282, 1;
—— w. quō, 282, 1, a;
—— w. ut nē, 282, 1, b;
with nōn in purpose clause, 282, 1, c;
— nēve (neu) in purpose clauses, 292, 1, d;
— neque, 282, 1, c;
— rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 2;
— w. dignus, indignus, idoneus, 282, 3;
— independent of principal verb, 282, 4;
— inf., denoting purpose, 326, N.;
— fut. partic., denoting purpose, 337, 4;
— gerund, w. ad, 338, 3;
— gerundive, 339, 2;
— supine, 340.

Q.

qu, pron., 3, 3;
— both letters consonants, 74, a.
quae, w. indir. questions, 300, 1, b), N.
quaesō, 137, 2.
Quality, gen., 203;
— abl., 224.
quam, in comparisons, 217, 2;
— with superl., 240, 3;
— ante ... quam, post ... quam, prius ... quam, see antequam, postquam,
— priusquam; quam quá, 283, 2, a.
quam sī, 307, 1.
quam ut, with subjv., 284, 4.
quamquam, with ind., 309, 2;
— with subjv., 309, 6;
— = 'and yet,' 309, 5.
quamvēs, with subjv., 309, 1; 6;
— denoting a fact, 309, 6.
quando, 286, 3, b.
quantī, as gen. of price, 203, 4;
— of value, 203, 3.
Quantity, 5.
— of syllables, 5, B; 363 f.
— of vowels, 5, A; 362;
— in Greek words, 365.
quasi, 307, 1.
quattiō, conj., 109, 2, a).
—que, accent of word preceding, 6, 3; 6, 5; 341, 1, b); 2, a); 4, c).
queō, 137, 1.
Questions, word, sentence, 162 f.;
— rhetorical, 162, 3;
— double (alternative), 162, 4;
— indirect, 300;
— questions in indir. disc., 315.
qui, rel., 89;
— interr., 90;
— indef., 91;
— for quis in indir. questions, 90, 2, b;
— with nē, sī, nisi, num, 91, 5;
— in purpose clauses, 282, 2;
— abl., 90, 2, a.
quia, in causal clauses, 286, 1.
quicum, 89.
quicumque, decl., 91, 8.
quidam, decl., 91; syntax, 252, 3.
quidem, post-positive, 347, 1.
quilibet, decl., 91.
quīn, in result clauses, 284, 3;

http://www.gutenberg.org/files/15665/15665-h/15665-h.htm
—— in substantive clauses, 295, 3; 298;
—— = quī nōn in clauses of characteristic, 283, 4;
—— with ind., 281, 3;
—— in indir. disc., 322 and a;
—— nūlla causa est quīn, 295, 7.
quīnam, 90, 2, d.
Quintīlis (= Jūlius), 371.
quīppē quī, in clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.
Quīritēs, decl., 40, 1, d.
quis, indef., 91;
—— interr., 90; 90, 2, c.; 252, 1;
—— nesciō quis, 253, 6;
—— with nē, sī, nisi, num, 91, 5.
quis est quī, 283, 2.
quīs = quibus, 89.
quīsnam, inflection, 90, 2, d.
quīspiam, inflection, 91.
quīsquam, inflection, 91;
—— usage, 252, 4.
quīsque, inflection, 91;
—— usage, 252, 5.
quīsquīs, inflection, 91, 8.
quīvīs, inflection, 91
quō, in purpose clauses, 282, 1, a..
quoada, with ind., 293;
—— with subjv. 293, III, 2.
quod, in causal clauses, 286, 1;
—— in substantive clauses, 299; 331, V, a;
—— ’as regards the fact,’ 299, 2.
quod audierim, 283, 5;
—— quod sciam, 283, 5.
quod (sī), adverbial acc., 185, 2.
quom, early form of cum, 9, 1.
quō minus, after verbs of hindering, 295, 3.
quoniam, in causal clauses, 286, 1.
quoque, post-positive, 347.
-quis, decl. of nouns in, 24.

R.
r, pron., 3, 3;
—— for s between vowels (’Rhotacism’), 8, 1.
rapiō, conj., 100, 2 a).
rāstrum, plurals of, 60, 2.
ratus, ’thinking,’ 336, 5.
Reciprocal pronouns, 85, 2; 245; cf. 253, 3.
Reduplication in perf., 118, 4, a);
—— in pres., 117, 7.
Reference, dat. of, 188.
rēfert, constr., 210; 211, 4.
Reflective pronouns, 85; 244; 249, 3.
regō, conj., 105.
Regular verbs, 101-113.
reī, 362, 1, b).
reiciō, quantity, 362, 5.
Relative adverbs, in rel. clauses of purp., 282, 2.
—— clauses, of purp., 282, 2;
—— w. dignus, indignus, idōneus, 282, 3;
—— of characteristic, 283;
—— denoting cause or opposition, 283, 3;
—— restrictive, 283, 5;
introduced by quàīn, 283, 4; 284, 3;
conditional rel. clauses, 311; 312, 1 and 2;
relative as subj. of inf., 314, 4;
rel. clause standing first, 251, 4, a.
pronouns, inflection, 89;
use, 250, ff.;
= Eng. demonstrative, 251, 6;
agreement, 250;
not omitted as in Eng., 251, 5;
fondness for subordinate clauses, 355.
relinquitur ut, 297, 2.
reliquā, use, 253, 5.
reliquum est, with subjv., 295, 6.
rēmex, decl., 32.
Remembering, verbs of, cases used w., 206.
Reminding, verbs of, const., 207.
reminisceor, constr., 206, 2.
Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 2.
reposeō, constr., 178, 1, a).
Repraesentātō, 318.
requēs, requiem, requiētem, 59, 2, c).
rēs, decl., 51.
Resisting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
Restrictive clauses, 283, 5.
Result, acc. of, 173, B; 176;
clauses of, 284; 297;
in dependent apodosis, 322, and a;
sequence of tense in, 268, 6.
reverter, semi-deponent, 114, 3.
Rhetorical questions, 162, 3; 277, a;
in indir. disc., 315, 2.
Rhotacism, 8, 1; 36, 1.
Rivers, gender of names of, 15, A, 1.
rogātō, abl. of cause, 219, 2.
rogō, constr., 178, 1, c); 178, 1, a).
Roman pronunciation, 3.
Root, 17, 3, footnote 12.
-rēre, abl., place from which, 229, 1, b.
rūrē, abl., place in which, 228, 1, c.
rūs, 57, 7;
acc., limit of motion, 182, 1, b.

S.

s, pron., 3, 3;
changed to r between vowels, 8, 1:
ss from dt, tt, ts, 8, 2.
-s, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more consonants, 40, 1, b).
s-stems, 36.
sacer, decl., 65;
comparison, 73, 3.
saepe, compared, 77, 1.
sālī, 57, 7;
sālēs, 61.
salābris, decl., 68, 3.
salūāris, comp., 73, 4.
salē, salvēte, 137, 4.
Samnīēs, 40, 1, a).
sānē, in answers, 162, 5.
sapiō, conj., 109, 2, a).
satur, decl., 65, 2.
Saying, verbs of, w. inf. of ind. disc., 331, I.
sciō, quod sciam, 283, 5.
-scō-class of verbs, 117, 6; 155.
scribere ad aliquem, 358, 2.
sē, use, 244.
sē-, compounds of, 159, 3, e.
Second conj., 103;
— decl., 23;
— peculiarities, 25;
— second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.
Secondary tenses, see Historical tenses.
secundum, prep. w. acc., 141.
secūris, decl., 38, 1.
secus, compared, 77, 1.
secus (virile secus), 185, 1; 58.
secūtus, 'following', 336, 5.
sett, sē, 85, 3.
sēd-, compounds of, 159, 3, e.
sēd, 343, 1, a).
sedile, decl., 39.
sēmentis, decl., 38, 1.
Semi-deponent verbs, 114.
Semivowels, 2, 8.
sein, decl., 42;
— compared, 73, 4.
Sentences, classification, 160, f.;
— simple and compound, 164;
— sentence-structure, 351;
— sentence questions, 162, 2.
sententiā, abl. of accordance, 220, 3.
Separation, dat. of, 188, 2, dj;
— gen., 212, 3;
— abl., 214.
Sequence of tenses, 267; 268.
sequester, decl., 68, 1.
sequitur ut, 297, 2.
secur, conj., 113.
Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
servos, decl., 24.
sēsē, decl., 85.
Sextilis (= Augustus), 371.
Sharing, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1.
Short syllables, 5, B, 2;
— vowels, 5, A, 2.
Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 177.
sī, with indir. questions, 300, 3;
— in protasis, 301;
— omitted, 305.
signifer, decl., 23, 2.
silentio, abl of manner, 220, 2.
silvester, decl., 68, 3.
similis, with dat., 204, 3;
— with gen., 204, 3;
— comp., 71, 4.
sī minus, use, 306, 2.
Simple sentences, 164.
simul, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2.
simul ac, w. ind., 287, 1; 2.
sī nōn, usage, 306, 1 and 2.
sin, usage, 306, 3.
sīn minus, 306, 2, a.
Singular, second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2.
sīno with inf., 331, III.
sītis, decl., 38, 1.
Smelling, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.
Soft consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 5.
-sō, verbs in, 155, 2.
socrē, decl., 23, 2.
socium, gen., plu., 25, 6, c).
sōl, decl., 57, 7.
sōleō, semi-dep., 114, 1.
solitus, used as present partic., 336, 5.
sōlus, 66;
— sōlus est qui with subjv., 283, 2.
Sonant consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 5.
Sōracte, decl., 39, 2.
Sounds, classification, 2.
— of the letters, 3.
Source, abl., 215.
Space, extent of, 181.
Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
Specification, abl. of, 226.
spēī, quantity, 362, 1, b.
Spelling, see Orthography.
Spirants, 2, 7.
Spondaic verses, 368, 2.
Spondee, 368, 1.
sponte suā, abl. accordance, 220, 3.
spontis, -e, defective, 57, 2, b.
Statutes, fut. imperative used in, 281, 1, b.
Stem, 17, 3.
— verb, 97; 117.
Structure of sentences, see Sentences.
Style, hints on, 352 f.
su = sv, 3, 3.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl., 143;
— compounds of, w. dat., 187, III.
Subject, 163;
— nom., 166;
— acc., 184;
— subject acc. of inf., 184;
— omitted, 314, 5;
— clauses as subject, 294; 295, 6;
— inf. as subj., 327; 330.
Subjective gen., 199.
Subjunctive, tenses in, 95, 3.
— in independent sentences, 272;
— by attraction, 324;
— tenses of, 266 f.;
— method of expressing future time in, 269;
— volitive (hortatory, jussive, prohibitive, deliberative, concessive), 273 f.;
— optative (wishes), 279;
— potential, 280;
— in clauses of purpose, 282;
— of characteristic, 283;
— of result, 284;
— of cause, 286;
— temporal clauses with postquam, posteāquam, 287, 5;
— temporal clauses with cum, 288–290;
— with antequam and priusquam, 292;
— with dum, dōnec, quaod, 293, III, 2;
sublátus, 129, N.

subm- = summ-, 9, 2.

Subordinate clauses, 165.

Substantive clauses, 294 f.

— developed from the volitive, 295, 1-8;
— developed from the optative, 296;
— with non dubitō, 298;
— indir. questions, 300;
— without ut, 295, 8;
— of result, 297;
— introduced by quod, 299.
— use of adj., 236-238.

subter, prep. w. acc., 143, 1.

Suffixes, 17, 3, footnote 12; 147 f.

suī, 85;
— as objective gen., 244, 2;
— = possessive gen., 244, 2.

sum, conj., 100;
— omitted when auxiliary, 166, 3.

summus, 'top of,' 241, 1.

sunt quī, with subjv., 283, 2.

suāpte, suāpte, 86, 3.

supellex, decl., 42, 2.

super, prep. w. acc., 143, 1.

Superlative degree;
— of adjs., 71, 1;
— in -rimus, 91, 3;
— in -limus, 71, 4;
— irregular superl., 72; 73;
— lacking, 73, 4;
— formed w. maximē, 74;
— of adverbs, 76, 2;
— irregular, 77, 1;
— force of, 240, 2.

superus, compared, 73, 2.

Supine, 340.

suprā, prep. w. acc., 141.

-sūra, suffix, 147, 3, a.

Surd consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 4.

sūs, decl., 41.

sustulī, 129, N.

suus, decl., 86, 1; 244;
— suus quisque, 244, 4, a.

Syllaba anceps, 366, 10.

Syllables, division, 4;
— quantity of, 5, B.

Synapheia, 367, 6.

Synaeresis, 367, 1.

Synchysis, 350, 11, d.

Syncope, 7, 4; 367, 8.

Synecdochical acc., 180.

Synizesis, 367, 1.

Syntax, 160 f.
Systole, 367, 3.

T.

t, pron., 3, 3;
— th, 2, 3, c, 3, 3;
— changes, 8, 2;
— dropped, 8, 3.
taeder, 138, II;
— w. gen., 209.
Taking away, verbs of, w. dat., 188, 2, d.
talentum, gen. plu., 25, 5, a.
tamen, 343, 1, f.
tametsī, 309, 2.
tamquam, tamquam sī, w. subjv., 307.
tantōn, 6, 4.
t-as, 149;
— gen. -tātis, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, e).
Tasting, verbs of, constr., 176, 5.
Teaching, verbs of, constr., 178, 1, b.
tēd = tē, 84, 3.
Temporal clauses, w. postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, 287;
— w. cum, 288; 289;
— w. antequam and prīiusquam, 291; 292;
— with dum, dōnec, quoad, 293.
temporis (id temporis), 185, 2.
Tendency, dat. of, 191.
tener, decl., 64.
Tenses, 94, 3; 257 ff.;
— of inf., 270;
— of inf. in indir. disc., 317;
— of participles, 336;
— of subjv., 266;
— sequence of, 266-268;
— in indir. disc., 317; 318.
Tenues (consonants), 2, 3, a), footnote 4.
tenus, position, 142, 3.
Terminations, 17, 3.
ternī, how used, 81, 4, b.
t-ternus, 154.
terrā mariqua, 228, 1, c.
terrester, 68, 3.
Tetrameter verses, 366, 11.
Thematic verbs, 101-113.
— vowels, 117, footnote 39.
Third conj., 105; 109 f.;
— decl., 28 f.;
— gender in, 43 f.
Threatening, verbs of, 187, II.
t-im, adverbs in, 157, 2.
Time, at which, 230;
— during which, 181; 231, 1;
— within which, 231.
timeō nē and ut, 296, 2.
tinus, suffix, 154.
t-iō, suffix, 147, 3.
Tmesis, 367, 7.
to as suffix of verbs, 155, 2.
t-or, use of nouns in, 353, 4.
tōtus, 66;
—— preposition absent w., in expression of place relations, 228, 1, b).
Towns, gender of names of, 15, 2;
—— names of, denoting limit of motion, 182, 1, a;
—— denoting place where, 228, 1, a;
—— place from which, 229, 1, a;
—— appositives of town names, 169, 4; 229, 2.
trāditur, trāditum est, w. inf., 332, N.
trāns, prep. w. acc., 141;
—— constr. of verbs compounded with, 179.
Transitive verbs, 174.
Trees, gender of names of, 15, 2.
trēs, decl., 80, 3.
Tribrach, 370, 2.
tribus, decl., 49, 3;
—— gender, 50.
Trimeter verses, 366, 11.
trīnī, use, 81, 4, b).
triumvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b).
-trīx, suffix, 147, 1.
Trochee, 366, 2.
-trum, suffix, 147, 4.
Trusting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II.
tū, decl., 84.
-tūdō, suffix, 84.
tū, as objective gen., 242, 2.
-tūrā, suffix, 147, 3, a).
tūs, decl., 57, 7.
-tus, suffix, 147, 3; 151, 4.
tussis, decl., 38.
tūte, tūtemet, tūtemet, 84, 2.
Two accusatives, 177; 178.
Two datives, 191, 2.

U.

u, instead of i in some words, 9, 1;
—— instead of a, 9, 1; 9, 4.
u, becomes v 367, 4.
ū-stems, 48.
ū-stems, 41.
-ū, dat. sing., 4th decl, 49, 2.
ūber, decl., 70, 1.
ubi, with ind., 287, 1; 2;
—— with gen., 201, 3.
-umbus, dat., plu., 4th decl., 49, 3.
ūlius, decl., 66.
ulterior, compared, 73, 1.
ultimus, use, 241, 2.
ultrā, prep. w. acc., 141.
-ulus, diminutive ending, 150, 2;
—— (a, um), 148, 1.
-um, 1st decl., gen. plu. in, 21, 2, d);
—— 2d decl., 25, 6;
—— for -ium, 70, 7.
ūnus, decl., 66; 92, 1;
—— ānus est qui, with subjv., 283, 2.
-urīō, ending of desiderative verbs, 155, 3.
-ūrus, ending of fut. act. partic., 101; 103 ff.;
—— -ūrus fuisse in apodosis of conditional sentences contrary-to-fact, in indir.
disc., 321, 2;
— *īrus fuerim* in indir. questions serving as apodosis, 322, b.
— *-us*, neuter nouns of 2d decl. in, 26, 2;
— nom. in 3d decl., in *-us*, 36;
— gender of nouns in *-us* of 3d decl., 43, 3;
— exceptions in gender, 46, 4.
*ūs*, nouns of 3d decl. in, 43, 2.
*ūsque ad*, w. acc., 141, 1.
*ūsus est*, with abl., 218, 2.
*ut*, temporal, 287, 1, 2;
— *ut*, *utī*, in purpose clauses, 282;
— in result clauses, 284;
— in substantive clauses, 295 f.;
— substantive clauses without, 295, 8;
— with verbs of fearing, 296, 2.
*ut nē = nē, 282, 1, b; 295, 1, 4, 5.
*ut non* instead of nē, 282, 1, c;
— in clauses of result, 284, 297.
*ut qui*, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.
*ut sī*, w. subjv., 307, 1.
*uter*, decl., 66; 92, 1.
*ūter*, decl., 40, 1, d).
*uter cumque*, decl., 92, 2.
*uterlibet*, decl., 92, 2.
*uterque*, decl., 92, 2;
— use, 355, 2.
*uterius*, decl., 92, 2.
*ūtilius est* = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b).
*utiam*, with optative subjv., 279, 1 and 2.
*ūtor*, with abl., 218, 1;
— in gerundive constr., 339, 4
*utpote qui*, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3.
*utráque*, 6, 5.
*utrum ... an*, 162, 4; 300, 4.

V.

v, 1, 1;
— pron., 3, 3:
— developing from u, 367, 4.
v, becomes u, 367, 5.
*valē* by syncope, for *validē*, 7, 4.
*valē*, 363, 2, b).
Value, indefinite, in gen., 203, 3.
*vannus*, gender of, 26, 1, b).
Variations in spelling, 9.
*vās*, decl., 59, 1.
-*ve*, 6, 3; 342, 1, b).
*vel*, 342, 1, b);
— with superl., 240, 3.
*velim*, potential subjv., 280, 2, a.
*vellem*, potential subjv., 280, 4.
*velut, velut sī*, w. subjv., 307, 1.
*verter*, decl., 40, 1, d).
*Verba sentiendi et declarandi*, w. inf. of indir. disc., 331, I;
— passive use of these, 332.
Verbal adj.s., 150, 1-4.
Verbs, 94 f;
— personal endings, 96;
— deponent, 112;
— archaic and poetic forms, 116, 4;
— irregular, 124;
— defective, 133;
— impersonal, 138;
— with substantive clauses of result, 297, 2;
— omission of, 166, 3;
— transitive, 174;
— used absolutely, 174, a;
— passives used as middles, 175, 2, d);
— of smelling and tasting, constr., 176, 5;
— not used in passive, 177, 3, a;
— intransitives impersonal in passive, 187, II, b; 256, 3;
— compounded with prep., constr., 187, III;
— of judicial action, constr., 208;
— derivation of, 155 f.;
— inceptive or inchoative, 155, 1;
— frequentative or intensive, 155, 2;
— desiderative, 155, 3;
— denominative, 156;
— agreement of, 254 f.
Verb stems, 97;
— formation of, 117 f.

vereor, conj., 113;
— with subst. clause in subjv., 296, 2.

Vergilius, gen. of, 25, 1.

veritus, with present force; 336, 5.

vērō, 343, 1, g);
— in answers, 162, 5.

Verse, 366, 3.

Verse-structure, 366 f.

Versification, 361.

versus, prep. w. acc., 141;
— follows its case, 141, 2.

vērō, 343, 1, b).

vescor, with abl., 218, 1.

vesper, decl., 23, 2.

vesperī, locative, 232, 2.

vestrī, as obj. gen., 242, 2.

vestrum, as gen. of whole, 242, 2;
— as possessive gen., 242, 2, a.

vetō, with inf. 331, II.

vētus, decl., 70;
— compared, 73, 3.

vērī, 220, 2.

vicem, used adverbially, 185, 1;
— vicis, vice, 57, 5, b.

victor, decl., 34.

video, with pres. partic., 337, 3.

vigil, decl., 34.

violenter, formation, 77, 4, a.

vir, decl., 23.
— gen. plu. of nouns compounded with, 25, 6, b).

virīle seces, constr., 185, 1.

vīrus, gender of, 26, 2.

vīs, decl., 41.

vīscera, used in plu. only, 56, 3.

Vocative case, 17; 19, 1;
— of Greek proper names in -ās, 47, 4;
— of adj. in -ius, 63, 1; 171;
— in -ī for -ie, 25, 1;
— position of, 350, 3.

Voiced sounds, 2, 3, a).

Voiced consonants, 2, 3, b).
Voiceless consonants, 2, 3, a).
Voices, 94; 256;
—— middle voice, 256, 1.
Volatile subjunctive, 272 f.
volnus, spelling, 9, 1.
volō, 130;
—— with inf., 331, IV and a; 270, 2, a;
—— with subjv., 296, 1, a.
volt, spelling, 9, 1.
voltus, spelling, 8, 1.
ovlucer, decl., 68, 1.
ovluntāte, 220, 2.
-volus, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5
Vowels, 2, 1;
—— sounds of the, 3, 1;
—— quantity of, 5, 4;
—— contraction of, 7, 2;
—— parasitic, 7, 3.
Vowel changes, 7.
vulgus, gender of, 26, 2.
-vum, -vus, decl. of nouns in, 24.

W.
Want, verbs and adjs. of, w. abl., 214, 1, c; d.
Way by which, abl. of, 218, 9.
We, editorial, 242, 3.
Whole, gen. of, 201.
Wills, usc of fut. imperative in, 281, 1, b.
Winds, gender of names of, 15, 1.
Wish, clauses with dum, etc., expressing a, 310.
Wishes, subjunctive in, 279;
—— see Optative subjunctive.
Wishing, verbs of, with subst. clause 296, 1;
—— with obj. inf., 331, IV.
Word-formation, 146 f.
Word-order, 348 f.
Word questions, 162, 1.

X.
x, 2, 9;
—— = cs and gs, 32.
-x, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more cons., 40, 1, b);
—— gender of nouns in -x of 3d decl., 43, 2;
—— exceptions, 45, 4.

Y.
y, 1, 1.
Yes, how expressed, 162, 5.
'You,' indefinite, 356, 3; 280, 3; 302, 2.

Z.
z, 1, 1; 2, 9.
Zeugma, 374, 2, a).

FOOTNOTES
[1] Sometimes also called Aryan or Indo-Germanic.

[2] Cuneiform means "wedge-shaped." The name applies to the form of the strokes of which the characters consist.

[3] The name Zend is often given to this.

[4] For 'voiceless,' 'surd,' 'hard,' or 'tenuis' are sometimes used.

[5] For 'voiced,' 'sonant,' 'soft,' or 'media' are sometimes used.

[6] In this book, long vowels are indicated by a horizontal line above them; as, á, í, ó, etc. Vowels not thus marked are short. Occasionally a curve is set above short vowels; as, ę, ů.

[7] To avoid confusion, the quantity of syllables is not indicated by any sign.

[8] But if the i or ō introduces the second part of a compound, the preceding syllable is always long; as, abru/mpō.

[9] Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

[10] Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

[11] The great majority of all Latin nouns come under this category. The principles for determining their gender are given under the separate declensions.

[12] The Stem is often derived from a more primitive form called the Root. Thus, the stem porta- goes back to the root per-, por-. Roots are usually monosyllabic. The addition made to a root to form a stem is called a Suffix. Thus in porta- the suffix is -ta.

[13] There is only one stem ending in -m:—hiemas, hiemis, winter.

[14] Mēnsis, month, originally a consonant stem (mēns-), has in the Genitive Plural both mēnsium and mēnsum. The Accusative Plural is mēnsēs.

[15] This is practically always used instead of alius in the Genitive.

[16] A Dative Singular Feminine alterae also occurs.

[17] Supplied by vetustior, from vetustus.

[18] Supplied by recentior.

[19] For newest, recentissimus is used.


[22] The final i is sometimes long in poetry.

[23] Forms of hic ending in -s sometimes append -ce for emphasis; as, hūjusce, this ... here; hōscce, hīscce. When -ne is added, -c and -ce become -ci; as huncine, hōscine.

[24] For istud, istuç sometimes occurs; for ista, istaece.


[26] Sometimes quīs.

[27] An ablative qui occurs in quicum, with whom.

[28] Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

[29] The Perfect Participle is wanting in sum.

[30] The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

[31] For esse, essēs, esset, essent, the forms forem, forēs, foret, forent are sometimes used.

[32] For futūrus esse, the form fore is often used.

[33] Declined like bonus, -a, -um.

[34] The Imperfect also means I loved.

[35] For declension of amāns, see § 70, 3.

[36] Fū, fuistī, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc. So fueram, fuerās, etc., for cram, etc.; fuerō, etc., for erō, etc.

[37] Fuerim, etc., are sometimes used for simul; so fuissem, etc., for essem.
[38] In actual usage passive imperatives occur only in deponents (§ 112).

[39] Strictly speaking, the Present Stem always ends in a Thematic Vowel (ē or ō); as, dicē-, dicō-, amā-ē, amā-ō. But the multitude of phonetic changes involved prevents a scientific treatment of the subject here. See the author’s Latin Language.

[40] But the compounds of juvō sometimes have -jūtūrus; as, adjūtūrus.

[41] Used only impersonally.

[42] So imploē, expleō.

[43] Compounds follow the Fourth Conjugation: accīō, accēre, etc.

[44] Fully conjugated only in the compounds: extinguō, restinguō, distinguō.

[45] Only in the compounds: evādō, invādō, pervādō.

[46] It will be observed that not all the forms of ferō lack the connecting vowel. Some of them, as ferimus, ferunt, follow the regular inflection of verbs of the Third Conjugation.

[47] For the Predicate Genitive, see §§ 198, 3; 203, 5.

[48] Many such verbs were originally intransitive in English also, and once governed the Dative.

[49] This was the original form of the preposition cum.

[50] Place from which, though strictly a Genuine Ablative use, is treated here for sake of convenience.

[51] Especially: moneō, admoneō; rogō, ὅρω, petō, postulō, precor, flāgitō; mandō, ἰμπερō, praecipio; suēdeo, hortor, cohaortor; persuādeo, impellō.

[52] Especially: permittō, conscendō, nūn patior.

[53] Especially: prohibeo, impediō, déterreo.

[54] Especially: cōnsitūō, dēcernō, cēnseō, placuēt, convenit, paciscor.


[56] Exclamations, also, upon becoming indirect, take the Subjunctive, as cōnsiderā quam variae sint hominum cupidinēs, consider how varied are the desires of men. (Direct: quam variae sunt hominum cupidinēs!)

[57] Trāditūrī fuerint and errātūrī fueris are to be regarded as representing trāditūrī fuerunt and errātūrī fueris of Direct Discourse. (See § 304, 3, b.)

[58] Except in Sallust and Silver Latin.

[59] So named from a fancied analogy to the strokes of the Greek letter Χ (chi). Thus:—

   multōs    laesi
   X
   défendē    nēminem

[60] The pronouns hic, hoc, and the adverb huc, probably had a short vowel. The syllable was made long by pronouncing hicce, hoce, etc.

[61] Ictus was not accent,—neither stress accent not musical accent,—but was simply the quantitative prominence inherent in the long syllables of fundamental feet.

[62] Originally the Roman year began with March. This explains the names Quintilis, Sextilis, September etc., fifth month, sixth month, etc.

[63] For explanation of the abbreviations, see list.

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of New Latin Grammar, by Charles E. Bennet

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK NEW LATIN GRAMMAR ***

***** This file should be named 15665-h.htm or 15665-h.zip *****
This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:
http://www.gutenberg.org/1/5/6/6/15665/
Produced by Nathan Gibson, Keith Edkins and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team.

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. They may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

*** START: FULL LICENSE ***

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at http://gutenberg.net/license).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement.
and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.net

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.
1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.net), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set
forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance
with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production,
promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works,
harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees,
that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do
or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm
work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any
Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of
electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers
including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists
because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from
people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the
assistance they need, is critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's
goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will
remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project
Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure
and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations.
To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation
and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive
Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit
501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the
state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal
Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification
number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at
http://pglaf.org/fundraising. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg
Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent
permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S.
Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered
throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at
809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email
business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact
information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official
page at http://pglaf.org

For additional contact information:
  Dr. Gregory B. Newby
  Chief Executive and Director
  gnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg
Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide
spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of
increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be
freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest
array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations
($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit http://pglaf.org

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: http://pglaf.org/donate

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

http://www.gutenberg.net

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

*** END: FULL LICENSE ***